The Secret History of the Mongols

For the First Time

Done into English out of the Original Tongue

and

Provided with an Exegetical Commentary

BY

FRANCIS WOODMAN CLEAVES

Professor Emeritus of Far Eastern Languages
Harvard University

VOLUME I

(TRANSLATION)

Published for the Harvard-Yenching Institute by

HARVARD UNIVERSITY PRESS
CAMBRIDGE, MASSACHUSETTS
LONDON, ENGLAND

1982
To the Memory

of

My Beloved Father and Mother
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contents</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Table of Sounds</td>
<td>viii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preface</td>
<td>ix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>xvii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter I</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter II</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter III</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter IV</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter V</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter VI</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter VII</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter VIII</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter IX</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter X</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter XI</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter XII</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index Nominum</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index Verborum</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Letter</td>
<td>Pronunciation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>as a in father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>as b in brother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ð</td>
<td>as ch in church</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>as d in day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>as e in net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>as f in fall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>as g in get</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>γ</td>
<td>as γ in Greek ἀγάμος</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>as h in hall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>as i in machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>as j in jest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>as k in kitchen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>as l in lot</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In his learned *Essay on the Principles of Translation* ¹ Alex. Fraser Tytler formulated three general laws under each of which “are comprehended a variety of subordinate precepts.” I hope, in the words of Isaac Walton, the eminent biographer of Dr. Robert Sanderson,² that I shall not disoblige my reader, if I here enlarge into a further character of Tytler’s laws, to wit: “I. That the Translation should give a complete transcript of the ideas of the original work”; “II. That the style and manner of writing should be of the same character with that of the original”; and “III. That the Translation should have all the ease of original composition.”

How grievously I have offended against Tytler’s laws in doing into English for the first time The Secret History of the Mongols I must leave to the good judgment of my reader. Although, in the exposition of his principles, Tytler dealt primarily with the problem of translation from such Indo-European languages as Greek and Latin, the universality of his general laws is not in the least impaired by their application to the translation of an Altaic language.

In rendering the text I have attempted to “give a complete transcript of the ideas of the original work.” If there is detectable in the translation any retrenchment, howsoever insignificant, it is attributable to inadvertency, not to intention. In superadding, however, words and phrases which do not appear in the original but seem necessary for its complete understanding, I have, I confess, departed from the practice of the translators of the Holy Scriptures of which, insofar as practicable, I have taken the Authorized Version of 1611 as a model for the language and style of my translation. After their practice, in rendering, for example,

¹ The Third Edition, with Large Additions and Alterations, Edinburgh, 1815, pp. xvi + 436 (p. 16).
² *The Lives of Dr. John Donne; Sir Henry Wotton; Mr. Richard Hooker; Mr. George Herbert; and Dr. Robert Sanderson, York, 1798, pp. 407-503 (p. 477).
the sentence Καί ἀνίψανες ἔπαθαν, καί ἀφένες αὐτὸν ἀπῆλθον in the twenty-second verse of the twenty-second chapter of The Gospel According to S. Matthew the translators italicized the words which they superadded: "When they had heard these wordes, they marueiled, and left him, and went their way." This practice, to mention but one instance out of many, was followed by the great English sinologist, James Legge. Thus, for example, the words 曾子曰，慎終追遠 are rendered in his translation of the Lun-yü 論語, that is, the Confucian Analects: "The philosopher Ts'ang said, 'Let there be a careful attention to perform the funeral rites to parents, and let them be followed when long gone with the ceremonies of sacrifice; ...'" More than a century before Legge's time, however, Elizabeth Carter elected to set within brackets the superadded words and phrases in her monumental translation of Epictetus. Thus, on page 126 of All the Works of Epictetus, Which are Now Extant we find the words ὅπως γὰρ τὸ χαῖρεν εὐλόγως, ἐκι καὶ τὸ συγχαίρει translated in this manner: "For where there is a reasonable Caufe of rejoicing, there is likewise [a reasonable Caufe] of Congratulation." Although I can readily anticipate the protestations and criticisms of those to whom the appearance of brackets in a translation is objectionable, if not disagreeable, I am of the opinion that with the function of italics otherwise conceived in modern usage, the translator who considers it a responsibility to make a distinction in his translation between what is in the original and what is superadded has little choice in the matter. Lest my use of brackets, however meticulous, be carried to a point of absurdity, I have not, as a rule, set within them the articles, definite and indefinite, the pronouns of the third person, singular and plural, the preposition of the genitive case, when such a case is implied merely by the relationship between two juxtaposed words in the original text, and diverse auxiliary verbs such as may, might, shall, will,
should, would, et cetera, when the verbal forms of the original make their use in translation mandatory.

Apprehending "that the style and manner of writing should be of the same character with that of the original" and with a view to conserving the archaic flavor of the original text, I have cast my translation, insofar as to me seemed practicable, except in the matter of orthography, into the language of the Authorized Version of the Holy Scriptures, thinking its vocabulary and style to be singularly consonant with that of the Mongolian original. Although the verse of the Mongolian text lends itself more readily to such a manner of translation than the prose with its oftentimes seemingly interminable periods, yet, as I recollect, I have not compromised faithfulness to the original through any paramount consideration for consistency either of vocabulary or style, especially in the case of vocables and acceptations alien to the language and content of the Holy Scriptures.

Mindful "that the translation should have all the ease of original composition," I have spared no pains to make it as readable as my limited talents would allow; yet, when I recall Tytler's proposition "that he only is perfectly accomplished for the duty of translator who possesses a genius akin to that of the original author," I can but publicly acknowledge my deficiencies. Thinking it, however, to be an unwarranted conceit to beg the reader's indulgence for its imperfections, I venture rather to express the hope that my translation will serve to induce others to try their own hand at turning the original into English, for The Secret History of the Mongols is not only the capital monument of thirteenth-century Mongolian literature, but it is one of the great literary monuments of the world. Because of the problems it presents as an early text, a definitive translation is out of the question until generations of scholarship have been consecrated to its study.

In the transcription of Mongolian names and terms I have rigorously adhered to the generally accepted scientific manner of transcribing Middle Mongolian in the belief that this would be less confusing to my readers than were I to accommodate the

*Tytler, op. cit., p. 572.
transcriptions to the spelling habits of English alone. Consonant for consonant and vowel for vowel the transcription represents as faithfully as possible the sounds of the original language as they are represented in the Chinese transcription. For the guidance of the reader who is not acquainted with the values of the letters used in the transcription I have subjoined a simple "Table of Sounds."

With a view to facilitating reference to the original text in Chinese transcription, I have maintained its arbitrary, if not injudicious, division into twelve chapters—properly ten and two of continuation—with its even more arbitrary, if not more injudicious, division into 282 sections and have set within brackets the foliation of the original, indicating the recto and verso of each folio.

In publishing The Secret History of the Mongols in two volumes, one of translation and one of commentary, I have deviated from my original plan which envisaged the publication first of the original text, next of the concordance of vocables, and finally of the translation with an exegetical commentary. In so doing, I have followed the counsel of some of my colleagues whose opinion it was that priority should be given to the publication of the translation. I have also followed their counsel in the plan to publish the commentary in a second volume. As precedents for this, they justifiably cited Arthur Waley's The Book of Songs Translated from the Chinese and his Supplement Containing Textual Notes as well as William Hung's Tu Fu: China's Greatest Poet and his A Supplementary Volume of Notes for Tu Fu: China's Greatest Poet. The translation, therefore, as originally conceived according to this plan, was not provided with footnotes. Yet it was soon to become apparent to those of my colleagues who had occasion to read parts of the translation without such notes that much was destined to be lost not only to the general reader, but

---

* Cf. Walton's remark on "the translation of James I," op. cit., p. 418, n.n: "The very injudicious division of the text into chapters and verses has been long a matter of complaint."

* Boston and New York, 1937.

* London and Boston, 1937.

* Cambridge, Massachusetts, 1932.

* Cambridge, Massachusetts, 1932.
also to the specialist, if certain remarks were not made for their immediate enlightenment. I then added the present footnotes which represent a compromise between each of the two extremes—that with none and that with as many as, in the opinion of the specialist, the translation would appear to require. With this premise, I am constrained to say that it would, indeed, be remarkable, were the indifferent reader to look upon the fruit of this compromise without some sense of dissatisfaction. I hope, however, that the reader who is interested in *The Secret History* as literature will be disposed to look with some favor upon the fact that I have also given in the footnotes a number of cross-references so that formulae which occur more than once, whether in prose or in verse, may be located more easily. The specialist, therefore, must await the appearance of the second volume for the detailed commentary on the translation. Irrespective of these circumstances, however, the translation which I have given must stand or fall on its own merits. No judgment need be spared while the appearance of the commentary is being awaited. While it is true that the explanation of many puzzling points both in the original and in my manner of translation will be clarified in the commentary, it is also true that no amount of commentary will justify or substantiate a misleading or inaccurate translation.

The translation has been provided with an “Introduction” and two indices, an “Index Nominum” and an “Index Verborum,” as well as a “Table of Sounds” for the guidance of the reader who is not acquainted with the values of the letters which I have used to transcribe the Mongolian sounds. A subsequent volume will include a “Bibliography” of the works cited both in the “Introduction” and in the footnotes to the translation itself. It will also provide a simple outline map showing the principal geographical features—rivers, lakes, and mountains—of the ancient Mongolian homeland.

Were I to mention the names of all those who, in one way or another, have contributed directly or indirectly to this volume, they would constitute a catalogue as long, perhaps, as that of “the captains of thousands” in §202 of the text itself. I shall,
therefore, only mention the names of those to whom I am chiefly indebted, letting them be representative of the names of all other colleagues and friends who have rendered me service in the course of the preparation of this volume.

To the Reverend Antoine Mostaert, C. I. C. M., I owe a debt of gratitude which cannot be discharged by the mere acknowledgment of the exceptionally gracious and devoted assistance which he has rendered me. On several occasions during the years 1952-1954 the eminent Belgian scholar received me at Missionhurst in Arlington, Virginia, and discussed with me for whole days at a time many of the extremely difficult problems with which the text is beset. In addition, he read the entire typescript of the draft translation and formulated in letter after letter remarks consisting of corrections, explanations, suggestions, and recommendations which, almost without exception, have been incorporated into the translation or the accompanying footnotes. As some of his remarks provide the solutions of hitherto unsolved problems, they have been translated and quoted in the footnotes. It is my intention, however, to present them, together with other remarks by the Reverend Antoine Mostaert, in the second volume so that they will be accessible in the original French to specialists. When I ponder the goodness, the patience, and the understanding with which the Reverend Antoine Mostaert has shared with me his time and knowledge, I know that to brotherly kindness he has, in truth, added charity. It is he who should have translated this text, not I. That I have succeeded in so doing, however, is owing to the help he has given me.

To Dr. William Hung, I am indebted for substantive as well as moral encouragement. Always ready to examine with me problems in the interlinear or continuous Chinese translations, he has very materially contributed to my understanding of the Mongolian text itself. Some of his interpretations or explanations have been cited in the footnotes. Others will be cited in the second volume.

To Professor Serge Elisséeff, too, I owe a debt of gratitude that is not easily discharged by its mere acknowledgment. In his capacity as Director of the Harvard-Yenching Institute he has,
It is true, made possible the physical production of the volume by including it in his publications budget. In his capacity as teacher, colleague, and friend, however, he has, through the years, first by his counsel that I begin the study of Mongolian under the late great French master, Paul Pelliot, next by his suggestion that I offer courses in the Mongolian language and literature at Harvard University, and finally by his sustained and unflagging interest in the role of Mongolian studies in the broader field of Far Eastern and Central Asiatic studies, given me the tangible and effective support that has made it possible for me to devote myself, if not exclusively, at least preponderantly, to the study of The Secret History and the period in which it was written.

To Dr. John L. Bishop I am indebted for his great kindness in reading the translation both in typescript and page-proof form with an eye to diction and style. By virtue of his suggestions and recommendations the translation has been made more readable from beginning to end. If there are passages which are less readable—especially the long periods—this is not attributable to any oversight on Dr. Bishop’s part, for he was swift to tell me when he found a sentence difficult or its syntax puzzling and he often counseled me that the long periods be broken up into smaller units. My only justification for leaving some of the passages in their present form is that of faithfulness—perhaps, questionable—to the original.

To Mrs. Marion S. Nash of Milton, Massachusetts I am indebted for a first draft of the material which came to constitute the present “Index Nominum” and “Index Verborum.” With the draft which she had prepared for my use, I was able, by collating the names and terms in the translation with her entries, to work the indices into their final form with greater ease than would otherwise have been possible.

To Mrs. Martha E. Chorlton of Needham, Massachusetts, who typed the final draft of each of the several parts of the volume, I am deeply indebted for the truly magnificent work she did, for she spared no pains to comply with my manifold specifications and was always willing to interrupt her household duties to complete work urgently needed.
To my printer, Mr. Victor J. Furst, President, J. H. Furst Company, Baltimore, Maryland, and to all those of his house who participated in the printing of this volume I express my gratitude for the gracious and devoted cooperation which it has been my privilege to enjoy from the time when the first sections of the translation were set up in type for the purpose of presenting a set of specimen galley proofs to the Trustees of the Harvard-Yenching Institute. With infinite patience Mr. Furst and his associates have set and reset, keeping apace with my repeated changes and revisions and maintaining throughout the high quality of craftsmanship which has been the hallmark of the house for a half century.

Finally, I wish to thank Mr. F. C. Wieder, Jr., Assistant Manager, N. V. Boekhandel en Drukkerij Voorheen E. J. Brill, Leiden, Holland, for his gracious permission, granted in a letter dated 7 April 1956, to quote in my footnotes an occasional remark drawn from the Histoire des campagnes de Gengis Khan, Cheng-wou ts’in-tcheng lou, traduit et annoté par Paul Pelliot et Louis Hamers, Tome I (Leiden, 1951).

In closing this Preface, I think it not improper to say with Sir George Thomas Staunton, the renowned translator of the Ta-Ch'ing li-lí 大清律例, that, in making this declaration, it is far from my wish to avail myself of these respectable sanctions for the protection from censure of a work for which I must of necessity be solely responsible.11

Francis W. Cleaves

Needham, Massachusetts
19 April 1956

11 Ta Tsing Lou Lee; Being the Fundamental Laws, and a Selection from the Supplementary Statutes, of the Penal Code of China; Originally Printed and Published in Pekin, in Various Successive Editions, under the Sanction, and by the Authority, of the Several Emperors of the Ta Tsing, or Present Dynasty. Translated from the Chinese; and Accompanied with an Appendix, Consisting of Authentic Documents, and a Few Occasional Notes, Illustrative of the Subject of the Work, London, 1810, p. xxxiv.
INTRODUCTION

In 1866, when the Archimandrite Palladii² published in the Труды членов Российской духовной Миссии въ Пекинъ [Works of the Members of the Russian Religious Mission in Peking] a translation of the Yüan-ch'a'o pi-shih 无朝秘史 [The Secret History of the Yüan Dynasty], under the title of Старинное Монгольское сказание о Чингисханѣ [Old Mongolian Story about Čingis-khan], he made accessible, in his native Russian language, the abridged Chinese translation of the great Mongolian work known as the Mongol-un niuça [ньюца] to|b|ca'an,⁸ that is to say, The Secret History of the Mongols. In 1876 E. Bretschneider,⁹ M. D., Physician to the Russian Legation at Peking, included a brief “critical review” of the translation in his Notices of the Mediæval Geography and History of Central and Western Asia,¹ where he stated: “In the introduction to his translation, Palladius gives a minutely detailed history of the work, . . . .”¹⁰ In 1883, H. H. Howorth,¹¹ F. S. A., M. R. A. S., in an article entitled “Two Early Sources for Mongol History,” which he published in The Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society,¹² undertook to bring before the Society the “admirable description”¹³ of the Yüan-

² Tomъ IV, С.-Петербургъ, 1866 [Tome IV, St.-Petersburg, 1866]. Pp. 1-235 + “Генеалогическая таблица къ Сказанию о Чингисханѣ” [“Genealogical Table to The Story About Čingis-khan”].
³ This title may also be transcribed Yüan-ch’a’o mi-shih, the character 秘 (mi) (“secret”) being read either pi or mi in Mandarin.
⁴ This title, as we shall see, was devised by Palladius.
⁵ This title will be discussed in a subsequent volume.
⁶ June/6 July 1833—29 April 1901. Cf., e. g., Henri Cordier, “Le Docteur Émile Vasiliévitch Bretschneider,” T’oung pao 9 (1901), 192-197 (+ 1 plate).
⁷ Drawn from Chinese and Mongol Writings, and Compared with the Observations of Western Authors in the Middle Ages, Accompanied with two maps. London, 1876. Pp. iv + 11 of “Corrigenda” + “Map” + 328.
ch’ao pi-shih, given by the Russian divine in the introduction to his translation. “Une excellente traduction, avec une introduction relative à l’histoire du texte et un copieux commentaire” is the inimitable manner in which the late Paul Pelliot characterized in 1913 in his article “Le titre mongol du Yuan teh’ao pi che” the truly monumental work by the Archimandrite Palladii.

While the translation by the Archimandrite Palladii is a translation of the abridged, consecutive Chinese translation of The Secret History of the Mongols, not of the Mongolian original as transcribed in Chinese characters, and while the “explanatory details” in his introduction, in some cases, are subject to modification in the light of data set forth by William Hung in his article “The Transmission of the Book Known as The Secret History of the Mongols” in the Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies and by Antoine Mostaert in his book Sur quelques passages de l’Histoire secrète des Mongols, to mention but two recent publications of singular importance, it is, nevertheless, a fact that with the Старинное Монгольское сказание о Чингисхане [Old Mongolian Story about Чингисхан] the Archimandrite Palladii laid the foundation for subsequent study of The Secret History of the Mongols. Before the Mongolian text in Chinese transcription became generally accessible, the translation by the

---

24 Young pao 11 (1928).121-128 (p. 130).
26 For the abridged consecutive Chinese translation see pp. xxii-xliv below.
27 For the Mongolian original as transcribed in Chinese characters see pp. xxiv, xlv.
29 27 October 1898—
Archimandrite Palladii was extensively utilized by such scholars as E. Bretschneider, M.D., in his Notices of the Mediaeval Geography and History of Central and Western Asia as well as Mediaeval Researches, Henry H. Howorth, F.S.A., in his long article “Chinghis Khan and his Ancestors,” published serially in The Indian Antiquary from 1880 to 1888, and B. Ya. Vladimirov in his УННЯЯ-ХАЯ [Čingis-khan]. In this manner, The Secret History of the Mongols was injected into the bloodstream of Western scholarship on early Mongolian history.

In 1903 Paul Pelliot observed in “Notes bibliographiques” in the Bulletin de l’École Française d’Extrême-Orient, relative to the text of the Yüan-ch’ao pi-shih published in the Lien-yün-tse’ung-shu that “c’est [518] vraisemblablement celle qu’a utilisée Palladius, qui a également connu, je crois, le texte

---

22 See note 7 above.
25 И., Boris Yakovlevič Vladimirov, 1884—15 August 1931. Cf., e.g., N. Poppe.
26 B. J. Vladimirov,” Asia Major 8(1922), 365-377.
28 B. Vladimirov, 1880 (1922). 517-518.
mongol, pour sa traduction... That the Archimandrite Palladii did not have access, however, to the Mongolian text for his translation is clear from an observation by Bretschneider, relative to the Lien-yün-i ts'ung-shu edition of the Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih, in his Notices of the Mediaeval Geography and History of Central and Western Asia.  

... After Palladius had published his translation, made from the Chinese text in the afore-mentioned collection, he happened to obtain a MS. copy of the Ming edition of the work, accompanied by the Mongol text (in Chinese characters), for the use of which I have to thank the learned owner. It was found that the text Palladius had translated, was only an extract of the original work, which comprises 15 chapters, but has no title. Although many archaisms and clerical errors occur in this text, the restoration of the Mongol original presents little difficulty for men acquainted with both Chinese and Mongol; the Mongol text (represented by Chinese characters) being accompanied by the Chinese translation...  

Howorth, who referred to Bretschneider's observation, in his "Chinghiz khan and his Ancestors," remarked:  

... To this notice I may add that my friend Mr. Wylie met with a copy of the Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih, in China, written in the Mongol language in Chinese characters, as above mentioned. This was partially transcribed for him, but the original copy was lost during the rebellion, so that what he now has is only a fragment.  

Later, Bretschneider repeated his observation, albeit in a slightly altered form, in his Mediaeval Researches.  

That Pelliot had come to modify his view of this matter is evident from the following observation in the introduction to his posthumously published Histoire secrète des Mongols:  

... Palladius signalait en outre qu'il y avait encore des manuscrits d'une transcription (et non plus d'une traduction) en caractères chinois du texte original mongol du Yüan-ch'ao pi-che. Postérieurement à sa traduction, Palladius put se procurer un de ces manuscrits qu'il donna à M. Pozdneiev, lequel le remit à l'Université de Petrograd. A l'aide de ce manuscrit, M.  

89 P. 15.  
In 1910 E. Blochet published a French translation of the first chapter of the Yuan-ch‘ao pi-shih under the title of "Histoire des origines de la dynastie des Mongols d’après le Yuan-shao-pi-sheu" in the "Appendice" to his Introduction à l’histoire des Mongols de Fadl Allah Rashid ed-Din. As remarked by Pelliot in his article "Le titre mongol du Yuan toh‘ao pi che," "il ne dit ni de quelle édition il se sert, ni à quels commentaires il a eu accès, et ne mentionne même pas le travail fondamental de Palladius." In the introduction to his posthumously published Histoire secrète des Mongols Pelliot further remarked, relative to the translation of Palladius: "Mais Howorth ne l’a connue qu’après l’achèvement de son ouvrage, et M. Blochet l’a ignorée."

It should be observed, however, that Blochet did make the following remark:

... Le premier chapitre a été remis en mongol par M. Pozdnéiev, de St. Pétersbourg, mais ce travail est devenu extrêmement rare et, dans l’attente d’une nouvelle édition, il est impossible de s’en procurer un exemplaire. M. Ivanof et M. Rosenberg ont bien voulu faire exécuter pour moi une copie, en caractères russes, de ce travail qu’il m’eut été impossible de connaître sans leur extrême obligeance. . . .

Neither Pelliot nor Blochet, however, made reference to the article entitled "О древнем китайско-монгольском историческом памятнике Юань-чоу-миши" ["On the Ancient Sino-
Mongolian Historical Monument Yuan-čao-mi-shi')] which A. M. Pozdneev published in 1884. In this article Pozdneev described the Mongolian text of The Secret History of the Mongols as transcribed in Chinese characters in a manuscript copy acquired by the Archimandrite Palladii on 26 November 1872. Thus, only six years after the publication in 1866 of his Russian translation of the abridged Chinese translation of The Secret History of the Mongols, the Archimandrite Palladii acquired the Mongolian original in Chinese transcription, which Bretscheider and Pozdneev almost immediately brought to the attention of Western scholarship in their respective publications.

While the classical remarks by the Archimandrite Palladii on the transmission of the Chinese translation of the Mongolian text of The Secret History of the Mongols have been supplemented and superseded in many significant respects by the findings of William Huns in his article entitled “The Transmission of the Book Known as The Secret History of the Mongols,” it would be fallacious to conclude that they are completely obsolete, for they must still be consulted for data inaccessible elsewhere. Insofar as the transmission of the Mongolian text in Chinese transcription is concerned, however, there is little to be gleaned from the remarks by the Archimandrite Palladii.

In tracing the history of the transmission of The Secret History

---

82 I. e., Aleksei Matveevič Pozdneev, 1851-1920.

83 I only have at my disposal a reprint of the article (pp. 1-20), given to the Harvard College Library by the bequest of Jeremiah Curtin (Class of 1883), which contains (after p. 92) a folding table entitled "Таблица основных иероглифов, составляющих язык древней китайско-монгольской юнгэпиз-юнгэ [šč]-чео-ми-ши" ["Table of the basic characters, composing the alphabet of the ancient Sino-Mongolian Chronicle—Yuanšč]-čao-mi-shi"] and a tailpiece which reads in part: Напечатано по распоряжении Императорского Русского Археологического Общества ["Printed upon arrangement of the Imperial Russian Archaeological Society"]. Henri Curtin, Bibliotheca Sinica, Volume IV, Paris, 1907-1908, col. 2799, registered the article as follows: "Мémoire sur un ancien document historique sino-mongol, le Yuan cheo mi shi, par A. Pozdniyev [en russe]. (Мémoires de la Soc. archéologique de St. Pétersbourg, 1884.)" 84 P. 8.

85 See note 18 above.

86 Cf., e.g., Francis Woodman Clevel, "The Historicity of the Beljuna Covenant," HIAS 18 (1955), 367-381 (p. 380).
of the Mongols on Chinese soil—the text in Chinese transcription and that in Chinese translation—we must begin with references which, in the classical tradition of the West, might properly be called de Historia Secreta Mongolorum veterum scriptorum testimonii. Of these references, the first and indubitably the most important is a passage found in an entry relative to the Hua-i-i-yü 華夷譯語 "Sino-Barbarian (-Mongolian) Glossary" in the Ming shih-lu 明實錄 "Veritable Records of (the) Ming (Dynasty)," 141 (ts'e 20), 3v6-4r1, under the date of 丙子十五年... 壬正月... 丙戌 ("The day) ping-hsi... of the 1st moon, in the spring... of the 15th year of (the) Hung-wu (period) (20 January 1382)" ] already translated into Russian, French, and English, which reads as follows (3v10):

...復取元秘史參考確切其字以謹其聲音。
Moreover, taking the Yüan pi-shih for reference, they joined or cut in order to approximate its sounds.

Although the entry in which this reference is found was inserted retrospectively under the year 1382 by the compilers of the Ming shih-lu and although, for reasons to be given below, it cannot be stated with absolute assurance that the date of 1382 is here as applicable to the Yüan pi-shih as it is to the Hua-i-i-yü, it is,

46 "1381" in Hung, op. cit., p. 458, is an inadvertence.
47 Cf. Palladit, op. cit., pp. 4-5.
50 I.e., Huo Yüan-ch'ien 大原謙, Ma Sha-wei 馬沙亦黑 (Ma Š(a)1x), and others.
51 I.e., transcribed. For these words cf. Hung, op. cit., p. 458, n. 47.
52 I.e., the Hua-i-i-yü's Mongolian words.
53 I.e., the Hua-i-i-yü's Mongolian sounds.
54 See pages xliv-lxiv below.
nevertheless, evident that, if, only fourteen years after the Mongols were expelled from China, the Chinese were able to use *The Secret History of the Mongols* for the purpose in question, between the years 1368 and 1382, they had already transcribed and translated the Mongolian original. At the moment, it is not possible to state without qualification to which of the texts then possibly in existence the words *Yüan pi-shih* here refer. 56 It is known, however, that there were copied into the *Yung-lo ta-tien* 永樂大典 *Encyclopaedia of (the) Yung-lo (Period)*, compiled in Nanking between the years 1403 and 1408, an integral Chinese transcription of the Mongolian text, with interlinear Chinese glosses, and an abridged Chinese translation—the whole, arbitrarily divided into 282 sections, 57 being entitled *Yüan-ch’ao pi-shih* 《元朝綱要》 [The Secret History of the Yuan Dynasty]. Inserted under the rhyme 元 (yüan) in ch'üan 宋 5179-5193 of the enormous *Encyclopaedia*, the *Yüan-ch’ao pi-shih* consisted of 15 ch'üan. It was a copy of this text which eventually was acquired by the Archimandrite Palladii. 58

The second reference, if it may properly be termed such, is in the form of a notation found at the end of a manuscript copy of the abridged Chinese translation of the *Yüan-ch’ao pi-shih*, presumably prepared for the editors of the *Yung-lo ta-tien*, and of which a facsimile of the first leaf is reproduced in Ch'én Yüan 陳垣, *Yüan pi-shih i-yin yung-tzu k’ao* 元朝史譯音用字考 [Study of the Characters Used in the Transcription of the Sounds of the Yuan-ch’ao pi-shih]. As cited by Ch'én, the notation reads: 59

一部二本。永樂二年八月內抄到。
One set; two pens. Copied and received in the 8th moon of the 2nd year of [the] Yung-lo [period] [5 September—8 October 1404].

56 For conjectures cf. Hung, op. cit., p. 480.
58 This matter will be discussed further in a subsequent volume.
59 It is to “The text in the *Yung-lo ta-tien*” that Dr. Hung devoted the first part (pp. 438-444) of his article “The Transmission of the Book Known as *The Secret History of the Mongols*.”
60 See note 41 above. Cf. also Hung, op. cit., p. 438.
Aside from the fact that the date "5 September—3 October 1404" is in itself of the highest importance as a landmark in the history of the transmission of the *Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih*, the fact that such a manuscript copy was made suggests that the Chinese translation of the text had not previously appeared in printed form and serves to establish beyond all doubt that between 1368 and 1404—36 years in all—the text had been partially, if not integrally, translated into Chinese.

The next, albeit indirect, reference to *The Secret History of the Mongols* is found in the entry captioned "Ta-tan" 類照 ["Tatar"] in *chüan 90 (ts'e 48).1r3-29r4 (25v7-28v2) of the *Ta-Ming i-t'ung-chih* 大明一統志," where there is a passage in the note on the name *Pu-erh-han Shan* 不勒罕山 ("Mount Burqan") (27v1) of which the source could only be the *Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih*. It reads as follows:

昔日白狼入于此后山，生子名巴塔亦罕。徒称蒙古部，即元氏之祖。

Formerly there was a blue-white wolf which met a dull-white doe [at this] mountain. He begot a son [whose] name [was] Pa-t'a-ch'ih-han (Bataśičan). [His] descendants became the Meng-ku (Mongγo[I]) tribe. They were the ancestors of the Yuan clan.

This passage was incorporated as such under the rubric "Chi shan ch'üan" 其山川 ("Their Mountains and Rivers") in the *I-yü* 詩語 ["Intelligence Report"] by Min-O-shan-jen 民贒山人.

---


45 The obliterated words 于此 (yü ts'ü) may be restored from the edition of 1535 (cf. Goodrich, op. cit., p. 209), chüan 90 (ts'e 40).27v4, as well as the *I-yü* (see note 64 below).

46 The meaning of this title, literally, *A Discourse on the Interpretation of Words of the North*, is explained by the author at the beginning of the work (1r2-8r9). For the work itself cf. WADA Sei 和田清, "Hokuryo kiroku. Yakago oyobi Sanchô sanskara-roku no chosa" 北海道譯語及山中聞見録の著者 ("Authors of the Pei-lu Chi-liao 北遼紀, the *I-yü* 詩語 and the Shan-chung Wên-chien-lu 山中聞見録", three Books on the Northern Frontagers [sic] of the Later Ming Dynasty"), Töyö gakuhō 東洋學報 (*The Töyö Okuhô, Reports of the Oriental
THE SECRET HISTORY OF THE MONGOLS

i.e., Su Chih-kao 蘇志皋, "in chüan 161 (ts'e 56). (4v8-9) of the Chi-lu hui-pien 續鑑彙編 " [Collection of Historical Documents] by Shen Chieh-fu 沈馥甫."

It is obvious that the first two lines of the passage constitute nothing but a résumé of the opening paragraph of the Chinese translation of The Secret History. The only variant of consequence is the adjective of color qualifying the wolf, that is ts'ang-p'ai 蒼白 ("blue-white") instead of ts'ang-se-ti 蒼色的 ("of bluish color") as in the Chinese translation. The adjective of color qualifying the deer, however, is identical in both cases. The transcription of Pa-t'a-ch'ih-han (Batacgan) is identical with that in the Chinese translation.

The first substantial reference to The Secret History of the Mongols is found in an entry under the rubric 北 (Yüan) in chüan 5 (ts'e 1) 24r8-24v2 of the Li-tai ti-wang hsing-hsi t'ung-p'u 历代帝王姓系統譜 " [General Register of the Surnames and Lineages of the Emperors and Kings of Successive Dynasties] in the Wan-hsing t'ung-p'u 萬姓統譜 " [General Register of the Ten-Thousand Surnames], where we read (24r8-9):

"For this hao 駒 or nom de plume of the author, literally, "A Man of the Ming and O Mountains [ts'o shu-ch'uan]," cf. Wada, op. cit., p. 224/110, and Paul Pelliot, op. cit., p. 290.
"A chiu-shih 迪士 of the Chia-ching Xiaoning period (1622-1626) of the Ming dynasty, specifically 1629.
"For this work, one of three under the general title of Wan-hsing t'ung-p'u [General Register of the Ten-Thousand Surnames] see note 78 below.
"For this work of 1279 in 140 chüan cf. Set-yü Tiao, Indiana University, and
INTRODUCTION

According to the [Yüan-] ch'ao yü-shih [The Secret History of the (Yüan) Dynasty] it is said: "The ancestor of the people of the [Yüan] dynasty was a man of bluish color begotten of Heaven, who coupled with a dull-white woman. Together they passed over the T'eng-chi-ssu (Tenggis) Water and reached the source of the Wu-nan] (Ojan) River. In front of Mount Pu-erh-han (Burqan) they engendered a person [whose] name was Pa-t'a-ch'i-han (Bataqian). Pa-t'a-ch'i-han (Bataqian) begot Ta-na-ch'a (Tamača). Coming to the twelfth generation, Po-tuan-ch'a-erh (Bodončar) was born. In the thirteenth generation T'ieh-mu-chen (Temūjin) was born. He took Po-erh-chih-chin (Boročhin) as surname. He was the Tai-ts'ai of the Yüan dynasty."

In 1824, J. Klaproth published on pages (172) - (196) of his Mémoires relatifs à l'Asie a paper entitled "Examen des Extraits d'une Histoire des Khans mongols" in which, on page (191), he cited and translated this passage:

Le Ouan sing thong yow, dictionnaire chinois de tous les noms célestes, dit que Bordüjëhin était le nom de la famille de Chinghiz khan, et son prénom Temouadjin. Ce même ouvrage donne l'extrait suivant de l'histoire secrète de la dynastie Yousan: «Le premier ancêtre de cette famille était un homme d'une haute stature, et d'une couleur bleue, qui avait épousé une femme triste et délaissée. Il mena une vie nomade, traversait l'eau appelée Tenghis, et arriva devant la montagne Bourkhan, à la source de la rivière Oua nan, où sa femme accoucha d'un fils nommé Batatoki khan. De lui naquit Tamača, qui dans la douzième génération eut pour successeur Bodouantsjar, duquel descendit, dans


The character 元 (Yüan) is obliterated in the copy of the Wén-hsing t'ung-ju which belongs to the Harvard-Yenching Institute.

Idem.

The character 鞑 (nao) is obliterated in the same copy.


la treizième, Temoujdin, qui porta le nom de famille de Bordjighin, et qu'on regarde comme fondateur de la dynastie Youan. 22

Klaproth's translation of Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih as "l'histoire secrète de la dynastie Youan" constitutes, I believe, the first reference to this work in a western language. Although Isaac Jacob Schmidt 23 published his Forschungen im Gebiete der älteren religiösen, politischen und literarischen Bildungsgeschichte der Völker Mittel-Asiens, vorzüglich der Mongolen und Tibetern 24 in the same year and presented on pages 88-90 of his work a German translation of Klaproth's French translation of the passage in question, for some reason, he did not specifically mention in this connection "l'histoire secrète de la dynastie Youan." 25

That the compilers of the Li-tai ti-wang hsing-hsi t'ung-p'u had access directly or indirectly to the text of the Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih in the Yung-lo ta-tien is obvious, for the data they furnished was extracted from the abridged Chinese translation of The Secret History of the Mongols. Since there exist translations of the pertinent sections of the abridged Chinese translation in Russian, 26 French, 27 and English, 28 I shall not include yet another herein. Of the modifications which the editors introduced into

22 "In rendering 天生赤色人 as "un homme d'une haute stature, et d'une couleur bleue," Klaproth unquestionably was misled by the poorly printed 天 (t'ien) ("Heaven") which resembled 大 (ta) ("big") in his text. As to his translation of 悲白女 as "une femme triste et délaissée," it is attributable to the fact that he did not know that the character 悲 (t'ien), meaning, to be sure, "sad," also means "dark (of a color)" and is frequently written 悲 (t'sen). His inaccurate rendering of 悲 (t'sen) is responsible for the forced and completely inaccurate rendering of 白 (p'ai) "white" as "délaisée," a meaning which is out of the question in this context. See also note 90 below.
23 1773-1847.
24 Mit zwei Tafeln in Steindruck, St. Petersburg, gedruckt bei Karl Krat, 1824. Pp. 32 + 2 of "Verbesserungen und Zusätze" + 287.
25 In translating Klaproth, Schmidt, op. cit., p. 83, perpetuated the mistranslations "un homme d'une haute stature, et d'une couleur bleue" and "une femme triste et délaissée" respectively as "ein Mann von hoher Körpernwuchse und blau von Farbe" and "eine traurige und verlassene Frau."
their citation, the substitution of 人 (jen) ("man") for 獵 (*lang) ("wolf") and 女 (nü) ("woman") for 赤 (*lu) ("deer")—the Mongolian original in Chinese transcription having respectively činoa ("wolf") and maral ("deer")—is especially noteworthy. One can only speculate as to the reason which prompted the Chinese compilers of the Li-tai ti-wang hsing-hsi t'ung-p'u to do, in effect, what the Mongols themselves did under the influence of lamaism, but it can be assumed that they did not look with favor on the tradition of animal ancestors for the Yuan, one of the dynasties of their native land.

Another, albeit less substantial, reference to The Secret History of the Mongols is found in the entry on the Hsiung-nu 匈奴 in the San-ts'ai t'u-hui 三才圖會 [Universal Illustrated Encyclopaedia], "Jen-wu" 人物 ["People"], 12 (ts'e 20).6v1-8, where we read (6v4-6):

... 一傳乃巴塔赤罕之祖. 元朝秘史云蒼色頂異形白毛所生. 二十五世生帖木異. 是傳大蒙古都長. 謂號皇帝. 世居沙漠東西六千里. 後居山陰. 聯疊爾.

... One tribe of the Hsiung-nu was the ancestor of Pa-t's-ch'ih-han (Bataqian). The Yün-ch'ao pi-shih says: "He was one whom a wolf of bluish color and a dull-white doe begot." The twenty-fifth generation gave birth to T'ai-mu-chen (Temüjin). He was called the chief of the Great Mongols. He usurped the title of Emperor. For generations the Mongols lived [at a distance of] 6,000 li north-east of the Sandy Desert. Later they lived on the north side of the mountains [between China and Mongolia]. They called themselves Ta-t'a (Tatar).

---

"Yün-ch'ao pi-shih 1 (ts'e 1).1v2.
69 Op. cit. 1 (ts'e 1).1r.
70 Cf. Antoine Montaury, Sur quelques passages de l'Histoire secrète des Mongols, pp. xviii-xix. (See note 20 above.)
71 For the Hsiung-nu cf., e.g., Jan Jakob Maria de Groot, Die Hunsen der vorchristlichen Zeit, Berlin und Leipzig, W. de Gruyter & Co., 1921.
72 For this work in 106 chüan, with prefaces dated 1807 and 1809, cf. Tiao, and Bildersstaf, op. cit. p. 144.
73 The text has Ta-t'a-ch'ih-lan.
74 For the name "Great Mongols" cf. Antoine Montaury et Francis Woodman Clavary, "Trois documents mongols des Archives secrètes vaticanes," HIAS 16 (1922), 410-506 (+ Pl. I-VIII) (pp. 493-501).
The Secret History of the Mongols

In 1824 J. Klaproth published on pages (197)-(204) of his Mémoires relatifs à l'Asie an "Extrait d'une lettre de M. Schmidt, de Saint-Pétersbourg, adressée à M. Klaproth, en réponse à l'Examen des Extraits d'une Histoire des Khans mongols. Avec les Remarques de M. Klaproth" in which he cited and translated this passage in a "Remarque" on pages (203)-(204):

Remarque.—Après la publication de mon Examen de l'Histoire mongole, j'ai trouvé un autre passage chinois sur l'origine des Mongols. Dans l'encyclopédie San th'ai thou h'ouey (de l'Homme, sec. XII; fol. 6 verso), il est dit: «Une autre race tire son origine de Batatchi khan (Tabatchi khan, dans le texte, est une faute d'orthographe).» Dans l'histoire secrète de la dynastie des Youan, on lit: «Un loup couleur bleu de ciel, l'engendra avec une biche blanche et féroce. Son descendant, à la vingt-cinquième génération, était Temouhadja, qui fut le chef de la grande tribu des Mongols, et qui prit le titre d'empereur auguste. Pendant long-temps ce peuple habitait à 600 [sic] ly, au nord du désert de Cha ma (ou Gobi); après il vint s'établir sur le versant septentrional de la chaîne des montagnes qui borde la Chine au Nord, où il porta là le titre honorifique de Tha la (Tatar).» On voit ([204]) dans ce passage que le nom de Burtè Tekho est traduit par loup couleur bleu de ciel, et celui de sa femme Goh maral par une biche blanche et féroce. En effet maral signifie une biche en mongol, et le mot chinois tshen, que j'avais traduit par délaissée, peut aussi se rendre par cruel et féroce.

Insofar as it is presently possible to determine, the first Chinese scholar to signalize the importance of The Secret History of the Mongols for the study of Yüan history was Sun Ch'eng-tse 蘇承澤 whose Yüan-ch'ao tien-ku pien-nien k'ao 元朝典故編年考 [A Chronological Study of Political Precedents of the Yüan Dynasty], though rare and practically inaccessible, happily is extant. The ninth chüan of Sun's work is entitled "Pi-shih."

---

88 Schmandt's letter was dated "Saint-Pétersburg, le 28 mai 1823."
89 It does not seem necessary to dwell on Klaproth's errors in his translation of this passage. As to the word 懲白鹿 (t'sh'an pai lu), however, which he rendered "une biche blanche et féroce" in this instance, he remarked, as we have seen (note 79 above), that the Chinese word t's'an which he translated "délaisée" in the previous citation, could also be rendered "cruel et féroce."
91 For this work cf. Hummel, op. cit., p. 670a.
92 I have used the translation given by William Husted, op. cit., p. 488.
93 It is found in the Lo-shu shan-fang ts'ung-shu 峯樹山房畫書 (cf. Husted, op. cit., p. 497, n. 7) of which a copy is in the possession of the Tôhô Bunka Gakuen 東方
**Introduction**

"The Secret History". It consists of the abridged, consecutive Chinese translation of the last two chapters of The Secret History of the Mongols, precede by a brief introductory statement which reads as follows (1r4-7):

无元史十卷读秘史二卷。前卷载沙漠起茫之事。续零载下

The Yuan people had the Pi-shih [The Secret History] in 10 chüan and the

Hsü Pi-shih [The Continued Secret History] in 2 chüan. The front chüan contain the events of [their] origin in the desert and the continued chüan contain the events of [their] bringing down Yen-ching and annihilating the

Chin. It would seem that it was compiled by their own countrymen. The book is kept in the Imperial Palace and is not circulated. By chance I saw it in one of our old families. I have copied the continued chüan in order to supplement what is not contained in the cheng-shih 102 ("standard history"). 108

The importance of this statement for the history of the transmission of The Secret History of the Mongols on Chinese soil cannot be overestimated, for it marks the beginning of critical, scientific appreciation of the text not only in China, but in the whole world.

102. 9.1r-10r.

108. I.e., the Yuan shih 元史.

109. This statement was translated by William H. Wu, op. cit., p. 486, from the text as quoted in the Su-ku chüan-shu tsung-mu 四庫全書總目 (Shanghai, Ta-tung shu-chü 大東書局) 61.2r-10. However, as he had no access to Sun's work, he was "unable to verify the accuracy of the text of Sun's remark" as quoted in the Su-ku chüan-shu tsung-mu. As a matter of fact, Sun's statement was not accurately cited by the editors who took the following liberties: (1) 元有 (9r4) ("The Yuan people had") was altered to 元有 ("From Yuan times have come down"); (2) 蓋本國人所編紀者 (9r5) ("It would seem that it was compiled by their own countrymen"); (3) 蓋其本國人所編紀者 (9r5) ("It would seem that it was compiled by their own countrymen"); (4) 鎮續卷未 [sic] 以補正史之所不載 (9r9-7) ("I have copied the continued chüan in order to supplement what is not contained in the cheng-shih ['standard history']"); to 鎮續卷未 [sic] 以補正史之所不載 ("so I copy it here, toward the close of my book, because it will make up for some of the omissions in the histories"). Of the three alterations in Sun's text, the last is extremely misleading, leaving the reader with the impression that Sun had copied the Yuan-ch'ao pi-shih into his own work as toto.
Sun's work was copied into the Ssu-k'u ch'iian-shu 四庫全書 194 ("Complete Library in Four Branches of Literature") 195 and provided with a t'i-yao 提要 196 ("abstract") in which it is said (1v3-6):

When [we] examine what he has quoted, [we find that] it is all contained within the yüan-character rhyme in the Yung-lo ta-tien. When [we] compare the one with the other, [we find that] they are identical in every particular. [We] suspect that originally it was a secret work of Yüan times. One of those who, at the beginning of the Hsing, compiled the book, 197 perhaps, copied a duplicate and came out 198 with [n]. [Thus] it came to circulate outside. Hence, [Sun] Ch'eng-tse was able to see it.

At this juncture, the author of the t'i-yao passes judgment on the nature and value of the Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih (1v6-9):

What it records, on the whole, [has to do with] trivial matters. Moreover, occasionally, it concerns the unfounded. It would seem, too, that transmitted words gradually deviate from the truth and become unworthy of complete reliance. Yet, after all, it is an old history of the Yüan dynasty—rarely seen in the world. Apart from the Yung-lo ta-tien, it only appears in this book. Since it contains variations [in comparison] with the ch'eng-shih ("standard history"), [we] may keep it, [for] it also is useful as a reference. 199

After the time of Sun Ch'eng-tse, as its significance for the study of early Mongolian history came to be more fully appreciated, the Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih attracted the attention of an in-

---


195 I have used the translation found in Hummel, op. cit., p. 181a.

196 I translate from the text as published at the beginning of the Yüan-ch'ao tsien-lu pien-tien k'ao in the Lo-shu shan-fang tsung-shu 9.1v8-1v9.

197 I. e., the Yung-lo ta-tien.

198 From the office where the Yung-lo ta-tien was being compiled.

199 Lit., "also is enough to assist reference."
creasing number of scholars—among them some of the greatest of the Ch'ing Dynasty (1644-1911)—whose role in the preservation and transmission of this monumental text is one of the great stories of literary history.

One of the first of these scholars to engage in a study of the text was Wan Kuang-t'ai 萬光泰, the author of a curious little work entitled Yüan pi-shih lüeh 元秘史略 [Abridgment of the Yüan pi-shih]. In the words of William Hung, "To us, the book would appear to be of no value, for it consists only of casual selections—literally polished and not chronologically arranged—from the sectional summaries of the Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih." Wan's preface (1v3-1v8) dated 6 June 1748, however, is both interesting and instructive. His evaluation of the Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih as a source of Yüan history is evident from the following observation (1v5-6):

...The text is not elegant and smooth and it tends to dwell on trivial matters. After deleting that which is unfounded, I compiled the Yüan pi-shih lüeh in 2 chüan.

Inasmuch as the copy of the Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih to which Wan Kuang-t'ai had access to compile his own work consisted of 10 chüan and 2 chüan of continuation, it is tempting to speculate with William Hung as to whether it was the one used by Sun Ch'eng-tse or not.

For the preservation of Wan's little work we are indebted to Yang Fu-ch'i 楊復吉 in whose colophon entitled "Yüan pi-shih lüeh pa" 元秘史略跋 ["Colophon to the Yüan pi-shih lüeh"] we read (4v7-6):

In the late autumn of ting-wei 丁未 [1787] I borrowed a manuscript copy...
from the precious collection of the Chih-pu-tsu ch'ai 知不足齋. 118 When [I] finished reading [it], [I] copied it in order to circulate [it].

The great scholar Ch'ien Ta-hsin 錦衣 119 pursued the study of the Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih 元朝實史 along the lines established by his predecessors. His colophon entitled “Pa Yüan pi-shih” 次元史 [“Colophon to the Yüan (-ch'ao) pi-shih”] has become a classic. Found in his Ch'ien-yen-ts'ang wen-chi 琛研堂文集 120 it opens as follows (20r10-20v2):

Yüan T'ai-tsu 太祖 111 was the creator of an empire, 112 yet the account of his deeds in the Yüan shih 元史 is very careless and contradictory. Only the narration in the Pi-shih [20v] seems to come closer to the truth, yet its language is vulgar and uncouth, 113 not having had the benefit of polishing by a literary person. Hence, those who know [of] it [its existence are] few. 114 It is very regrettable!

In the body of his colophon Ch'ien Ta-hsin instanced case after case in which the Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih is an indispensable adjunct to the Yüan shih. He concluded by saying (22r6-7):

Those who study the sequence of events 125 of both the T'ai-tsu and the T'ai-tsung 太宗 126 reigns must take this book as a point d'appui. 127

As William Hung has observed in his own remarks relative to Ch'ien's colophon, 128 “there is no mention of when and how he had come to have the book.” It is his conclusion, however, that Ch'ien must have had it some time before 1781. 129

114 This was the name of the library of Pao T'ien-po. CL, c.g., HUMMEL, op. cit., p. 618b.
116 Ch'ien 29 (ts'e 7). 20r9-22v7. (The Commercial Press, Shu-pu ts'ung-k'un reproduction of the rare 1806 ed.)
117 I.e., Ching-chia K'un.
118 Lit., “the lord who created (創 = 創) (20r10) as an achievement.”
119 Here Ch'ien is referring to the language of the consecutive Chinese translation.
120 錦 (20v1) = 錦.
121 Lit., “discuss and order events.”
122 I.e., Ogdei (—Ogoi) Q'ayan.
123 Lit., “let them be obliged, in this book, to break their mean.” For the expression 折衷 (che ch'i chung) cf. the entry 折衷 (che chung) — 折衷 (che chung) in the Ts'ui-hai 鄉海, 卑集, p. 96a-b.
125 Ibid.
A contemporary of Ch’ien Ta-hsin, Pao T’ing-po 翟廷博, 138 we learn from William Hung139 completed in 1805 the collation of a copy of the Yüan-ch’ao pi-shih in 15 chüan which was to come into the possession of Han T’ai-hua 韓泰華140 in 1847 and to be bought by Palladini in 1872.141 Regrettably, there appears to be no statement by Pao T’ing-po himself either as to how he acquired his own copy of the text or as to how he evaluated it as source material for Yüan history.

William Hung has also drawn attention to an entry in the Chu-ting hsien-sheng jih-chi ch’ao 竹汀先生日記抄 [Excerpts from the Diary of Master Chu-ting (= Ch’ien Ta-hsin)]142 in which it is mentioned that Wang Hui-tsu 汪輝祖143, a contemporary of Ch’ien Ta-hsin, had once borrowed from the library of Pao T’ing-po a printed copy of the Yüan-ch’ao pi-shih, mutilated at the beginning and the end, with a division into chüan different from that in the manuscript copy in the possession of Ch’ien.144 It is the opinion of William Hung that the correspondence between Ch’ien and Wang on the Yüan-ch’ao pi-shih, to which reference is made in the undated entry, “must have taken place in the closing years of the eighteenth century.”145 As in the case of Pao T’ing-po, there appears to be no statement by Wang Huit-su himself as to how he evaluated the text as source material for Yüan history.

When the great scholar Juan Yüan 阮元146 was governor of the Che-chiang 湖州 province, he acquired, among other works destined to be included in the Imperial Collection, a facsimile copy of the Yüan-ch’ao pi-shih in 15 chüan.147 In his Yen-ching-shih wai-chi 業經室外集 there is a t’i-yao [“abstract”] entitled

---

140 Ibid.
141 Ibid. See also note 41 above.
145 Ibid.
148 In the Wen-hsia-lou t’ung-chu 支選接業書 (1842 ed.) (ts’e 19).
"Yüan pi-shih shih-wu chüan t'ii-yaò" 元秘史十五卷提要[^1] (["Abstract of the Yüan pi-shih in 15 Chüan"]). It opens as follows (17v10-17v1):

The author's name is not given. That its chronology is given in terms of the rat, the hare, the sheep, etc., and not in terms of the "branches [17v] and stems" (支干) probably is an indication that it was written by the nationals (國人).[^2]

It concludes with the following observation (17v8-9):

Although the language is vulgar and uncouth, not having had the benefit of [literary polishing], yet it is useful for research. Still it is a work which those who study history will not discard.

Inasmuch as Juan Yüan was a busy governor, it is possible, if not probable, that he did not write this "Abstract" himself. He may have had it written by Pao T'ing-po or another friend. However, as it is found in his Yen-ch'ing-shih wai-chi, without proof to the contrary, we must attribute its authorship to Juan himself.

The reason for which the Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih was not among the works which Juan Yüan sent up for the Imperial Collection is clearly stated in a colophon by Yen Chieh 嚴幾, appended to the Yen-ch'ing-shih wai-chi, wherein we read (15v4-5):

[In] the above 祀 ("abstracts") in five chüan [there is] a total of 175 titles of books, among which [there is] the "Yüan pi-shih in 15 Chüan," because its language is vulgar and uncouth, has not been presented [to the Throne].[^3]

[^1]: 17v-17v9.
[^2]: I.e., the twelve animals of the zodiac, the Mongolian: qulayna-a, tauclai, qonin, etc.
[^3]: I.e., the, 地支 (t'â-chi) "the [twelve] branches of Earth" and 天干 (t'ien kan) "the [ten] stems of Heaven." Cf. Herbert A. Giles, A Chinese-English Dictionary, Second edition, Revised and enlarged, Shanghai, 1918, "(D)—The Twelve Branches, or Horary Characters" and "(E)—Names and Affinities of the Ten Celestial Stems" in "Tables" (pp. [28]-[29]).
[^4]: I.e., the, Mongols.
[^5]: These words may be compared with those of Ch'ü Ta-hsin, op. cit. 28 (t'ie 7). 90v1: "yet its language is vulgar and uncouth, not having had the benefit of polishing by a literary person."
[^6]: Cf. the remark by Su Sung Ch'eng-ts'ai: "it also is useful as a reference."
[^9]: 17v4-10.
[^10]: Lit., "on the right."
[^11]: There is mention in the colophon of four other books, in addition to the Yüen-ch'ao pi-shih, which were not presented.
In 1805 the eminent scholar Ku Kuang-ch'i 魯廣圻, 183 having discovered in 1804 that CHANG Hsiang-yüan 張祥鑿 122 possessed a facsimile copy of the original printed edition of the Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih in 10 chüan and the Hsii [Continuation] in 2 chüan, persuaded CHANG Tun-jen 張敦仁 124 to borrow it for the purpose of making a facsimile copy. CHANG commissioned Ku to collate this copy with the original copy. For this reason, the recopied text came to be known as the "Ku chiao pen" 顧校本 ["Ku collated copy"]. 144 It was published by The Commercial Press in 1936. 155 The original of Ku's colophon, in his own handwriting, was reproduced photographically at the beginning of The Commercial Press edition of the "Ku chiao pen." For the history of the transmission of the Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih—in particular, the text in 10 + 2 chüan—the colophon is extremely revealing—more so, in fact, than any other source. As William HUANG has translated all the colophon with the exception of the conclusion, 166 I shall confine myself to a translation of the latter which is interesting for its recognition of the work by Ch'ien Ta-hsin. It reads as follows:

Having finished the collation, [I have now] thus noted its history. As for how it may serve for the correction of the deficiencies in the Yüan shih [as] compiled by the Ming, in the colophon of the Shao-chan 少傳 157 as well as [his Nien-erh-shih] 凡史 [十二史考異] 158 [Critical Notes (on the Twenty-

---

144 "As observed by William HUANG, op. cit., p. 444, this "may, perhaps, be rendered as the 'Ku certified copy,' because Ku performed no collation; and what he did was merely to check the recopied text against the original facsimile copy, which he had considered perfect."
158 For this work in 100 chüan, found in the Kuang-yü ts'ung-shu 廣雅叢書, ts'e §13-393. cf. HUMMEL, op. cit., p. 155a. Ku Kuang-ch'i obviously had in mind that
It was the well-known author of the *Meng-lu yu-mu chi* 蒙古遊牧記 [Account of the Mongolian Nomads], Chang Muie 張秉,183 who copied the Chinese translation of the *Yüan-ch’ao pi-shih* in 15 chüan from the *Yüng-lo ta-tien* and published it in the *Lien-yüan-i ts’ung-shu*184 of which he was the editor.185 In his colophon186 dated 13 July 1848 Chang remarked (Sr4-5):

In the 57th year of Tsao-kuang 道光 (1847) I borrowed an original facsimile copy from the Han family 閩氏 of Jên-ho 仁和 and, upon collating [my copy with the latter, found that] there were no errors [in mine].

In his “*Yüan-ch’ao pi-shih i-wen ch’ao-pen t’i-ts’u*” 元朝陶瓷譯文経本題記 [“Superscription on the Manuscript Copy of the Translation of the *Yüan-ch’ao pi-shih* ”] in the *Yin-chai shih-wen chi* 齊齊詩文集 189 3 (te’s e 1) 32v10-33r9 Chang further remarked (Sr3r2-5):

[As to] the order of its chüan, [the compilers of the Ta-tien also roughly made divisions] [to conform to those of the latter]. The original book, it would seem, constituted in all one volume. Before each section there is arranged the Mongolian text to which the translation is appended. As to what has been copied here, it is the translation. Outside [the *Han-tin-yüan* 翰林院]170 there is no other copy circulating. The Mongolian surnames which Ch’ien Tsung-hsiing 晏竹汀171 *chan-shih* 詹事,172 arranged at the beginning of his

part of the *Nien-chih shih k’ao-i* devoted to the *Yüan-shih*, specifically chüan 86-100 (Kuang-yü ts’ung-shu, te’s 328-330).

183 Lit., “To pull and stretch it.”
184 Lit., “a gentleman who is adept at study.”
185 Lit., “Now [I shall not reach detailed discussion.”
186 Cf. *e.g.*, Hummel, op. cit., p. 47a.
188 See note 92 above. Cf. further Hummel, op. cit., p. 47b.
190 15 (te’s e 3) 33r3–6.
191 I.e., the family of Han T'ai-hua. See note 158 above.
192 In Che-chiang.
193 Published in 1849, this work consists of 8 chüan of prose and 4 chüan of verse. Cf. *e.g.*, Hummel, op. cit., p. 47b.
195 1. I.e., Ch’ien Tsung-hsiing, *Ch’ung* being a k’ao. Cf. *e.g.*, Hummel, op. cit., p. 185b.
196 For *chan-shih*, an abbreviation of a longer title signifying “Chief Supervisor of
It was in the autumn of the year 1841, as CHANG informs us,²⁷⁶ that he was able to see the *Yung-lo ta-tien* and copy from it several works, including the translation of the *Yüan-ch’ao pi-shih*. The “Ku chiao pen” of the *Yüan-ch’ao pi-shih*, although it belonged to CHANG Tun-jen in his lifetime, in due course passed into other hands²⁷⁷ and was eventually acquired by the scholar Sheng-yü 惜石,²⁷⁸ a member of the Manchu imperial clan.

From the Japanese scholar Nairō Torajirō 内藤虎次郎,²⁷⁷ we learn that the text was recopied, while in the possession of Sheng-yü, by both Li Wen-t’ien 李文田²⁷⁸ and Wen T’ing-shih 文廷式.²⁷⁸ As observed by William HUNG, however, the *Yüan-ch’ao pi-shih chu 元朝秘史注* [Commentary on the *Yüan-ch’ao pi-shih*] by Li Wen-t’ien was on the text in 15 chüan collated and edited by CHANG Mu.²⁸¹ Inasmuch as the *Yüan-ch’ao pi-shih chu* was published posthumously in 1896—a year after the author’s death—it has neither a heii 序 (“preface”) nor a pa 碑 (“colophon”) by Li himself. There is, however, a colophon²⁸² by his student Shen Wei-hsien 沈惟賢. Entitled “Yüan pi-shih chu pa 元秘史注跋 [“Colophon to the Commentary on the *Yüan pi-shih*”],” it constitutes a critical survey of Chinese scholarship on the *Yüan-ch’ao pi-shih*. The following observation (1v2-4) will suffice to demonstrate the great value which Shen attached to the work:

---


²⁷⁶ For this work cf., e.g., Hummel, op. cit., p. 154a.

²⁷⁷ Cf. Hung, op. cit., p. 445, where I was informed by the author on 1 February 1990, “1841” is an error for “1841.”


²⁸³ For this work in 15 chüan, published in 1896, cf., e.g., Hummel, op. cit., p. 495a.


²⁸⁵ At the end of the 4th ts’ie (1v1-2v3).
If we now look for the traces of the founding of the Yuan which was, [we shall find that] from beginning to end, there is no other which can excel this compilation in completeness. Yet few scholars have availed themselves of its contents. Why? On the barren deserts and in the primitive times, not only [are] the events extraordinary, but the language (of the narrative also) is somewhat uncouth and vulgar...

As for Li’s own evaluation of the Yuan-ch’ao pi-shih, it must be gleaned from remarks in his Commentary. From these it is obvious that he recognized the great importance of the historical and geographical content of the work.

The marginal notes in the Yuan-ch’ao pi-shih chu are by Wen T’ing-shih, who, it will be recalled, possessed a copy of the Yuan-ch’ao pi-shih in 10 + 2 ch’üan. These notes reflect the use he made of his copy. In 1902 he presented a recopy of his copy to Naitō Torajirō in Osaka, Japan, who, in turn, had a copy made for Nakai Michiyo 那珂通世 in Tōkyō. In 1907 Nakai Michiyo published his monumental Chingis kan jitsuroku 成吉思汗實錄 [The Veritable Records of Činggis Qan].

In 1908 Kao Pao-ch’üan 高寶欽 published a supplement to the Yuan-ch’ao pi-shih chu under the title of Yuan pi-shih Li chu pu-cheng 元秘史李注補正 [Addenda et Corrigenda to Li’s Commentary on the Yuan pi-shih]. That Kao, too, valued the Yuan-ch’ao pi-shih highly for historical and geographical researches is clear from the following passage in his “Tzu-hsü” 自敘 [“Author’s Preface”] (1r8-11):

... The danger and the ease of mountains and rivers (= geography), the dissimilarity and the similarity of wind and soil (= customs), together with

118 Lit., “[from] head [to] tail.”
119 Lit., “the scholars who receive learning in some cases also rarely scoop the heart in it.”
120 Lit., “the first opening of the dawn of time.”
124 Tōkyō, 1907.
127 I.e., the relative conditions of travel.
128 I.e., the relative similarity of customs.
the strategy of marching troops (= war), \(^{185}\) and the method of restraining the enemy (= diplomacy). \(^{186}\) are furnished and made clear in the Pi-shih. Right now the ten thousand li (= vast areas) of [our] northwest are adjacent to a strong Russia. Recently, moreover, [with] railway and trains, \(^{187}\) it has been making of the Desert an easy thoroughfare; [with] migration and colonization, \(^{188}\) they have snatched the host (= China), the noisy guests. \(^{189}\) If forethought and preparedness \(^{200}\) are now in order, \(^{201}\) then, as for this compilation, is it that it merely constitutes a help for the study of history? \(^{202}\)

It was in 1908—in the closing days of the Ch'ing Dynasty which had witnessed the gradual growth and development of Yu'an-ch'ao pi-shih scholarship—that the well-known scholar Yeh Te-hui 楊德輝, \(^{203}\) who had come into possession of the copy of the Yu'an-ch'ao pi-shih in 10 + 2 chüan, which had belonged to Wên Ting-shih \(^{204}\)—a copy, it will be recalled, of a copy of the "Ku collated copy" \(^{205}\)—capped the endeavors of generations of predecessors by making the complete work—the Chinese transcription of the Mongolian text, the interlinear Chinese glosses, and the abridged Chinese translation—for the first time accessible to scholarship at large in an excellent block-printed edition. Yeh's accomplishment is the more remarkable, when we consider that the Yu'an-ch'ao pi-shih was not his specialty.

In his Hsi-yüan tu-shu chih 還園讀書志 \(^{206}\) [Annotated Catalogue of the Library of Hsi-yüan] there is an account of the work, \(^{207}\) dated "the 4th day of chia-p'ing 嘉平 \(^{208}\) of ping-wu 丙午”.

\(^{185}\) I. e., military campaigns.
\(^{186}\) I. e., in preparation for war, to mislead the enemy by doing the opposite of what he anticipates and to alienate him from his allies.
\(^{187}\) I. e., the trans-Siberian line.
\(^{188}\) I. e., in Chinese Turkistan.
\(^{189}\) I. e., intruding guests bring about the embarrassment of the host. The inversion 奴主啇賓 (to chu hsiian pin) for 奴賓啇主 (hsiian pin to chu) is for the purpose of tonal balance.
\(^{200}\) For these words cf., e. g., Mathews' Chinese-English Dictionary, Revised American edition, Harvard University Press, Cambridge, Massachusetts, 1945, no. 9240 (p. 334).
\(^{201}\) By "preparedness" is meant "military preparedness."
\(^{202}\) "But the present intention is merely to serve the purpose of historical study?"
\(^{185}\) Cf. Hsü, op. cit., p. 446.
\(^{200}\) For this work in 18 chüan, published in 1928, cf., e. g., Hsü, op. cit., p. 446, n. 82.
\(^{201}\) "1st of 3rd month."
\(^{202}\) I. e., the cheng-yüeh 正月 or "first moon."
(17 January 1907).” As remarked by William HUNG, “It is full of erroneous statements.” 208 YEH’s concluding remarks, nevertheless, are not without interest (29v11-30r3):

As for this book, Mr. K’o [Feng-yun] 柯 [風雲], 210 too, [30r] has seen it, but has cited it very little, because the text with Li’s commentary 211 is already published and may serve as reference. 212 I, however, regard this original text as not the same as the YANG 213 text and the Li commentary. I hope that some day there may be connoisseurs who will transmit it to a cutter. Were it combined 214 with the Meng-ku yüan-lü 蒙古源流 [History of the Mongols], they would make an excellent pair. 215

Later, in his “Yüan-ch’ao pi-shih hsü 元朝秘史序” [“Preface to the Yüan-ch’ao pi-shih”], dated “the 1st day of the 9th moon of the 33rd year of Kuang-hsü 光緒 [7 October 1907],” in which he also labored under several misconceptions, YEH had occasion to signalize, albeit in a rather quaint manner, the singular value of the Mongolian text in Chinese transcription (1r7-1v3):

Moreover, as to this text [under consideration], in each section [first] there is a transcription into words from the original language and secondly there is a translation into sentences from the words [of the transcription]. If we take the entire book and examine it, [we find that,] although there is no abridgment or alteration in [respect of] the translated text in the YANG block-print, yet there is no originally transcribed language. [Thus] it does not escape the condensation and abridgment of omission. Perhaps, the text in the [Yung-lo] ta-tien was [already] thus and the blame assuredly does not lie with YANG. In

---

210 See note 190 above.
211 Lit., “and may thereby be taken as witness.”
212 See notes 28 and 164 above.
213 I.e., published.
216 1v2-2r1.
INTRODUCTION

reality language and letters attain success by helping each other. The first efforts and the later polishings each have their own emphasis. From the standpoint of historiographical requirements, so long as the meaning of the text is made evident by translation, it may furnish material for compilation. In judging it as a translated book, unless one has access to the original language which is translated, how is one to know whether the translated text might not have omissions or insertions, additions or subtractions? Hence, that this text is valuable lies not alone in the fact that the division into chiasm is different from that in the Yang text] and the fact that it has the name of the author.

As to the material disposition of the text as he published it, including such modifications and alterations as he deemed advisable, Yeh has this to say (1v3-7):

[As for] the original text, each line varies in length between [from] 7 ts'um y", 6 or 7 fen ertest to a little less than 8 ts'um of the present-day architectural foot-rule of the kung-pu 工部 and it is 6 ts'um, 8 fen ertest in width. Now we cut [the blocks] on a reduced scale, [but] in respect of the arrangement of the lines ert there is nothing which we have changed. In the book originally there were black lines and ert horizontal marks. We have completely followed the prototype [here]. Since in the original copy there [also] are red lines, then we have cut [them] into double lines [with] a white line to indicate the differentiation. As for the red lines, they were

---

219 Yeh seems to mean that the spoken language grows only as the written language develops and that the written language would not be possible without the spoken language. In other words, the spoken language needs literature and literature needs the spoken language.

219 Lit., "the meanings, in each case, have what they should." Yeh seems to mean that the text then before him represented, as he visualized it, the first efforts in which the emphasis was on the language, whereas the text in the Yang-lo ts-tien (which he had not seen, but assumed from Yano's edition) represented later polishings in which the emphasis was on the requirements of letters.

220 In other words, "alterations."

221 Yeh was in error in thinking that the text "has the name of the author." See pp. 00-00 below.

222 I.e., 0.760 or 0.770 of a ch'ih ertest which consisted of 10 ts'um.

223 I.e., "Ministry (Board) of Works." Cf. E. Brunner and Hagestrom, p.158.

224 §460.

225 I.e., 0.880 of a ch'ih.

226 Lit., "line-items."

227 I.e., "with."

228 I.e., "These are completely reproduced here.

229 In the words of Dr. William Hong (3 November 1954), "This is very awkward Chinese!" However, Yeh means that he changed the red lines of the original into double black lines with a white space between them.
In conclusion Yeh expresses the following opinion as to the value of the text for the control of the Yüan shih (1v7-9):

The world does not lack men who [can] understand the translation. If they utilise the original transcription to reach the original sounds (= language), the errors of the Yüan shih which they should [be able to] correct ought to be not only the [few] items which are recorded in the K'ao-i [Critical Notes] of Ch'ien Ta-hsin.

If the role of Chinese scholars in the preservation and transmission of The Secret History of the Mongols is, as above suggested, one of the great stories of literary history, it is the more remarkable, when we reflect that the original text in Chinese transcription was in a language which, presumably, none of them comprehended and that the translation of the original was in an exotic, colloquial style of Chinese which, to their sophisticated tastes, was intolerably uncouth. Nonetheless, so keen was their sense of history and so profound, their understanding of the research value of primary source material that, despite any misgivings as to those features of the work which to them appeared to be shortcomings, they preserved and transmitted it so faithfully from generation to generation that the text as published by Yeh Te-hui, differing in no significant particular from the "Kü collated copy," is essentially the same as the Ming printed prototype and, presumably, the manuscript text which was copied into the Yung-lo ta-tien.

Of the transmission of The Secret History of the Mongols between the years 1368 and 1382 we know nothing that can be specifically documented textually. However, as the sources for

---

229 I.e., "with."
230 Lit., "double translation." Yeh means that in his time there probably were men who could understand the translation.
231 Lit., "push and get."
232 See note 158 above.
233 From "an old facsimile copy" of which, in the possession of CH'ANG Hsiao-yün of Lu-chou, Ku Kuang-ch'i made his "collated copy." Cf. HUNG, op. cit., p. 489.
234 Between the years 1403-1408. See p. xxiv above. Cf. also HUNG, op. cit., p. 458.
235 See page xxiv above.
the story of the compilation of the *Yüan shih* suggest the circumstances under which the Mongolian text came to be transcribed, glossed, and translated during these years, they must be taken into consideration for whatever light they may shed on one of the darkest periods of the text’s own history on Chinese soil.

In the *Ming shih* 2 (ts'e 2) 2v10-3r1 we read:

On [the day] keng-wu 庚午 [... of the 8th moon ... of the 1st year of (the) Hung-wu (period) (14 September 1368)] Hsü T'a 徐達 entered the Yüan capital 231 and sealed up the libraries and the treasuries, the maps and the books, and guarded the palace gates, forbidding [his] soldiers [3r] to loot ...

In the *Ming shih-lu* [Veritable Records of (the) *Ming* (Dynasty)] 30 (ts'e 6) 1v3-2r3 there is a fuller account of the entry of Hsü T'a into the Yüan capital. It begins as follows (1v3-5):

On [the day] keng-wu 庚午 [... of the 8th moon ... of the 1st year of (the) Hung-wu (period) (14 September 1368)] the ta-chiang-chün 太將軍 238 Hsü T'a, ordering the chih-hui 指揮 239 Ma 馬 240 to guard T'ung-ch'ou 條州, 241 advanced [his] army to take the Yüan capital. When the army reached the Chi-hua-men 齊化門, 242 he ordered the officers and men to fill in the moat and, scaling the wall, to enter [the capital]. ...

It continues (1v8-10):

... He sealed up their libraries and treasuries as well as the maps and books, the precious things, etc. He also sealed up the gates to the halls of the former palace and had the chih-hui, Chang Huan 張煥 243 guard them with 1,000 soldiers. [As for] the “palace persons,” 244 concubines, and prin-

---


236 Lit., “Grand General.”
237 Lit., “Commandant.”
238 The *ming* (名) of this person is not given in the text.
240 C. Herrmann, op. cit.: 57 II (21) (“Ch'i-hua men”). Cf. also Orthner, op. cit., p. 316, n. 144.
241 In the biography of Hsü T'a this same person is called Chang Sheng. See note 246 below.
242 L. e., palace ladies.
cesses, he had their own eunuchs watch over them and ordered his soldiers not to loot . . .

In the biography of Hsü Ta in the Ming shih 125 (ts'e 35). 1r5-1r6 we read (5v8-4):

He sealed up the libraries and treasuries, listed the maps and books, and precious things, and had the chi-hsiu, CH'ANG Sheng 張勝, guard the Palace gates with 1,000 soldiers.447

One of the sources of the above accounts is the “P'ing Yüan-tu k'ai-piao” 平元都捷表 [“Victory Memorial on (the Occasion of) the Pacification of the Yüan Capital”] of Hsü Ta in the Ming shih-lu [Veritable Records of (the) Ming (Dynasty)] 30 (ts'e 6). 11v8-13v3, wherein the victorious general remarked (12v8-10):

. . . [Your Majesty’s] Servant, together with [CH'ANG] Yü-ch'ún [常遇春] and others, already on the 2nd day of the 1st decade of the 8th moon [14 September 1368] had brought the soldiers into their capital city. [The populace] put chiang 色 in pots to welcome us, for, ridding themselves of the basins which they wore upon their heads, they looked up at the white sun.270 One family congratulated another, because, with the clearing of the unhealthy atmosphere,271 they gazed upon the blue skies. [We] humbly pro-

447 The word 主 (chu) is an abbreviation of 公主 (kung-chu).

448 In the Ming shih-lu this same person is called CH'ANG Huan. See note 243 above.

449 Cf. also YiKer, op. cit., p. 318, n. 150.

450 Cf. also YiKer, op. cit., p. 315.

451 For his biography cf. the Ming shih 125 (ts'e 35). 11r8-17r10.

452 I. e., “brought food and drink.”

453 In other words, “emerging from the darkness of the Yüan, they looked up at the brightness of the Ming.” In the words 戴盆而仰月, we have an allusion to a passage in the famous letter of Ssu-Ma Ch'ien 司馬遷 to his friend Jen An 任安 in the former's biography in the Han shu 漢書 62 (ts'e 19). 1r8-23v9, wherein we read (16v5): 余以戴盆仰月不能移也. “I have pondered how one, wearing a basin upon his head, could behold the skies.” By “the skies,” Ssu-Ma Ch'ien meant Wu-ti 武帝 of the Han. Cf. also Edouard CHAVANNES, Les Mémoires historiques de Se-ma Ts'ien, Tome premier, Paris, 1895, p. CCXXVIII: “De même qu'un homme qui porte une cuvette sur la tête ne peut pas lever les yeux vers le ciel, . . .” In note 3 on pages CCXXIV-CCXXV, CHAVANNES observed (with the Chinese commentator): “Lever les yeux au ciel et avoir une cuvette sur la tête sont choses incompatibles. De même servir le souverain et s’occuper de sa famille.” While the metaphor was used by Hsü Ta to convey the sense of “liberation,” it was used by Ssu-Ma Ch'ien to convey that of “humility.”

271 Lit., “pushing away the demoniac atmosphere.” For the allusion in these words cf. the Fen-pei ts'ao' chi Li Tai-po shih 分類補註李太白詩 5 (ts'e 9). 11v7.
Having taken such preliminary measures to safeguard the archives of the fallen Yuan, in due course, Hsü Ta sent them to the south. The treatise in the Ming shih, entitled "I-wen" 註文 ["Bibliography"], opens as follows: 252

After T'ai-tsung 太宗 of the Ming had conquered the Yuan Capital, the general 254 collected the records and sent them to Nan-ching 南京. 255

With the records in hand, the new dynasty was in a position to begin the compilation of the history of its predecessor. According to the Ming shih-lu [Veritable Records of (the) Ming (Dynasty)] 37 (ts' e 7).1.r3-5:

On the 1st day, ping-yin 丙寅, of the 2nd moon of the 2nd year of [the] Hung-wu [period] 19 March 1369] it was decreed that the Yuan shih be compiled. His Majesty addressed the courtiers, saying, "Recently, when we took the Yuan Capital, we got the Yuan Shih-juan-ch'uo shih-lu 三朝實錄 [Veritable Records of the Thirteen Reigns]. Although the Yuan is a perished state, its [historical] events ought to be recorded. Moreover, as historiography (史) records successes and failures, shows encouragement and admonition, it should not be abandoned."

The compiler of this entry in the Shih-lu further remarked (1r8-9):

The Bureau (官) was opened in the T'ien-chieh-asu 天界寺 257 and books such as the Yuan Ching-shih ta-tien 聖世大典 258 [Compendium of Government.

---

252  96 (ts' e 23).1.r6.
253  I.e. Ch'iu Yuan-chang 仇元璋.
254 I.e. Hsü Ta.
255 I.e. the Ming capital.
256 I.e. those from Chinggis Qan to Ijinjibal Qayan.
257 For another reference to this temple cf. the Ming shih-lu 45 (ts' e 8).6-v7.

---

254 "Bibliography"
The same event is tersely chronicled in the Ming shih 2 (ts'e 2), 4v3 in one sentence:

On the 1st day, ping-yin, of the 2nd moon [. . . in the spring, of the 2nd year (9 March 1369)], it was decreed to compile the Yüan shih.

SUNG Lien 宋濂, to whom we are indebted for most of our knowledge of the story of the compilation of the Yüan shih, wrote in his “Yüan shih mu-lu hou-chí” 元史目錄後記 280 [“Postscript to the Table of Contents of the Yüan shih”] (12r3-9):

On ping-yin of the 2nd moon, in the spring of the following year [9 March 1369], the Bureau was opened and by kuei-yu 奏酉 of the 8th moon, in the autumn [12 September 1369], the work was finished.

The finishing of the Yüan shih is also chronicled in the Ming shih 2 (ts'e 2), 5v7:

On kuei-yu [ . . . of the 8th moon . . . in the autumn . . . of the 2nd year (12 September 1369)] the Yüan shih was finished.

The “Chin Yüan-shih piao” 鎮元史表 281 [“Memorial for the Presentation of the Yüan shih”] found at the beginning of the Yüan shih is dated the same day. Although it bears the name of Li Shan-ch’ang 李善長 as its author, it was, in fact, written in its draft form by Sung Lien.282

However, though finished, the Yüan shih was not yet complete. In the words of the “Chin Yüan-shih piao” (2r3-4):

From T’ai-tsu 284 above to Ning-tsang 宁宗 285 below, basing ourselves on the texts of the Shih-sun-ch’ao shih-lu, we achieved a roughly finished history in a hundred-odd chüan.286

The circumstances which prevented the historiographers from

280 For his biography cf. the Ming shih 126 (ts'e 36), 8v7-13r8.
281 Sung hsüeh-shih wen-chi 宋學士集文 1 (ts'e 1), 11v4-12v6.
282 Cf. the Yüan shih (ts'e 1), 1r1-8r10.
283 For his biography cf. the Ming shih 127 (ts'e 36), 7r4-7r10.
284 For the draft cf. the Sung hsüeh-shih wen-chi 1 (ts'e 1), 10v9-11v13.
284 I.e., Ch’inggis Qan.
285 I.e., Özbeg Qan.
286 Although this statement constitutes a drastic revision of the text in the Sung hsüeh-shih wen-chi (11v3-6), the difference is of no consequence, insofar as our purpose here is concerned.
completing the work were set forth by Sung Lien in his "Yüan shih mu-lu hou-chi" (12r6-7):

As for the period of Shun-ti 顺帝, as the functions of the historiographers (史) had fallen into abandon, there were no Shih-lu [Veritable Records] at all which could be cited. Wherefore, [the historiographers] had not succeeded in making a complete work. 269

In his "Lü shih ts'ai-shih mu-lu hsii" 呂氏采史目錄序 269 ("Preface to the Catalogue of Historical Documents gathered by Lü ") Sung Lien reiterated the circumstances and told how he and two colleagues drew up a list of particulars, containing the kind of material needed to complete the history, and memorialized the Throne to the following effect (1r10-12):

Eleven commissioners should be dispatched to travel throughout the empire and send up to the government everything which has bearing on historical events. 270 The Pei-p'ing 北平 of the present is the former capital of the Yüan 元氏. 271 [The] Shan-tung 山東 [area] 272 also is known for important garrisons. 273 There ought to be in existence some documents on the institutions of the dynasty.

Among the commissioners so dispatched was Lü Chung-shan 呂仲善. 274 As related by Sung Lien in the same "Lü shih ts'ai-shih mu-lu hsii" (1r13-1v3):

On [the day] T'ing-mao 丁卯 of the 8th moon [8 September 1369] 274 he reached Pei-p'ing. All edicts and memorialis, appointments 276 and petitions, which were in the form of documents, 277 he collected together. If there were relevant foreign 278 [1v] documents, then he had them translated into [Chinese]

---

267 I.e., Toyon Temür Qa'yan.
268 Had such Shih-lu existed, the pew-chi for the reign of Shun-ti could have been completed as readily as those for the other thirteen reigns.
269 Sung hsieh-shih wen-chi 14 (ts'e 4) 1r9-3r8.
270 Presumably, not only just those of the 36 years in question.
271 Hence, there would be archives with documents.
272 In what sense is the name here used? During the T'ang it designated the whole area east of T'ung-kuan 唐關 and during the Yüan and Ming it designated the area east of Wu-ts'ai-shan 武泰山. This would correspond to the general metropolitan area.
273 Hence, there would also be archives with documents.
274 Chung-shan is his zuo (字). We do not know his ming.
275 I.e., 24 days later.
276 Lit., "appointments and dismissals."
277 Lit., "which were spread out upon documents."
278 I.e., non-Chinese.
texts (有涉於書室則含謬而成文). As for [items] not related in official documents, such as imperial excursions, palace confidences, comments on government, ballads in circulation, as well as the auspicious and the auspicious (in respect) of loyalty, filiality, sedition, and banditry—whether revealed [in] the *yeh-shih* 野史 (“unofficial anecdotes”), or appearing [on] stelae, or found [in] the private writings of sundry scholars—there was none which he did not search out with all his heart.

The materials which Lü gathered also included rubbings of inscriptions on stelae in Pei-p’ing and Shan-tung. As further related by Sung Lien in the “Lü shih ts’ai-shih mu-lu hsü” (1v10-11):

On [the day] *jen-yin* 子寅 of the 3rd moon (9 March 1370) he carted [them] back to the Capital. Afterwards, the [other ten] commissioners all assembled. [I, Sung] Lien, thereupon, had reliable [material] to compile and complete the *Hsü shih* 舊史 [Continued History] in 48 chüan.

Finally, in his “Yüan shih mu-lu hou-chi” Sung Lien wrote (12r8-12v1):

Again, on [the day] *i-ch’ou* 丑丑 of the 2nd moon, in the spring, of the following year (8 March 1370), the Bureau was opened and by [the day] *ting-hai* 丁亥 of the 7th moon, in the autumn (9 July 1370), the work was finished. Again it was presented.

Of the various sources thus accessible to the Ming historiographers for the compilation of the *Yüan shih*, the only two expressly mentioned by title are the *Shih-san-ch’ao shih-lu*, which, although unhappily not extant, provided requisite material for thirteen of the *pen-chi* 本紀 (“basic annals”) as well as many *lieh-chuan* 列傳 (“biographies”), and the monumental *Ching-shih ta-tien*, which, happily partially extant, provided material for the *piao 表* (“tables”) as well as the *chih 志* (“treatises”) of the *Yüan shih*.

Sung Lien, it will be recalled, stated in his “Lü shih ts’ai-shih mu-lu hsü” (1v14-1v1) that, “if there were relevant foreign [1v] documents, then he had them translated into [Chinese] texts.” It

---

[270] I.e., classified material.
[283] Lit., “good and evil in government of the time.”
[281] Lit., “songs and ballads on customs of the people.”
[285] For this encyclopedia begun in 1389 and completed in 1382 see note 258 above.
[284] Cf., e.g., Hung, op. cit., p. 472.
was Wang Kuo-wei 王國維 who, in the light of this statement, first proposed in his “Meng-wen Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih pa” 漢文元朝秘史跋 188 [“Colophon to the Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih in the Mongolian Language”] that The Secret History of the Mongols was translated into Chinese in 1369.189 His observation reads as follows (2r8-9):

Hence the task of collecting history in the 2nd year of [the] Hung-wu [period] [1369] really included the work of translation. Hence the Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih, too, is one of the foreign texts which they translated.

In the opinion of William Hung, “The time may, indeed, have been as Wang Kuo-wei thought, the second half of the year 1369. But one need not be so definite.”190 The author of “The Transmission of the Book Known as The Secret History of the Mongols” suggests, for his part, that the Mongolian text of The Secret History of the Mongols may have been sent to Nanking by Hsü Ta in 1368.191 In other words, the text may have gone down from Pei-p'ing in 1368 together with the Shih-san-ch'ao shih-lu and, possibly, “books such as the Yüan Ching-shih ta-tien.”

Wang Kuo-wei went on to make a second observation (2r10-11):

Regrettably, in the 3rd year of [the] Hung-wu [period] [1370], at the time when they resumed the compilation, they only continued [it] into the events of the single reign of Shun-ti and, in [the case of] the already completed 199 chūan, they had not taken the time192 to revise. Hence in the Yüan shih they never used any of the material in this book.

William Hung, however, inclining to the supposition that a Chinese translation of the Mongolian text of The Secret History of the Mongols may have been accessible to the compilers, when they began their work in 1369, explains in somewhat different terms their failure to use the Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih as source material.193

---

189 Cf. the Hsü-wang Ching-an hsien-sheng i-shu 海寧王靜安先生遺書 (ts'e 7), “Kuan-t'ung chi-lin” 觀堂集林 16. “Shih-lin” 皮林 8, 1r4-2v11.
... They were official scholars interested in finishing the compilation quickly in order soon to go home or to receive rewards by way of promotion. They were not research students under the compulsion of scientific accuracy and completeness. And a hurried comparison of the Yuan-ch’ao pi-shih with the veritable records of the reigns of Chinggis and Ogodei might have, indeed, given them the notion that the latter already included all that was [460] worth taking from the former. Since they could easily rearrange, cut and condense the veritable records, why should they have troubled themselves with the Yuan-ch’ao pi-shih, some parts of which they might even have considered as unbelievable and unedifying? . . .

The weight of evidence, circumstantial though it be, favors, in my opinion, the supposition of William Hung. In any case, it is an indisputable fact that the Yuan-ch’ao pi-shih was not used as a source of the Yuan shih.

Wang Kuo-wei, in the same "Colophon," made still another observation which reads! as follows (2r12-2v2):

As to this book, since Lu Chung-shan sent it up to the Bureau of History, hence in the 15th year of [the] Hung-wu [period] [1382], at the time when they compiled the Hua-i-i-yü, they were able to use [it] for [2v] reference. The layout of the text now transmitted is exactly the same as that of the Hung-wu copy of the Hua-i-i-yü. It would seem that it issued from [blocks] which one had cut at the same time.223 That previous persons had mistaken [it] as an edition from Yuan blocks, it would seem, is [owing to the fact] that they had not investigated [the matter] thoroughly.

Although Wang was, perhaps, too affirmative in asserting so unequivocally that Lu Chung-shan had sent The Secret History to the Bureau of History, it is, nevertheless, a fact, as we know from the entry under the date of 20 January 1382 in the Ming shih-lu,224 that the Yuan-ch’ao pi-shih was used for reference in the compilation of the Hua-i-i-yü.225 Commenting on the Shih-lu entry Pelliot stated in "Le Hoja et le Sayyid Husain de l'Histoire des Ming"; 225 "Le texte est évidemment placé rétrospectivement sous 1382, qui n'est que la date de l'édit ordonnant d'entreprendre le travail; nous ne savons pas la date précise où fut achevée la transcription phonétique de l'Histoire secrète, mais

223 By this Wang meant that the xylographic workmanship was the same in both cases.
224 141 (c2'00)3v8-4r1. See page xxiii above.
225 See page xxiii above.
l'édition du *Houa-yi yi-yü* . . . n'est que de 1889.”  

William Hung, addressing himself to the same problem, remarked: "Had we not known that the compilation was not completed until late in 1889, we might have been easily misled by that passage to think that the *Hua-i i-yü* was already compiled and published in 1882." The date of 1889 is that given by Liu San-wu 劉三吾 in his preface to the *Hua-i i-yü*. While suggesting that the historiographers may have drawn upon the preface of Liu San-wu for some of the entry, William Hung hypothesizes that, since Liu made no mention, among other things, of the *Yüan pi-shih*, they might have drawn upon the preface of the *Tseng-ting Hua-i i-yü* 増定華夷譯語 [Enlarged Sino-Barbarian Glossaries] for the Shih-lu entry. That the historiographers had ample opportunity to avail themselves of the preface may be presumed, if we recall that the Shih-lu of T'ai-tsu of the Ming were not begun until 1399 and were not finally completed until 1418.

It is, therefore, logical to conclude from this that, since the shih-lu entry relative to the *Hua-i i-yü* published in 1889 had been inserted retrospectively under the year 1382—the year in which the decree to compile the *Hua-i i-yü* was issued—and since the reference to the *Yüan pi-shih* is found in that part of the entry which the historiographers devoted to an exposition of the manner in which the *Hua-i i-yü* was compiled—an exposition for which they must have utilized source material which could not have existed prior to the compilation of the *Hua-i i-yü*—and, if the hypothesis of William Hung is correct, prior to the compilation of the *Tseng-ting Hua-i i-yü*, it is not justifiable to assume that the date of 1882 is here as applicable to *The Secret History* as it is to the *Hua-i i-yü*. It must not be forgotten, however, that the decree to compile the *Hua-i i-yü* was issued very early in 1382, specifi-
cally on 20 January. If it were assumed that the work started the same year, it might also be assumed that the Yüan pi-shih was known and available to the compilers from the start. Such assumptions might, indeed, be correct, but unfortunately cannot be proved. When we recall that the Hua-i i-yü was not completed until 1389—seven years after the decree was issued—and that the Tseng-ting Hua-i i-yü was not completed until some time after that, we can only state with absolute assurance that use of the Yüan pi-shih for reference in the compilation of the Hua-i i-yü must have been made sometime between the date of the edict—1382—and the date when the Shih-lu of T'ai-tsu of the Ming were completed—1418, however probable it may be that it was so used from the start.

With his statement of the similarity in layout of the Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih and the Hua-i i-yü, however, Wang Kuo-wei drew a step nearer to the solution of the intricate problem of the relationship between the two texts—a problem which, having previously been considered by such scholars as Wan Kuang-t'ai, Naka Michiyo, Kanai Yasuzô, and Inaba Iwakichi, was later to be more thoroughly investigated by Ch'en Yuan in his Yüan pi-shih i-yin yung-tsan k'ao [Study of the Characters Used in the Transcription of the Sounds of the Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih], and eventually exhaustively treated by William Hung, who reversed with the most convincing of arguments a number of the conclusions reached by Ch'ên Yuan.

The problem of the relationship between the two texts is important, because it involves, on the one hand, the question of the Ming printed text of the Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih and the Yung-lo ta-tien manuscript text and, on the other, that of when and how the original Mongolian text was transcribed, glossed, and translated. In the light of the findings of William Hung we now have a much
clearer picture of the circumstances, even though certain conclusions are still tentative.

In 1988 there were discovered in the Ming Nei-ko ta-k'ü 内閣大庫 in the Palace in Peking 41 leaves of the printed edition of the Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih and a few of the printed edition of the Hua-i i-yü. The 41 leaves of the Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih were included in The Commercial Press photolithographic reproduction of the "Ku collated copy," but, unfortunately, the editors did not reproduce, even though it would have meant duplication in one sense of the term, the corresponding leaves of that copy. Nevertheless, it is the conclusion of William Hung, after a meticulous comparison of the physical disposition of the 41 leaves—the arrangement of the words in the line and the lines on the leaf—as well as the style and structure of their characters with selected leaves in the "Ku collated copy" that, with the exception of certain features peculiar to the printed edition, to which attention is drawn, "the Chang Hsiang-yün copy must have been indeed a good facsimile copy of the so-called 'Hung-wu' printed edition, and that the 'Ku certified copy' must have been a good facsimile copy of the Chiang Hsiang-yün copy." The Chiang Hsiang-yün copy, it will be recalled, was the facsimile copy of the original printed edition of the Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih in 10 chüan and the Hsü [Continuation] in 2 chüan, of which Ku Kuang-ch'i made a facsimile copy which came to be called the "Ku chiao pen" ["Ku collated copy"]. This copy, as William Hung has also remarked, was "so reliable that all textual errors therein must be attributed also to the printed edition, most of which is now lost." Although the "Ku collated copy" was never directly cut on blocks for printing, it was indirectly so cut, in the sense that the manuscript copy of the Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih, which Yen Te-hui printed and published in 1908 was the copy which had belonged to Wen Ting-shih—a copy which had descended from the "Ku collated copy."
As to the Hua-i i-yü, the differences between some of the leaves of the Ming edition, discovered in the same place at the same time, and the corresponding leaves of the old printed copy of the text reproduced in the Han-fen-leou pi-chi 四芬樓秘笈 [Rare Books (in the Possession) of the Han-fen-leou] in 1918 have also been set forth by William Hung in his monumental article. As the dating of these leaves has great bearing not only on the transmission of the Hua-i i-yü, but also on that of the Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih, it is necessary to touch upon this question to some extent. Pelliot had already noted that in the Ming kung shih 明宮史 [History of the Ming Palace] there is to be found "la mention du Houa-yi yi-yu en 88 feuillets." He added, "du Houa-yi yi-yu de Houo Yuan-kie; une difficulté existe cependant; même avec la préface de Lieou San-wou et le fan-li, on n'obtient, dans la reproduction du Han-fen-leou pi-ki, que 88 feuillets; les chapitres sont cependant bien complets. Y a-t-il une faute du Ming kong che (,85 , au lieu de ,85 ), ou manquerait-il à notre édition quelque morceau préliminaire, par exemple une préface de Houo Yuan-kie?"

William Hung, for his part, drew attention to the fact that in the "Ming-tai nei-fu ch'ing-ch'ang pen-shu-mu" 明代內府經筵本書目 ["List of Book-Blocks in the Palace Printing Bureau"], drawn up by the eunuch Liu Jo-yü 劉若愚, toward the close of the Ming dynasty, there are the entries "Hua-i i-yü: 1 pen, 88 leaves" and "Tseng-ting Hua-i i-yü: 11 pen, 1,708 leaves."
Noting that the *Hua-i i-yü* in the *Han-fen-lou pi-chi* consists of \[3 + 1 + 28 + 28 + 24\] leaves or 84 in all and that this is 4 leaves short of the figure given by Liu—a figure of 88, which Pelliot thought might have been a misprint for "85"—or that "some preliminary piece, for example, a preface of Huo Yüan-chieh" might be missing from the present edition of the text, William Hung suggests: "It seems that another interpretation is also possible. The title leaf is certainly missing. The other three missing leaves may be another preface, or another letter to make the latter part of the book 28 + 27 leaves." 234

With reference to the printed *Hua-i i-yü* in the British Museum with six vocabularies Pelliot remarked: "Au complet, l'édition des Ming, y compris le siamois, devait avoir dix vocabulaires. Mais chacun des vocabulaires a seulement un peu plus de 100 feuillets . . . , ce qui donne au maximum pour les dix vocabulaires 1100 feuillets, au lieu que le Ming kong che en indique 1708. En outre, les dix vocabulaires devraient faire normalement dix volumes, au lieu que le Ming kong che, confirmé par une autre source, parle de onze. Il y avait donc dans le Tseng-ting Houa-yü yi-yu complet des matériaux dont la nature nous échappe encore; peut-être s'agit-il, au moins en partie, des additions qui manquent à l'exemplaire imprimé connu et à la plupart des exemplaires manuscrits, mais on ne peut entièrement exclure la possibilité que certaines des "suppliques" aient été imprimées également." 235

To the question raised by Pelliot there was suggested by William Hung a possible answer. Observing that the *Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih* is not listed in the inventory of Lü Jo-yü, despite its typography and layout suggestive of the workmanship of the Palace Printing Bureau, he proposed that, since there is given the serial number of each leaf in each chüan as well as the serial number of each leaf in the book as a whole, the total number of leaves of the complete book can easily be calculated by adding up the numbers of the leaves in the 10 + 2 chüan of the "Ku chiao pen" in The Commercial Press reproduction of the

---

234 Pelliot miscounted the leaves. He should have said "84." Cf. Hung, *op. cit.*, p. 463, n. 69.


text to get a total of 610. With this figure of 610 there is but a discrepancy of 2 in comparison with the figure of 608 required to make the difference between that of 1,100 and 1,708, indicated by Pelliot. “The possibility, then,” he concludes, “is that the Yuan-ch'ao pi-shih was a [464] part of the Enlarged Hua-i i-yü, a reference reader to follow the Sino-Mongolian vocabulary. Perhaps during the Yung-lo period, the Enlarged Hua-i i-yü had not yet reached the size mentioned by Liu Jo-yü two centuries later. But it might have at least consisted of the second edition of the Hua-i i-yü of 1389 and the first printed edition of the Yuan-ch'ao pi-shih.”

William Hung further concludes that the “first edition of the Yuan-ch'ao pi-shih was in all probability without a preface.”

He believes, however, that there was a general preface to the Tseng-ting Hua-i i-yü and that trace of this, as has already been noted, is to be found in the entry inserted retrospectively in the Ming Shi-lu.

In his Yuan pi-shih i-yin yung-tzu k'ao Ch'En Yuan mentions that he has in his possession a manuscript copy of the sectional summaries of the Yuan-ch'ao pi-shih—a copy which came from the library of Liu Yao-yin 劉彥磐, but was originally in the Nei-lo ta-k'u. At the end it has the following brief notation:

One set; two pens. Copied and received in the 8th moon of the 2nd year of [the] Yung-lo [period] [5 September—3 October 1404].

As stated above, the fact that such a manuscript copy was made suggests that the Chinese translation of the text had not previously appeared in printed form and serves to establish beyond all doubt that between 1368 and 1404—36 years in all—the

---

**Notes:**

4. See page 96 above.
7. Page xxv.
text had been partially, if not integrally, translated into Chinese.” For Ch’ēn Yüan, however, the manuscript suggested other possibilities. It was his thesis that the transcription of the Mongolian text of the Yüan-ch’ao pi-shih was made sometime in the Hung-wu period (1368-1398), subsequent to the compilation of the Hua-i i-yü and that it represented “an advanced stage of the technique.” As he discovered in this manuscript certain features of transcription which, in his opinion, corroborated his thesis, he concluded that the Yüan-ch’ao pi-shih was first printed “either simultaneously with, or very shortly after, the first (1889) edition of the Hua-i i-yü”—sometime, in short, between 1889 and 1898.

This thesis, however, was reversed by William Hung, who, having summarized Ch’ēn’s findings and having raised a number of questions, which he promptly answered, convincingly demonstrated that, whereas the transcription and translation of the Mongolian text of The Secret History must have been done early in the Hung-wu period, prior to the compilation of the Hua-i i-yü, the printing of the Yüan-ch’ao pi-shih must have been done “either simultaneously with the later stage of the compilation of the Yung-lo ta-tien, or not long after it.” It is the conjecture of William Hung that, while the printed fragments of both the Hua-i i-yü and the Yüan-ch’ao pi-shih might be from a time considerably later than the Yung-lo period (1403-1424), in the absence of evidence to the contrary, they may be assigned to the years between 1404 and 1418, and that, those of the Hua-i i-yü represent the second edition and those of the Yüan-ch’ao pi-shih, the first.

It is also the conjecture of William Hung that, by the time the text was used as reference for the Hua-i i-yü, there might have existed “at least one copy in the Uighur script, with the Chinese

244 Cf. Hung, op. cit., pp. 468-469.
interlinear transcription, embodying a system of technique, not at all more advanced than that of the Hua-i i-yü, with interlinear translation containing variant renderings of identical terms” 

and “at least one copy of the free and summarized translation, containing differences in literary style, divergent renderings of identical terms, and variant transcriptions of the same personal names—indications that more than one translator worked on different parts.” 

In due course, these two texts were merged into one with the Mongolian original in the Uighur script deleted. However, as to precisely which of these conjectured texts the words Yüan pi-shih in the Ming shih-lu entry refer, as remarked above, cannot, at this moment, be stated without qualification. It is, nevertheless, clear, as previously indicated, that the Mongolian original must have been transcribed and translated before 1404.

A tentative textual lineage of the Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih may, therefore, be represented in its main lines schematically as follows:

1. *Mongolian original (in the Uighur script) entitled *Činggis qayan-u ujuyr [The Origin of Činggis Qayan].


4. *Chinese interlinear transcription—somewhat modified from that in no. 2—and glosses, both derived from no. 2, with the Mongolian original (in the Uighur script) deleted, but with the abridged Chinese translation derived from no. 3 added, the whole—including the colophon—arbitrarily divided into 282 sections and entitled Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih.

---

* Page xxiv above.
* Page xxiv above.

* For a discussion of this title, which may have been Činggis qan-u ujuyr in its primitive form, see “Introduction” in subsequent volume.
5. Manuscript copy of the *Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih* of 1404, derived from no. 3.

6. *Yung-lo ta-tien* text of the *Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih* in 15 chüan, derived from no. 4, yielding:

   a) Manuscript copy of the *Yüan-ch'ao pi-shih* in 15 chüan in the possession of Ch'ien Ta-hsin;

   b) Manuscript copy of the same in the possession of Pao T'ing-po—possibly a copy of that in the possession of Ch'ien Ta-hsin—which came to be possessed by Han T'ai-hua in 1847, to be bought by the Archimandrite

---


⁵³⁶ This manuscript has been integrally reproduced in the *Юань-чоо би-шэн* (Секретная история Монголов), 15 цзюаней, Том I, Текст, Издание текста и предисловие Б. И. Панкратова, Памятники литературы народов Востока, Тексты, Большая серия, VIII, Академия Наук СССР, Институт народов Азии, Издательство Восточной литературы, Москва, 1962 (Yuan-ch’ao bi-shih (Secret History of the Mongols), 15 Czyuan; Volume I, Text, Edition of the Text and Introduction of B. I. Pankratov, Monuments of the Literature of the Peoples of the East, Texts, Large Series, VIII, Academy of Sciences, Institute of Peoples of Asia, Publishing House of Oriental Literature, Moscow, 1962), Pp. 18–Сравнительная таблица деления Юань-чоо би-шэн на цзюань (“Comparative Table of the Division of the Yuan-ch’ao bi-shih into Czyuan”) + 692. On pages 14-18 of his *Предисловие* (“Introduction”) Dr. Pankratov deals specifically with the manuscript acquired by the Archimandrite Palladii. On page 17 he refers to the undated note by Fu-wei (i.e., Huang Pei-lieh 黄丕烈 [1763-1825]) to Lu-yin (i.e., Pao T’ing-po 鮑廷搏 [1728-1814]) on the last, unnumbered leaf of the manuscript (page 601 of the reproduction). As there is no translation of the note in Dr. Pankratov’s “Introduction,” I tentatively offer the following, though mindful of the problems which it contains:

   The manner in which the *Yung-lo ta-tien* copy divides the chüan is not the same as [that in which] they were divided in the original block-print edition. [As for] chüan 1 and chüan 3 therein, chüan 1 is the same, but chüan 3 is not the same [as in the original block-print edition]. As to what chüan 2 herein should have, it must have been cut off and placed at the head of chüan 3. [In a previous ta’s 說 我 have already indicated (cit., *conveyed*) its beginning and end. (註: *error pro 說 ext.*) The two chüan of the Hsi-chi 鑄集 are divided into 18, 14, and 15. [I] have already checked [them] herein. [I] imagine that, [as for] the Cheng-chi 種正 from chüan 3 to chüan 10, [you] have already checked the original block-print. [As it is something] which I have never seen, therefore, I have not in turn checked [it]. Herewith [I] beg that [you, my] senior, Lu-yin, correct [my errors].

Fu-wei.”


⁵³⁹ *Cf. Hung, op. cit., p. 489.*
Palladino in 1872, and a photographic reproduction of which was presented by Paul Pelliot to the Pei-p'ing kuo-li t'u-shu-kuan 北平國立圖書館 in 1933;  

c) Manuscript copy of the same in the possession of Juán Yüan, possibly a copy directly or indirectly related to that in the possession of Ch'ien Ta-hsin, "since Pao was one of two men who assisted Juán Yüan in the selection of rare and neglected books";  

d) Manuscript copy of the same made by Chang Mu, in the autumn of 1821, collated by him in 1847 with the Pao collated text then in the possession of Han T'ai-hua, and printed by him in the Lien-yün-i t's'ung-shu, with a colophon dated 18 July 1848.  

7. Ming printed text in 10 + 2 chüan, derived from no. 4, of which 41 leaves were discovered in 1933 and reproduced in The Commercial Press edition of the "Ku chiao pen" in 1936.  

a) The abridged Chinese translation in the "Hsü" 續 ["Continuation"] in 2 chüan was copied by Sun Ch'eng-tse from a copy in 10 + 2 chüan in the home of a friend into chüan 9 of his Yüan-ch'ao tien-ku pien-nien k'ao [A Chronological Study of Political Precedents of the Yüan Dynasty] under the title of "Pi-shih."  

b) The Yüan pi-shih lièh [Abridgment of the Yüan pi-shih] by Wan Kuang-t'ai, with a preface dated 6 June 1748, was based on a copy of the text in 10 + 2 chüan in the possession of the celebrated Ch'a family, which may have been the same copy as that used by Sun. The copy of Wan's work published in the Chao-tai t's'ung-shu was made by Yang Fu-ch'i from a copy in the possession of Pao T'ing-po.
c) An incomplete printed copy of the text in 10 + 2 chüan was in the possession of Pao T'ing-po.  

8. Facsimile copy of no. 5 in the possession of Chang Hsiang-yün.  

9. Facsimile copy of no. 6 in the possession of Chang Tung-jen, known as the "Ku chiao pen."  

a) This copy, having passed through several hands, came into the possession of Sheng-yü. While in his possession, it was recopied by Wen T'ing-shih.  

b) Wen had a copy made from his copy and presented it as a gift to Naitō Torajirō 内藤虎次郎 in 1902.  

c) Naitō, in turn, had a copy made from his copy for Naka Michiyo.  

10. Wood-block edition of 1908 by Yeh Te-hui of the Wen T'ing-shih manuscript in his possession.  

11. Photolithographic reproduction in 1936 by The Commercial Press of the original "Ku collated copy."  

12. Printed copy of 1942 by Shiratori Kurakichi 白鳥巌, Onyaku Mojun genchō hishi 吐蕃蒙文元朝密史, a reprinting of the Yeh Te-hui text, with corrections, and transcription of the Mongolian text into Latin letters.  

If, as has already been suggested, the years 1368-1382 constitute one of the darkest periods of the text's own history on Chinese soil, how much the more do those from the time when it was written to the year 1368. The colophon to the Mongolian text—
a colophon which, as first noticed by the Reverend Antoine
Mostaert, has a lacuna—reads as follows:

*yeko quirita quiritu quowyana jil yuran sara-da [58v] Keleuren-ü Kode'e
aral-un Dolo'an Bolda-y-a Silgin Ceg [ . . . ] qoyar ja'ara ordos ba(u)yuju bükü-i-
tür büküjü da(u)x'uba.

[We] finished writing at the moment when the Great Assembly was assem-
bled and [when], in the year of the rat, in the moon of the dam, the palaces
were pitched at Dolo'an Bolday 377 of Kode'e Aral 378 of the Keleuren, 379
between both Silgin Ceg 380 and [ . . . ] 381

Probably no part of the Mongolian text of *The Secret History*
has given rise to so much controversy and speculation as its
colophon, for, although it contains a date which is extremely
precise in its own terms, it has not been possible to convert it into
one which has proved acceptable in terms of the content of the
text and the history of the period of which it treats. On pages
16-17 of his Старинное монгольское сказание о Чингисханѣ
[Old Mongolian Story About Чингисхан] published in 1866 the
Archimandrite Palladie wrote:

It is also impossible to speak positively about the time of the writing of the
Mongolian text of the *Yuan' čao mi ši*. The author, after the relation
about Чингисхан, consecrates some pages to the reign of Ogedai and, not
mentioning his death, terminates his tale with a note that the book was
finished in the year of the mouse, at the time of a great assembly on the
Keleuren River. Syu' sum, in one of his notes, without hesitation, assigns this
year of the mouse to the cyclical sign gen'-czuy, i.e., to the 1240th, the next to
the last in the life of Ogedai. But Van' ču an' [sic] dai, abridger of the *Yuan' 
čao mi ši*, assigns the time of writing much farther, on mistaken bases; he says
that in the translated text Чингис often is called Tai ču (Great Ancestor),
and this appellation in the temple of the ancestors was given to Чингис in the
2nd year of the reign Czi da (a. 1309); consequently, [17] the composition
[was] written already after this year; [it is] obvious that Van' guan' dai accepts
the translated Chinese text of the *Yuan' čao mi ši* as contemporary with the
Mongolian; moreover, the appellation of Tai ču, given to Чингисхан, was
used from the first times of the accession of the Mongols in China*; finally,
according to an observation of Van' guan' dai himself, by the word Tai ču

378 I.e., "Kode'e Island."
379 I.e., the Keleuren River.
* Ivi. Ca. 4, 7; 7, 2, 14.
in the Chinese translation [was] rendered the word Čingis khaṅkhan' of the tonic transposition. Therefore, the opinion of Van' guan' dal will not do. In my opinion, the circumstance that the book was written or finished at one of the assemblies in Mongolia—which at that time was an annual custom—proves that the compilation of the present history relates to the times of the first four khan; because, in subsequent times, with the division of the house of the Čingis-khānids, there were not seen any longer the general assemblies within Mongolia, especially on the Kerūlun. It is also possible to point to the simplicity and unaffectedness of the style of the Yuan’ čao mī jū, qualities, which confirm that, at that time, the Mongols had not yet emerged from an original, steppe way of life.

It is hardly an exaggeration to state that, since the time when the Archimandrite Palladiĭ expressed his views on the dating of the Mongolian text of The Secret History, although the problem has been considered by a number of scholars, it does not seem that any substantial progress has been made in the matter of its solution. While there has been a tendency to date the text later and later, with the result that the suggested dates of its composition now range from the years 1228 to 1264, the grounds for later dating have become increasingly hypothetical.

The continuation of this "Introduction" is to appear in a subsequent volume.
THE SECRET HISTORY OF THE MONGOLS

CHAPTER I

§1 [1r] The origin of Činggis Qahan.

There was a bluish wolf which was born having [his] destiny from Heaven above. His spouse was a fallow doe. They came, passing over the Tenggis.\(^1\) There was Batačiqan [1v] which was born when they had encamped at the head of the Onan River, at [Mount] Burqan Qaldun.

§2 The son of Batačiqan [was] Tamača. The son of Tamača [was] Qorìčar Mergen. The son of Qorìčar Mergen [was] A’ujam Boro’ul. The son of A’ujam Boro’ul [was] [2r] Sali Qača’u. The son of Sali Qača’u [was] Yeke Nidün. The son of Yeke Nidün [was] Sem Söći. The son of Sem Söći [was] Qarču.

§3 [2v] The son of Qarču [was] Borjigidai Mergen. He had a wife Mongoljin Po’a. The son of Borjigidai Mergen [was] Toroqoljin Bayan. He had a wife Boroyčin Po’a. He had a youth Boroldai Suyalbi. He had two noble geldings, Dayir and Boro. The sons of Toroqoljin were the twain, Duua Soqor and Dobun Mergen.

§4 [3r] Duua Soqor had an only eye in the middle of the forehead. [With it] he could look unto a place [at a distance] of three journeys.\(^2\)

§5 [3v] One day Duua Soqor went out upon [Mount] Burqan Qaldun with his younger brother, Dobun Mergen. Duua Soqor, looking from upon [Mount] Burqan Qaldun, saw, when he looked, a band of people which, journeying down along the Tünggelig Stream, was drawing nigh, and,

\(^1\) I.e., the "Sea."

\(^2\) Although the epithet Soqor in the name of Duua Soqor means "Blind," it is clear from this text, as remarked by Paul Pelliot in note 3 on page 103 of his posthumous *Notes sur l'histoire de la Horde d'Or* (Paris, 1949), that it also means "One-Eyed." Hence Duua Soqor means not Duua "The Blind," but Duua "The One-Eyed."
§6 [4r] when he spake, saying, "At the forefront of one black cart in the midst of those people which, journeying, are drawing nigh, one maiden is good. If she have not yet been given unto a man, I shall request her for thee, my younger brother, Dobun Mergen," he sent his younger brother [4v] Dobun Mergen for to see [her].

§7 When Dobun Mergen was come unto those people, [he saw that] verily it was [5r] a maiden, beautiful and good, whose fame and name [were] great, named Alan ḡo’ā, and which had not yet been given unto a man.

§8 And, [as for] that band of people, a maiden named Baryujin ḡo’ā, daughter of Baryujin Hollow, Lord of Köl Baryujin Hollow, had been given unto Qorilartai Mergen, chief of the Qori Tumad. That [was] the maiden which was born of Baryujin ḡo’ā of Qorilartai Mergen [5v] at Ariy Usun in the land of the Qori Tumad and named Alan ḡo’ā.

§9 [6r] Qorilartai Mergen, [because] in their land of the Qori Tumad [the people] had forbidden unto one another their land having sables, squirrels, and wild beasts and [because, therefore,] he was displeased with [his neighbours], taking the clan name Qorilar, saying, "The wild beasts of [Mount] Burqan Qaldun are easy to hunt and the land [there] is good," was drawing nigh, journeying unto the Uriangqai, Burqan Bosqasγsan and Šinjí Bayan, Lords of [Mount] Burqan Qaldun. Such [was] the manner in which [Duua Soqor] there requested, and Dobun Mergen took [to wife] Alan ḡo’ā, daughter of Qorilartai Mergen [6v] of the Qori Tumad and which was born at Ariy Usun.

§10 [7r] Alan ḡo’ā, coming unto Dobun Mergen, bare two sons. They were named Bügüńütei and Belgünütei.  

---

* It seems, from this passage as well as those in §§55 and 64 below, that the place occupied by the women was the front, inside the cart.

* In qoriladju we have a folk etymology based on a consonance (Qorilartai Mergen, Qori Tumad, qoriladuyu, and Qorilar) to explain the origin of the clan name Qorilar.

* In place of that of Qori Tumad.

* These two names regularly appear in inverse order elsewhere in the text (§§ 19, 19, 20, 28, 48).
CHAPTER I

§11 The elder brother Duua Soqor had four sons. Mean while, [7v] the elder brother Duua Soqor passed away. After that Duua Soqor was passed away, his four sons, not looking upon their uncle as a kinsman, despised [him] and, separating themselves, journeyed, forsaking [him]. Taking the clan name Dörben those became the Dörben people.

§12 [8r] After that, one day Dobun Mergen went out for to hunt upon Toqočay Heights. Encountering in the forest a person of the Uriangqad, which, having killed a deer of three years old, was roasting his ribs and inwards,

§13 [8v] when Dobun Mergen spake, he said, “Companion, [give unto me of thy] roasted flesh.” Saying, “I shall give [unto thee thereof],” he took [for himself] half of the breast with the lungs and the skin and gave unto Dobun Mergen all the flesh of the deer of three years old.

§14 [9r] When Dobun Mergen drew nigh, carrying [on his beast of burden] that deer of three years old, encountering on the way a poor man which was walking, leading his son [by the hand],

§15 when Dobun Mergen asked, saying, “What [manner of] person art thou?,” when that man spake, he said, “I am a Ma’aliy Bays’ud. I am in a strait. Give unto me [a morsel] from the flesh of that wild [8v] beast. I shall give unto thee this my child.”

§16 Dobun Mergen, at that word, [10r] brake off and gave [unto him] a single thigh of the deer of three years old and, bringing his child, employed him within the tent.

§17 Mean while, Dobun Mergen passed away. After that Dobun Mergen was passed away, Alan Go’a without an husband, then, bare three sons. They were named [10v] Buyu Qadagi,* Buyatu Salji,* and Bodončar Mungqay.10

§18 When her two sons, Belgünütele and Büğünütele, which before

---

* In dörben we have a folk etymology to explain the origin of the clan name Dörben.
* This name appears as Buyu Qatapi elsewhere in the text (§§19, 23, 30, 32, 33, 42).
* This name appears as Buyatu Salji in §42 below.
* For the explanation of this name see §28 below.
were begotten of Dobun Mergen, spake unto each other out of the sight of their mother Alan Go’a, their mother Alan Go’a perceived that they were talking with each other out of the sight of their mother, saying, “Although [11r] this mother of us be without brethren or kinsmen, and without an husband, she hath borne these three sons. Within the tent there is only a person of the Ma’aliy Baya’ud. These three sons are of him.”

§19 [11v] One day, in the spring, while boiling the dried [flesh of] a sheep, making these her five sons, Belgünütei, Bügünütei, Buyu Qataq, Buyatu Salji, and Bodonçar Mungqay, to sit in a row, she gave unto each [of them] a single arrow shaft, saying, “Break [it]!” The single [arrow shaft]—how could they have hindered [it from breaking]?—each [of them] brake and cast away. [12r] Again, she bound five arrow shafts together in a bundle and gave [them unto them], saying, “Break [them]! All five, holding, every person, the five arrow shafts bound in a bundle, were in turn not able to break [them].”

§20 [12v] Then their mother Alan Go’a spake. She said, “Ye, my two sons, Belgünütei and Bügünütei, doubting of me, talk with each other, saying, ‘She hath borne these three sons. They are sons of whom and of what?’ And your doubting is right.

§21 [13r] Every night, a bright yellow man entered by the light of the hole at the top or [by that] of the door top of the tent and rubbed my belly. His light was wont to sink into my belly. When he went out, like a yellow dog he was wont to crawl out by the beams of the sun or moon.

How [can] ye speak [so] rashly?
If one understand by that, [it is evident that]
Its sign is [that]
They are sons of Heaven.

How [can] ye speak, comparing [them] [13v]
Unto the people with black heads? 13
When they become qad of all,
The common people will then understand [it].”

11 Cf. Aesop’s fable of the farmer and his sons.
13 I. e., the common people.
§22 [14r] Again, when Alan Ro’a spake words of admonition unto her five sons, she said, “Ye, my five sons, were born of an only belly. If, like the five arrow shafts of a little while ago, ye be each alone, like those single arrow shafts, [ye] will each [of you] easily be broken by any one. If together [ye] be of one purpose like those arrow shafts bound in a bundle, how will ye easily be [broken] by any one?” [14v] Mean while, their mother Alan Ro’a passed away.

§23 After that their mother Alan Ro’a was passed away, when the brethren—all five—divided among one another their herd and food, [15r] Be[j]günütei, Bğu[nütei, Buyu Qatagi, and Buyatu Salji—all four—took [each his part]. Saying, “He is foolish and feebledminded,” not counting [him] as a kinsman, they gave not a part unto Bodončar.

§24 [15v] Bodončar, not being counted as a kinsman, saying, “While I am here, what [shall I do],” riding upon a grayish white horse with a black stripe along the backbone,¹⁴

With sores on the backbone,
With a hairless tail,"¹⁵
saying,
“[F]f I die, I shall die.
If I live, I shall live,”

set out, betaking himself down along the Onan River. Betaking himself, arriving [at] Baljun Isle, making there a tent [which was but] a grass hut, he lived there; he dwelt [there].

§25 [16r] At the moment when he was so living, seeing a gray falcon which had caught and was eating a black pheasant, snaring [him] with the tailhair of the grayish white horse with a black stripe along the backbone,

¹⁴ Hence his name, Bodončar Mungquy, i.e., Bdončar “The Fool.” In budac(u)’u we have a folk etymology based on a consonance (budac(u)’u and Bodončar).
¹⁵ Which further implies “with black mane and black tail.” See also §§25, 90, and 93 below.
¹⁶ See also §28 below.
he caught and raised [him] up.

§26 [16v] When he was without food to eat, he was wont to espy a wild beast which was compassed of wolves at a cliff and, shooting and killing [him], was wont to eat [him] with [his falcon]. He [also] gathered together [with his falcon] and ate [the remnants of that] which the wolves had eaten. And while, together with his own gullet, he also was nourishing his falcon, that year expired.

§27 [17r] It became spring. At the time when the ducks came, he suffered his falcon to hunger and [then] loosed [him]. He laid [on branches] the ducks and geese [which the falcon had caught], until there stank

Stenches
At every rotten tree;
Stinks
At every withered tree.

§28 [17v] From the back of [Mount] Düyiren a band of people came, journeying down along the Tünggelig Stream. Bodončar, having loosed his falcon, was wont to go unto those people, drink mare’s milch in the daytime, and at night, coming to his tent [which was but] a grass hut, was wont to tarry the night.

§29 [18r] When those people requested the falcon of Bodončar, he gave [him] not. [Thus] they lived side by side, without those people asking Bodončar, saying, “Of whom [art thou the son] and of what [clan art thou]? ” and without Bodončar asking those people, saying, “What people [are ye]? ”

§30 His elder brother [18v] Buyu Qatagi came, seeking his younger brother Bodončar Mungqay, saying, “He is gone down along this Onan River.” When he inquired, saying unto the people which were come, journeying down along the Tünggelig Stream, that he was such and such a man and had such [and such] a horse,

18 See also §24 above.
§31 [19r] when those people spake, they said, "Both man and horse are like unto [those concerning which] thou inquiiest. And he hath a falcon. Every day he cometh unto us, drinketh mare's milk, and departeth. Who knoweth where he hath slept at night? If there be a wind [19v] from the northwest, the feathers and down of the ducks and geese which he hath made to be caught by the falcon scatter and blow hither like a whirlwind of snow. He is near here. Now is the time when he will come. Wait a moment."

§32 [20r] While it was [yet but] a moment, a man was drawing nigh, [coming] up along the Tünggelig Stream. When, arriving, he came, it was, indeed, Bodončar. His elder brother Buyu Qatagi, having seen [him] and having recognized [him], guiding [him], set out, trotting and [20v] betaking himself up along the Onan River.

§33 When Bodončar, following after his elder brother Buyu Qatagi, trotting and going on, spake, he said, "Elder brother, elder brother,

[If] a body have a head, [it is good];
[If] a garment have a collar, [it is] good."

His elder brother, Buyu Qatagi, regarded not as any thing those his words.

§34 [21r] Again, when he spake the same words, his elder brother, not regarding [them] as any thing, gave not an answer unto them. Bodončar went on and again spake the same words. When, at that word, his elder brother spake, he said, "What same, same words hast thou been saying since a little while ago?"

§35 [21v] Thereupon, when Bodončar spake, he said, "The people of a little while ago which are at the Tünggelig Stream are without [a difference between] big or little, bad or good, head or hoof. [They] are [all] equal. They are an easy people [to surprise]. Let us rob them."

§36 [22r] Thereupon, when his elder brother spake, he talked with [him, saying], "Yes, if it be so, when we arrive at our tent, let us, brethren, take counsel and [then] rob those people."
§37 Being come unto their tent, the brethren talked with one another and [then] set forth. They made [22v] the same Bodončar to haste as a spy.

§38 Bodončar, hasting as a spy, seized a woman which was with child and asked, saying, "What [manner of] person [art] thou? " When that woman spake, she said, "I am an Adangqan Uriangqai of the Jarki'ud."

§39 [23r] The brethren—all five—spoil[d] those people and attained unto herd and food, unto people and servant, unto living and dwelling.

§40 [23v] That woman which was with child came unto Bodončar and bare a son. Saying that he was the son of a foreign 17 people, they named him Jajiradai.18 The ancestor of the Jadaran was he. The son of that Jadaradai 19 was named Tūgü'üdei. The son of Tūgü'üdei was Būri Bulčiru. The son of Būri Bulčiru was Qara Qada'an. The son of Qara Qada'an was Jamuya. They which have the clan name Jadaran [24r] were those.

§41 That woman again bare one son of Bodončar. Saying that she was [24v] a woman whom he had seized,20 he named that son Ba'aridai. He became the ancestor of the Ba'arin. The son of Ba'aridai [was] Čiduqul Bökö. Čiduqul Bökö was one whose wives were many. His sons were born as if in heaps.21 They which have the clan name Menen Ba'arin were those.

§42 [25r] Belgünütei became [the ancestor of] those which have the clan name Belgünüd. Bütünütei became [the ancestor of] those which have the clan name Bütünüd. Buyu Qatagi became [the ancestor of] those which have the clan name Qatagin. Buyutu Salji became [the ancestor of] those which have the clan name

17 In Jad we have a folk etymology based on a consonance (jad, Jajiradai, Jadaran and Jadarada).
18 This alternates with Jadaradai below.
19 This alternates with Jajiradai above.
20 In barifu we have a folk etymology based on a consonance (barifu, Ba'aridai, Ba'arin, Menen Ba'arin).
21 In mene we have a folk etymology based on a consonance (mene and Menen Ba'arin). See also §260 for another figurative use of mene.
Chapter I

Salji’ud. Bodončar became [the ancestor of] those which have the clan name Borjigin.

§43 [25v] [He who] was born of the wife which Bodončar himself had taken was named Barim Ši’iratu Qabiči. Bodončar had taken as concubine her which was come as inje 22 of the mother of that Qabiči Ba’atur. One son was born. He was named Je’üredei. Je’üredei before had part in the jügeli. 23

§44 [26r] After that Bodončar was passed away, saying, “[In] the tent there hath constantly been a person of the Adangqa Uriangquad. He is probably [begotten] of him,” they expelled that Je’üredei out of the jügeli and caused [him] to become one which was of the Je’üreyid clan. [26v] The ancestor of the Je’üred was he.

§45 The son of Qabiči Ba’atur was Menen Tudun. The sons of Menen Tudun were [27r] the seven, Qaći Kišüg, Qaćin, Qaći’u, Qaćula, Qaći’un, Qaraldai, and Način Ba’atur.

§46 Qaidu, the son of Qaći Kišüg, was born of Mother Nomolun. The son of Qaćin was named Noyagidai. Because by nature he liked to play the chief, 24 he became [the ancestor of] those which have the clan name [27v] Noyakin. The son of Qaći’u was named Barulatai. He had a big body and was ravenous 25 at food. He became [the ancestor of] those which have the clan name Barulas. Because the sons of Qaćula were ravenous at food, one named them the Yeke Barula 26 and the Üçügen Barula 27 and made [of them] those which have the clan name Barulas. The Barulas such as the Erdemti Barula and the Töö’en Barula were those. Because the sons of Qaraldai were without a head [among them]

22 I.e., dowry.
23 A sacrifice consisting of offering meat which was suspended on a pole. Here again we have a folk etymology based on a consonance (Je’üredei, jügeli, Je’üreyid, and Je’üred). See also §44 below, where the folk etymology based on a consonance is further developed in Je’üreyid and Je’üred.
24 In nopyamity we have a folk etymology based on a consonance (Noyagidai, nopyamity, and Noyakin).
25 In barury we have a folk etymology based on a consonance (Barulatai, barury, Yeke Barula, Üçügen Barula, Barulas, Erdemti Barula, and Töö’en Barula).
26 I.e., “The Big Barula.”
27 I.e., “The Little Barula.”
which should stir [28r] the millet,²⁵ they which have the clan name Buda’ad were those. The son of Qači’un was named Adarkidai. Because he was a backbiter ²⁶ among the brethren, [his descendants] had the clan name Adargin. The sons of Način Ba’atur were named Uru’udai and Mangyutai. They became [the ancestors of] those which have the clan names Uru’ud and Mangyu. Those which were born of the wife which Način Ba’atur himself had taken were named [28v] Siju’udai and Doyoladai.

§47 The sons of Qaidu were the three, Bai Šingqor Doyšin, Čaraqai Lingqu, and Ča’ujin Örtegei. The son of Bai Šingqor Doyšin was Tumbinai Sečen. Senggüm Bilge and Ambayai, sons of Čaraqai Lingqu, were [the ancestors of] those which have the clan name Tayiči’ud. The one which was born of the wife [which had been] [29v] the sister in law of Čaraqai Lingqu was named Besütei. They which have the clan name Besüd were those. The sons of Ča’ujin Örtegei became [the ancestors of] those which have the clan names Oronar, Qongqotan, Arula[d], Sönid, Qabtuγas, and Geniges.

§48 [30r] The sons of Tumbinai Sečen were the twain, Qabul Qahan and Sem Sečule. The son of Sem Sečule was Bülteči Ba’atur. The sons of Qabul Qahan were seven. Ökin Barqay, the eldest, Barton Ba’atur, Qutuytu Münγgür,²⁶ [30v] Qutula Qahan, Qulan, Qada’an and Tödo’en Odçigin were these seven.

§49 The son of Ökin Barqay was Qutuytu Yürki.²⁷ The sons of Qutuytu Yürki were the twain, [31r] Seče Beki and Taiçu.²⁸ They which have the clan name Yürki were those.

²⁵ In buda’an we have a folk etymology based on a consonance (buda’an and Buda’ad).
²⁶ In adaruyi we have a folk etymology based on a consonance (Adarkidai, adaruyid, and Adargin). See also §164 below.
²⁶ The name is written Qutuytu Münγler in §140.
²⁷ In §189 below, however, we read: “His (i.e., Ökin Barqay’s) son was Sorgatu Jürki.” The form Qutuytu Yürki is, in fact, an error for Sorgatu Yürki (-Sorgatu Jürki which also occurs in §123 below.) The alternation Yürki-Jürki is also attested in other sources.
²⁸ See, however, §178 below, where they erroneously are called the sons of Barton Ba’atur. The name Seče Beki is written Sada Beki elsewhere in the text.
§50 The sons of Bartaq Ba’atur were these four, Menggetü Kian, Nekün Taisi, Yesugü Ba’atur, and Dariqai Odögin. The son of Qutuqtu Münğür was Bürük Bükü. The one which clave asunder [31v] the shoulder of Belgütei, at the moment when they were feasting in the forest of the Onan [River], was he.**

§51 The sons of Qutula Qahan were the three, Yoći, Girma’u, and Altan. The son of Qulan Ba’atur was Yeke Çeren. He was the chief of the two [32a] freemen, Badai and Kišiliq. Both Qada’an and Tödö’en were without issue.

§52 Qabul Qahan ruled all the Mongöl. After Qabul Qahan, [32v] according to the word of Qabul Qahan, although there were his seven sons, Abyaqai Qahan, son of Senggüm Bilge, ruled all the Mongöl.

§53 Abyaqai Qahan gave [his] daughter unto the Ayir’ud Buiru’ud Tatar people which were at the Ursü’un River between both Lake Buyur and Lake Kölen. As he was departing, [33r] himself accompanying his daughter, the Tatar Jüyün people seized Abyaqai Qahan. At the moment when they were taking [him] unto the Altan Qahan of the Kitad, when Abyaqai Qahan sent, speaking by the messenger Balayaçi, a person of the Besüd, when he sent, speaking, saying, “When [thou] shalt have spoken unto Qutula, the middlemost of the seven sons of Qabul Qahan, among [my] ten sons, speak unto Qada’an Taisi,” he sent, saying, “Beware, [instructed] by [what hath befallen] me, of yourself accompanying your daughter, when ye will be qahan of all and [33v] Lord of the Nation. I have been seized by the Tatar people.

Till the nails of your five fingers
Disappear through wear;
Till your ten fingers
Are worn away through rubbing.”**

**See §131 below.

**See §276 below.

**Abyaqai Qahan, although not in the line of succession, was named by Qabul Qahan as his successor (§53). He, in turn, anticipating the election of which we
§54 [34r] At that time, at the moment when Yesügei Ba'atur was going, falconing at the Onan River, he encountered Yeke Čiledü of the Merkid, which, having taken a maiden from the Olqunu'ud people and having made [her] to arise, was drawing nigh. When he leaned forward [upon his horse] and looked, seeing a woman whose beauty [was] other [than ordinary], he hasted back to his tent and came [back], guiding his elder brother Nekün Taisi and his younger brother Daritai Odögin.

§55 [35r] With [their] arriving, Čiledü was afraid. He had a swift dun. With [his] striking the thigh of his dun and [his] fleeing over a hill, all three followed behind him. With Čiledü's returning round about a spur [of the hill] and coming unto his cart, then, when Hô'elîn Üjin spake, saying, "Hast thou observed those three men? They are other [in countenance] [35v] than [all other] countenances. They have the countenance [of being desirous] of attaining unto thy life. If there be [for thee] but thy life, there are [for thee] Maidens
At every forefront; **
Women
At every black cart.

If there be [for thee] but thy life, thou shalt find a maiden or a woman. Thou shalt also name Hô'elîn [her] which hath another name. Save thy life. Go scenting my scent," ** she put off her shift and, with [his] reaching forth [his hands] and taking [it] from upon [36r] [his] horse and with [all] three coming round about the spur [of the hill] and drawing nigh, Čiledü struck the thigh of the swift dun, fled in haste, and fled up along the Onan River.

§56 [36v] All three, pursuing from behind, chased until they had passed over seven hills and, when they were come, returning, Yesügei Ba'atur led [the beast of] Hô'elîn Üjin [37r] by the tether,

read below (§37), designated in the manner herein related two candidates: Qutula, a son of Qabul Qahan, and Qada'an Taisi, one of his own sons. With the eventual election of Qutula (§37) the line of succession reverted to the family of Qabul Qahan.

** I.e., at the forefront of every cart. See note 8 above.

** See also §345 below in which it is related that Father Münügiy scents the hat of his son Teb Tenggeri.
his elder brother Nekün Taisi guided, and his younger brother Daritai Odčigin rode beside the shafts and, at the moment when they drew nigh, when Hö'elün Üjin spake, having said, “Mine elder brother Čiledü is one

Whose tuft hath never blown
Against the wind;
Whose belly hath never hungered
In the desert land.

Now how, tossing his two braids **[of hair]** one time [37v] on his back, tossing [them] one time on his breast, one time forward, one time backward, how [so] doing, goeth he?,” at the moment when, wailing with a loud voice

Till she stirred up the Onan River;
Till she shook the woods and valley,

she drew nigh, when Daritai Odčigin going, riding beside [her], spake, he warned [her], saying,

“Thine who embraced [thee] [38r]
Hath much passed over passes.

Thine who is bewailed [of thee]
Hath much passed over waters.

If [thou] shout,
Though he look back, he will not see thee.

If [thou] track [him],
Thou shalt not find his way.”**

Be still!” So Yesügei brought Hö'elün Üjin unto his tent. Such [was] the manner in which Yesügei brought Hö'elün Üjin.

§57 [39r] Forasmuch as Ambayai Qahan had named both Qada'an and Qutula, all the Mongyol and Tayič'iud assembled [in] the Qorqonay Valley of the Onan [River] and made Qutula qahan. As for the rejoicing of the Mongyol, they were wont to rejoice,

**For another reference to the “braids [of hair]” see §414 below.
**See also §188 below for a somewhat similar passage.
dancing and feasting. Having raised up Qutula [as] qa, they danced round about the Branching Tree of Qorqonay [Valley], until there was

A ditch up to [their] ribs;

[until there was]

Dust up to [their] knees.

§58 Qutula having become qahan, both [he and] Qada'an Taisi set forth against the Tatar people. Thirteen times they joined battle with both Kötön Baraqqa and Jali Buqa of the Tatar, [but] they were not able

To avenge
The avengement,
To requite
The requital

of Ambayai Qahan.

§59 Then, when Yesügei Ba'atur came, having spoiled the Tatar such as Temüjin Úge and Qori Buqa of the Tatar, then, when Hœ'elûn Újin was with child, at the moment when she was at Deli'ûn Hill of the Onan [River], even then Činggis Qahan was born. At the moment when he was born, he was born, holding in his right hand a clot of blood the size of a knuckle bone. Such [was the manner in which] one gave [unto him] the name Temüjin, saying, "He was born at the moment when one brought Temüjin Úge of the Tatar."

§60 [41r] Of Hœ'elûn Újin of Yesügei Ba'atur these four sons, Temüjin, Qasar, Qâči'un, and Temüge, were born. One daughter named Temüliün [41v] was born. At the moment when Temüjin was nine years old, Joči Qasar was seven years old; Qâči'un Elêi was five years old; Temüge Odêçin was three years old; Temüliün was [yet] in the cradle.

§61 [42r] Yesügei Ba'atur, at the moment when Temüjin was

**For further reference to this storied tree see §§117 and 206 below.**

**For other examples of this frequently used couplet see §§154, 214, and 254 below.**

**See also §78 below.**
nine years old, having taken Temūjin, betook himself unto the Olqunu’ud people, kindred of Mother Hö’elün, saying, “I shall request a maiden from the brethren of his mother.” At the moment when he was going, he encountered Dei Sečen of the Unggirad between both [Mount] Čegčer and [Mount] Čiqurgu.

§62 [42v] When Dei Sečen spake, he said, “Quda 42 Yesügei, [thou] art drawn nigh, getting thee unto whom?” When Yesügei Ba’stur spake, he said, [43r] “I am drawn nigh unto the Olqunu’ud people, the brethren of the mother of this my son, saying, ‘I shall request a maiden.’” When Dei Sečen spake, he said, “This thy son is a son

With fire in his eyes,
With light in his face.”

§63 Quda Yesügei, I, this night, dreamed a dream, I. A white gerfalcon, 43 holding both sun and moon, flew hither and is lighted into my hand. When I spake this my dream unto people, saying, ‘[Hitherto,] when I have beheld the sun and the moon, they have been seen. Now this gerfalcon, holding and bringing [them hither], is lighted into my hand. It is descended [all] white. What good thing sheweth it?’,—Quda Yesügei, I saw this my dream, at the moment when thou wast leading thy son hither. I dreamed a dream—a good [one]. What dream is it? A good omen of you Kiyad people is come and hath [told] [that thou wast coming hither].

§64 [44v] We Unggirad people from days of old,

Having [for us] the comeliness
Of the daughters of [our] daughters,

42 A kinship term used by and in reference to those who are relatives by virtue of the marriage of their children.
43 For the same words, in inverse order, applied to Börte, the future bride of Temūjin, see §66 below. See also §§82 and 149 below.
44 White was the color of good omen with the Mongols. For other examples of this epithet see also “white rock” in §80, “white felt” in §189, “white standard with nine feet [= scallop]” in §292, “white clothing” and “white geldings” in §316, and “white gerfalcons” and “white geldings” in §399.
And the beauty
Of [our] daughters,

have not been disputing empire.
For those of you which are become qahan,
We make [our] daughters comely of cheek
To ride in a Qassy "cart
And, making [one] to harness a black he camel [to it],
Making him to trot, we go [unto the qahan]
And make [them] to sit together [with the qahan]
On the qatun throne.

We dispute not [either] empire [or] peoples. [45r]
Raising up our daughters good of beauty,
We make [them] to ride in a cart with a forefront "
And, making [one] to harness a blackish he camel [to it],
Accompanying [them], we go [unto the qahan]
And make [them] to sit at one of the sides [of the qahan]
On a high throne.

From of old the Unggirad people
Have had round shields [which are] qatun,
Petitions [which are] daughters."
We have had our being
By the comeliness
Of the daughters of [our] daughters
And the beauty
Of [our] daughters."
§65 [45v] As for our boys,
One regardeth [our] encampment.  
[As for] our girls,
[Their] beauty is beheld.  

Quda Yesügei, let us go unto my tent. My daughter is little. 
Let [my] quda see [her].” Dei Sečen guided [him] unto his tent and made [him] to light [off his horse].

§66 [46r] When he saw his daughter, he saw a maiden 
With light in her face,
With fire in her eyes,”

and he suffered [her] to enter into his thoughts. She was ten 
years old, one year older than Temūjin. She was named Börte. 
Tarrying the night, when, the next morning, he requested his 
[46v] daughter, when Dei Sečen spake, he said, “If I give [my 
daughter], [after] letting [thee] request [her] many times, shall [I] 
be exalted? If [I] give [my daughter], [after] letting [thee] request 
[her but] a few times, shall [I] be abased? [It will not be so, 
for] the destiny of a girl is not to wax old at the door where 
she was born. I will give [unto thee] my daughter. And go [thou], 
leaving thy son as son in law.” There being “yea” on the one side 
and the other, [47r] when Yesügei Ba’atur spake, having said, 
“I shall leave my son as son in law. My son is afraid of dogs. 
Quda, suffer not my son to be affrighted at dogs,” giving his led 
horse as a token and leaving Temūjin as son in law, he departed. 

6I.e., “When an Unggirad family requests a girl of another clan for its son— 
that which is always the case in view of the custom imposing exogamy—, the parents of 
the girl, before giving their consent ‘regard the encampment,’ that is to say examine 
the state of the fortune, the riches in herds, etc. of the family which wishes to ally 
itself with them and give their girl only if they judge that the latter will lack for 
nothing in her new abode.” Antoine Montağer, op. cit., p. [18].
6I.e., “For that which regards the Unggirad girls, the case is other. The families 
of another clan which request them for their sons regard only the beauty, and as the 
latter is never wanting, the Unggirad girls always find a good match.” Antoine 
Montağer, op. cit., p. [18].
6See note 66 above.
6I.e., “in the family.”
§67 [47v] Yesügei Ba'atur encountered on the way the Tatar people which were feasting at the Šira Steppe of [Mount] Čegčer, and, being thirsty, he lighted [off his horse] at their feast. [48r] Those Tatar recognized [him]. Having said, "Yesügei Kiyan is come," remembering their enmity [provoked by the fact] that they had been spoiled [by him], secretly harming [him], they poisoned [him] and, mixing poison, they gave [it unto him in his food]. On the way, [being] bad, he went on and, going three days, being arrived at his tent, he was bad.

§68 [48v] When Yesügei Ba'atur spake, he said, "Within me [I] am bad. Who is at hand?" When one said, "Münglig, the son of Old Man Čaraqa of the Qongqotad, is nigh," calling [him], he made [him] to come and, when he spake, having said, [49r] "Münglig, my child, I am one whose sons are little. When I came [back], after leaving my son Temüjin as son in law, I was secretly harmed on the way by the Tatar people. Within me [I] am bad. Know thou how thou shalt care for thy little younger brethren "which shall have remained and of thine elder sister in law [which is] a widow." Go quickly and fetch my son Temüjin, Münglig, my child," [49v] he passed on.

**I.e., "my little sons." See also §872 where Tolui calls his sons the "younger brethren" of Ögödei.

**I.e., He'düm Ujin. See also §872 where Tolui calls his wife Berüde the "younger sister in law" of Ögödei.
§69 [1r] When Münlig, not violating the word of Yesügei Ba'atur, went and spake unto Dei Sečen, he said, “Elder Brother Yesügei thinketh exceedingly on Temüjin and his heart paineth. [I] am come for to take Temüjin.” When Dei Sečen spake, he said, “If the *quda* think on his son, let him go. When he shall have seen [him], let him [1v] quickly come [back],” and Father Münlig came with Temüjin.

§70 That spring, when both Örbei and Soqatai, the *qatud* of Ambayai Qahan, offered unto the ancestors the [sacrifice called] *γαρικ συνώ*, 1 Hö'elün Üjin went, [but,] arriving too late, was left behind [the others]. 2 When Hö'elün Üjin spake unto both Örbei and Soqatai, she said, “Say ye [unto yourselves], ‘Yesügei Ba’atur [2r] hath died,’ and because my sons are not [yet] big, why leave ye [me] behind from the part of the offerings to the ancestors, from the remainder of the meat for sacrifice and from the meat offered [itself]? Ye intend, before mine eyes, to eat [without inviting me to partake of the food] and to take journey, not waking [me].”

§71 [2v] At that word, when the two *qatud*, Örbei and Soqatai, spake, having said,

“Thou [art] one for whom holdeth the rule that [something] is not given [her to eat] by calling [her].

Thou [art] one for whom holdeth the custom that she eateth, if she happen by chance upon [something to eat].

---

1. The exact meaning of this technical term, glossed “to burn food in the earth and offer [it] in sacrifice,” is unknown. Cf. Antoine Mostaert, op. cit., pp. [16];[18].

2. I.e., “She did not receive her part of the meats offered, the parts being already distributed.” Cf. Antoine Mostaert, op. cit., p. [22].
Thou [art] one for whom holdeth the rule that [something] is not given [her to eat] by inviting [her].
Thou [art] one for whom holdeth the custom that she eateth, if [something to eat] be attained.

[Is it] because thou sayest [unto thyself], ‘Ambayai Qahan hath died,’ [that we] have been so spoken [against] even by [thee], Hö'elün?

§72 [3r] It were best [to act on this wise]: Forsaking in the encampment these, mothers and sons, take journey and take ye [them] not away,” from the morrow Taryutai Kiriltuy of the Tayiči'ud and Tayiči'ud such as Tödö'en Girte removed down along the Onan River. When they [3v] forsook Hö'elün Üjin, mothers and sons, and took journey, at the moment when Old Man Čaraqa of the Qongqotad went and admonished [them], when Tödö'en Girte spake, having said,

"The deep water hath dried up.
The bright stone is broken to pieces,"

he took journey. Saying, “How admonishest thou [us]?” from behind he pierced Old Man Čaraqa along the back with a spear.

§73 [4r] At the moment when Old Man Čaraqa, being wounded, came [back] to his tent and lay down with difficulty, Temūjin went for to see [him]. Then, when Old Man [4v] Čaraqa of the Qongqotad spake, he said, “When, taking [with them] the people which had been assembled by thy good father and the people of us all, they were taking journey, as I was admonishing [them], it was so done [unto me].” At that, Temūjin, having wailed, went out and departed. When, forsaking Hö'elün Üjin, they were taking journey, holding the standard, she herself set forth and caused half of the people to return. And those [5r] people which had been caused to return, not remaining, journeyed after the Tayiči'ud.

§74 After that the Tayiči'ud brethren had forsaken in the encampment Hö'elün Üjin—the widow—the sons and the little ones, [5v] the mothers and the sons, and had taken journey,

*I. e., “The situation is now quite different.” See also §§147 and 209 below.*
When Hö’elün Üjin, a woman being born able,
Nourished her little sons,
Putting [her] boyta on [her head] so as to make [it] fast,
Girding herself so as to tuck up her skirt, *
She ran up and down the Onan River,
Gathered wild pears and moyilsun [fruit],
And day and night nourished [their] gullets.
When Mother Üjin, which was born with gall, * [6r]
Nourished her fortunate sons,
Taking in hand a juniper stick,
She nourished [them] by digging the sudun [root] and
the Ḟińqina [root].
The sons which were nourished on the mountain shallot
and shallot
By Üjin, the Mother,
Attained unto becoming qad.
The sons which were nourished on the ja’uqasu [root]
By the orderly Mother Üjin
Became wise men [which were] lawgivers.

§75 [6v] The qa’uluqa * sons
Which were nourished on wild shallot and shallot
By the beautiful Üjin
Became qoyira’ud ? noblemen.
[After] becoming male noblemen,
They became bold and courageous.
Saying unto one another, “Let us nourish our mother,” [7r]
Sitting on the bank of Mother Onan,*
Preparing for one another fishhooks,
Angling and hooking
Maimed and misshapen fishes,
Bending hooks out of needles,

*See also §854 below.
*With the Mongols, as with the Chinese, the gall is the seat of courage.
*This word, not glossed, is not elsewhere attested.
*This word, not glossed, is not elsewhere attested.
*For the epithet “Mother” applied to the Onan River see also “Mother Earth” in §§115 and 265 and “Mother Sun” in §238 below.
Hooking _jebüge_ [fishes] and _quäara_ [fishes],
Tying nets,
Catching little fishes,
Moreover, they nourished the benefit of their mother.

§76 One day, while Temüjin, Qasar, Begter, and Belgütei—all four—were sitting together [on the bank] and pulling a hook, a bright _soqosun_ was come unto [it]. Both Begter and Belgütei wrested [it] from both Temüjin and Qasar. When both Temüjin and Qasar came [back] to the tent and spake unto Mother Üjin, as they said, “We had a bright _soqosun_ which had bitten the hook wrested from us by both brethren Begter and Belgütei,” when Mother Üjin spake, she said, “Cease [ye]. Why do ye brethren so unto one another? At the moment when we say,

> We have no companion other than [our] shadow;
> We have no whip other than a tail.*

How [8v] shall we avenge the bitterness of our Tayiči’ud brethren? why are ye without accord [even] as formerly the five sons of Mother Alan? Do ye not that.”

§77 Then when both Temüjin and Qasar spake, not loving [the word of their mother], having said, “One time, lately, they so wrested from [us] a lark which we had shot with a bone-tipped arrow. Now again they have so wrested [from us]. How can we live together?” casting aside the [felt] door [of the tent], they went out and departed. At the moment when Begter was sitting on a knoll, watching the nine horses, the isabella geldings, Temüjin hiding from behind and Qasar hiding from in front, at the moment when they were drawing out their arrows and were arriving, when Begter, having seen [them], spake, having said, “At the moment when we, not being able to suffer the bitterness of the Tayiči’ud brethren, are saying, ‘By whom shall we be able to take vengeance?’ * why cause ye me to become

---

*I.e., a tail of a horse. For this couplet see also §§77 and 79 below.
*See §§5 below.
**See §79 below.
A lash in the eye;
An impediment in the mouth? 12

Inasmuch as

Ye have no companion other than [your] shadow;
Ye have no whip other than a tail,11

why have ye so thought? Destroy [ye] not my firepan! 14 For-sake 16 [ye] not Belgitei!15, he sat down with his legs crossed and waited. Both Temüjin and Qasar shot him close by from in front and behind and [10v] then departed.

§78 (11r) With [their] coming into the tent, when Mother Üjin, perceiving the faces of her two sons, spake, saying, "[Ye] who have destroyed,

When he fiercely issued
From my hot [womb],
This one 16 was born holding
A black clot of blood
In his hand.17

[Even] as the Qasar 18 dog
Which biteth his own afterbirth; 19
[Even] as the panther [11v]
Which rusheth at the cliff;
[Even] as the lion
Which is not able to repress his fury;
[Even] as the python
Which saith, 'I shall swallow [my prey] alive';
[Even] as the gerfalcon
Which rusheth at his own shadow;

---

12 I.e., "Why do you regard me as something which hinders you from seeing and from eating?"
14 See note 8 above.
16 I.e., "my hearth."
18 I.e., "kill."
19 I.e., Temüjin.
16 See §59 above.
16 I.e., Khazar.
18 See also §344, where Hō'elūn Üjin, in defense of Qasar, scolds Temüjin.
[Even] as the čuraqa [fish]
Which swalloweth in silence;
[Even] as the he camel
Which biteth the heel of his colt;
[Even] as the wolf
Which relieth upon the snow storm [to stalk his prey];
[Even] as [12r] the mandarin duck
Which, because it is not able to overtake his chickens,
eateth his chickens;
[Even] as the jackal
Which, if one touch [him], maketh a league [with others] to defend his den;
[Even] as the tiger,
Which, in seizing [his prey], doth not hesitate;
[Even] as the barus,  
Which rusheth foolishly [upon his prey],
[Ye] have destroyed!
At the moment when ye have no companion other than [your] shadow;
At the moment when ye have no whip other than a tail,  

at the moment when ye are not able to suffer the bitterness of the Tayič'i'ud brethren and at the moment when ye [12v] are saying, 'By whom shall we take vengeance?,' ye so do unto one another, saying, 'How shall we live?'"  

Citing
Ancient words;
Quoting
Old words,  

she was exceedingly displeased with her sons.

§ 79 [13r] Mean while Taryutai Kiriltuy of the Tayič'i'ud, [13v] leading his companions, came, saying,

20 So as not to be seen.
21 This word, not elsewhere attested, is glossed: "name of [a kind of] animal."
22 See note 9 above.
23 See §260.
"The wicked
Have molted.
The drivellers
Are grown up."  

Being afraid, mothers and sons, elder brethren and younger brethren made a fort in the thick forest. Belgütei, tearing trees asunder, built a fence. While Qasar was exchanging arrow shots, at the moment when they were thrusting Qaçi‘un, Temüge, and Temüül—in all three—between the clefts in a cliff and were battling, [14r] when the Tayiči‘ud shouted and spake, it being shouted [by them], saying, "Send your elder brother Temüjin. [We] have no need of the others of you," the Tayiči‘ud seeing that they had made Temüjin to set forth, making [him] to escape, and that he was fleeing to the woods, pursued [him], [but,] as he had slipped into the forest of Tergüne Heights, the Tayiči‘ud, not being able to enter, watched round about the forest.

§80  [15r] Temüjin spent three nights within the forest and, saying, "I shall go out," at the moment when he was drawing nigh, leading his horse, his saddle loosed itself and remained behind. When he returned and looked, [he saw that] the saddle, although the breast strap was [yet] attached and the belly strap was [yet] buckled, had loosed itself and had remained behind. Saying, "As for the belly strap, let it be." But how could the breast strap loose itself? [15v] Is Heaven staying [me]," he returned and again spent three nights. Again, at the moment when he was drawing nigh to go out, at the outlet of the forest a white rock the size of a tent fell in the outlet, stopping [it]. Saying, "Is Heaven staying [me]?" he returned and again spent three nights. Again, having been without food nine nights, saying, "How shall I die without a name? I shall go out," round about that white rock the size of a tent, which was fallen, stopping [16r] the outlet, [Temüjin] having cut with his arrow-whittling knife the bushes [which

I. e., "The sons of Mother Hö‘elun are no longer infants and have already attained to a certain age."

II. e., "The saddle could come off, taking the belly strap with it over the rump of the horse."
had grown so thick] that, if one had assayed to go out, he would not have been able,24 and, having made his horse to slip through, with [his] going out—the Tayiči’ud were [yet] watching [the outlet]—they seized and took [him] away.

§81 [16v] Taryutai Kiriltuy, taking Temüjin away, giving an order [17r] unto his people, at the moment when he was rotating [him] in the [divers] ayil, making [him] to spend one night in each,27 on the sixteenth of the first moon of summer,28 the “red circle day,” 29 the Tayiči’ud feasted on the bank of the Onan [River] and, when the sun was set, they dispersed themselves. A weak lad had taken Temüjin unto that feast. Waiting until [17v] the people of the feast had dispersed themselves, [Temüjin] pulled the buya’u away from that weak lad, and, having smote his head once, running, saying [unto himself] that he would be seen, if he lay within the forest of the Onan [River], he lay in the stream of water and, suffering his cangue to flow down along the water, he lay [with only his] face exposed.

§82 [18r] At the moment when that person which had lost [him] was shouting with a loud voice, [18v] saying, “I have lost the prisoner!” the Tayiči’ud, which had dispersed themselves, assembled, and, in the moonlight [as bright] as day, they searched the forest of the Onan [River]. Even as Sorqan Šira of the Suldus was passing by, perceiving that [Temüjin] was lying in the stream, when he spake, having said, “Even because thou art so skilful, thou art so envied by thy [19r] Tayiči’ud brethren, saying,

‘He hath fire in his eyes;
He hath light in his face.’ 30

---

24 See also §102 below.
25 The practice of lodging prisoners in the tents of private persons in rotation was common among the Mongols.
26 See also §§118 and 163 below.
27 In the expression hula’an tergel üdür “red circle day,” the meaning of hula’an “red” is not clear. The words tergel üdür were used of the fifteenth of any lunation, but, as we see from the Secret History, the words hula’an tergel üdür were used only of the sixteenth of the fourth lunation, an auspicious day. In both cases the word tergel may refer to the “disk” of the moon.
28 See Chapter I, note 44.
Lie [thou] so. [I] shall not tell," he passed by. Again, at the moment when they were saying unto one another, 'Let us return and search [further],' when Sorqan Šira spake, he said, "Let us, having seen our places along our same divers ways, which we saw not [before], return and search [further]." "Yea," they said unto one another. While they returned and [19v] searched [further] along the same divers ways, again, when Sorqan Šira passed by and spake, having said, "Thy brethren are drawing nigh, sharpening their mouths and [their] teeth." Lie [thou] so. Be prudent," he passed by.

§83 [20r] Again, at the moment when they were saying unto one another, "Let us return and search [further]," when Sorqan Šira spake, again he said, "Tayič’ud Princes, ye have lost a whole man in the bright, white day. Now how shall we find [him] in the dark night? Again, let us, having seen our places which we have [20v] not seen along the same divers ways, being returned and having searched [further], dispersing ourselves, gather together to morrow and search [again]. Whither could he go, that man with a buya’u?" Saying, "Yea," unto one another, they returned and searched and, when Sorqan Šira, again passing by, spake, having said, "They said unto one another, 'Let us, having searched, return and search [further] to morrow.' Now [21r] waiting until we have wholly dispersed ourselves, go, seeking thy mother and thy younger brethren. Talk not, saying that [thou] hast been seen—if [thou] art seen by somebody—saying that it was I who saw [thee]," he passed by.

§84 [21v] Waiting until they had wholly dispersed themselves, thinking in his heart, saying, "Lately, at the moment when, rotating [me in] the [divers] ayit, they made me to pass the night, when I passed the night in the tent of Sorqan Šira, [as for] his two sons, Čimbai and Čila’un, their bosoms and hearts pained [for me] and seeing me [22r] at night they took my buya’u and, loosing it, suffered me to pass the night. Now, again, Sorqan Šira, seeing me, is passed by, not telling. Now those same will save me," he

64 Like wild beasts which are about to kill and eat their prey. Cf. Psalm CXL §8: "They have sharpened their tongues like a serpent."
departed down along the Onan River, seeking the tent of Sorqan Šira.

§85 [22v] The sign of the tent was that, having poured off the [mare’s] milk, they were wont to beat their sour [mare’s] milk 32 at night until the day dawned. Hearing that sign, as he went, [23r] hearing the sound of the beater, he arrived and, as he entered into his tent, Sorqan Šira said, “Said I not, ‘Go [thou], seeking thy mother and thy younger brethren?’ Why art thou come [hither]?” When his two sons Čimbai and Čila’un spake, saying, “If a turumtau 33 make a little bird to take refuge in a bush, the bush saveth it. Now why sayest thou so unto that one which is come unto us?,” not loving the word [23v] of their father 34 they removed his buya’tu, burned [it] in the fire, made him to get him up into a cart full of wool behind [the tents], and made their younger sister named Qada’an to care for [him], saying, “Tell [this] not unto [any] living person.”

§86 [24r] On the third day [the Tayiš’ud] said unto one another, “[Some] man hath, perhaps, hid [him].” and, saying unto one another, [24v] “Let us search one another among ourselves,” they searched one another. They searched in the tents, in the carts, and even under the beds of Sorqan Šira and, at the moment when, getting them up into the cart full of wool behind [the tents], pulling out the wool which was at the entry, they were arriving at the back, [25r] as Sorqan Šira then said, “How could this one bear [it], in such heat, within the wool?,” the searchers lighted and departed.

§87 After that the searchers were departed, when Sorqan Šira spake, he said, “[Thou] almost caused [25v] me to blow [in the wind] as the ashes [of my hearth]. Go [thou] now to seek thy mother and thy younger brethren,” made [him] to ride a barren, straw-yellow 35 [mare] of which the mouth [was] white, boiled [for him] a lamb which had been suckled of two ewes, 36 made ready a little

---

32 I.e., kumiss.
33 The name of a small bird of prey.
34 See §77 above.
35 Which further implies “with a black mane and a black stripe on the backbone.”
36 See Chapter I, note 18. See also §§88, 85, and 905 below.
37 Such a lamb, having sucked more milk, would be stronger. See also §83 below.
leathern bucket and a big leathern bucket [full of mare's milk], not giving [unto him] a saddle and not giving [unto him] a firesickle," gave [unto him] a bow and gave [unto him] two arrows.  
Making ready so much as that he sent [him on his way].

§88 [26r] Temüjin, being so gone, arrived at his place which they had fortified by making a fence. By means of the tracks in the grass, he trailed [them] up along the Onan [26v] River—the Kimurya Stream entereth [the Onan River] from the West—and, having trailed up along that, he encountered [them], at the moment when they were at Qorçuqui Hill of the Beder Spur of the Kimurya Stream.


§90 [27v] One day [thieves] came to steal the eight horses, the isabella geldings, which were standing in front of the tent. Before the eyes [of Temüjin and his younger brethren], they stole [them] and departed. [Temüjin and his younger brethren,] being on foot, while seeing [them depart], remained behind. Belgütei had ridden [28r] a dargî,⁴⁴ strawyellow [horse] with a hairless tail and was gone for to hunt marmots. At eventide, after that the sun was set, Belgütei, having laid the marmots on the dargî, strawyellow [horse] with a hairless tail, came [back], leading [it] on foot, so that they swung to and fro.⁴⁵ As they said, "[Thieves] stole the isabella geldings and took [them] away," when Belgütei spake, he said, "I shall pursue [them]." When [28v] Qasar spake, he said, "Thou canst not. I shall pursue [them]." When Temüjin spake, saying,

²⁷ I. e., a sickle-shaped piece of steel enveloped in leather used for striking a spark to ignite tinder.
²⁸ To force him immediately to return to his mother he gives him a horse without a saddle, no fire-sickle with which he could stop to cook food, and two arrows only for self-defense.
²⁹ I. e. "Blue Lake."
⁴⁴ This word, not glossed, may be the same as the Ordos ḫargî "court (poils), herbe), peu profond (eau)". Cf. Antoine Monkaue, Dictionnaire ordois, Tomo deuxième (I-Ž), The Catholic University—Peking, 1948, p. 967a.
⁴⁵ I. e., from the gait of the horse.
"Ye can not. I shall pursue [them]." Temüjin rode the dargi, strawyellow [horse] and trailed the isabell geldings by means of the tracks in the grass. Having passed three nights, early in the morning [of the fourth day], he encountered on the way a lively lad which was milking [29r] mares in a plentiful herd. As he inquired concerning the isabell geldings, when that lad spake, having said, "This morning, before that the sun rose, [the thieves] drave the eight horses, the isabell geldings, this way and departed. I shall point out their tracks for [thee]." he made [Temüjin] to loose the strawyellow [horse] with the hairless tail and, [giving it] unto Temüjin, made [him] to ride a grayish white horse with a black stripe along the backbone." [29v] He himself rode a swift dun. And, not even going unto his tent, he put away his leathern bucket and leathern milkpail, concealing [them] in the steppe. Having said, "As for thee, companion, [thou] comest hither, being sore distressed. The distress of men is [all] one [and the same]. I shall be a companion unto thee. My father is called Naqu Bayan." I [am] his only son. I am [30r] named Bo'orçu," he trailed [them] by [means of] the tracks of the isabell geldings. Having passed three nights, at even [of the fourth day], at the moment when the sun was smiting the hills, they arrived at a gür'en of people. They saw the eight horses, the isabell geldings, which were standing, eating grass at the edge of that great gür'en. When Temüjin spake, he said, "Companion, stand thou here. [30v] I—the isabell geldings are those [there]—shall go out, driving [them] before me."" When Bo'orçu spake, having said, "I am come, saying, 'I shall be a companion.' How can I stand here?" having rushed into [the gür'en] together, they drave out the isabell geldings."

§91 [32r] The people, one after another, draw nigh, pursuing after [them]. One man with a white horse, holding a pole with a noose, alone overtaking [them], draweth nigh. When Bo'orçu spake, he said, "Companion, bring me the bow and arrow. I shall exchange arrow shots with him." When Temüjin spake,

44See Chapter I, note 15.
45I.e., Naqu "The Rich."
46See also §305 below.
saying, “I fear lest thou be harmed for my sake. I shall exchange arrow shots with him,” returning over against [him], he exchanged arrow shots with him. [32v] That man with the white horse stood aiming at [him] with his pole with a noose. [His] companions behind came, overtaking [him]. The sun set. Twilight draweth nigh. Those people behind, being lost in the dusk, halted and remained behind.**

§92 [33r] Having ridden that night, after riding three days and three nights, they arrived. When Temüjin spake, he said, “Companion, could I have [33v] taken these my horses without thee? Let us divide [them] between us. How many sayest [thou] that thou shalt take?” When Bo’orču spake, he said, “I, saying that thou, good companion, drawest nigh, being distressed, I am come, being a companion, saying, ‘I shall be a help unto a good companion.’ Shall I take [them], saying, ‘It is spoil’? My father is named Naqu Bayan.** The only son of Naqu Bayan is I. [34r] That which my father hath laid up [for me] is enough for me. I shall not take [aught]. That I have been a help, what help is it? I shall not take [aught].”

§93 [34v] They arrived at the tent of Naqu Bayan. Naqu Bayan, having lost Bo’orču, his son, is in tears. When suddenly they are come and he seeth his son, once he waileth and once he groaneth. When Bo’orču, his son, spake, having said, “What is it? A good companion [35r] is come hither, being distressed. I went, being a companion [unto him]. Now I am come,” he galloped away and fetched his leathern bucket and leathern milkpail which he had concealed in the steppe. Killing for Temüjin a lamb which had been suckled of two ewes and having given [it unto him as] provision [for the way], he made ready a leathern bucket [full of milk] as lading and [so] made [him] to have provision. When Naqu Bayan spake, [35v] he said, “Ye are two youths. See [ye] each other. Abandon [ye] not each other hereafter.” Temüjin went and, being departed three days, arrived at his tent at the

**This episode is treated in this impressionistic way, because the battle was not joined and contact was broken.

Senggür Stream. Mother Hö’elün and his younger brother, Qasar, and the others, were troubled, [but,] upon seeing [him], they did rejoice.

§94 [36r] Thereupon, both Temüjin and Belgütei—Temüjin, since the time when he was come [back], after having, at the moment when he was nine years old, seen Börte Üjin [daughter] of Dei Sechen, had been separated [from her] “—went up along the Kelüren River to seek [her]. Dei Sechen, the Unggira[d], was there between both [Mount] Çegčer and [Mount] Čiqrqu. When Dei Sechen, seeing Temüjin and rejoicing exceedingly, spake, having said, “Knowing that [37r] thy Tayiči’ud brethren are jealous, being very troubled, [I] had lost hope. And now [I] have hardly seen thee,” having united Börte Üjin [with him], he accompanied [her]. When, accompanying [her], he drew nigh, Dei Sechen, on the way, returned from the Uray Çöl corner of the Kelüren. His wife, the mother of Börte Üjin, was named Čotan. Čotan accompanied her daughter and, at the moment when they “were at the Senggür Stream [37v] within [Mount] Gürelgü, came, bringing [her].

§95 [38r] Having suffered Čotan to return, Temüjin sent Belgütei, inviting Bo’orču, saying, “Let us be companions.” Bo’orču, after that Belgütei was arrived, not telling [it] unto his father,

> Having ridden a strawyellow [horse] with a curved back,
> Having tied behind the saddle his gray mantle of felt,“

came with Belgütei. [38v] From the time when they were become companions, such [was] the manner in which they were companions."

§96 Journeying from the Senggür Stream, they pitched, encamping at the Bürgi [39r] Escarpment, [at] the head of the Kelüren River. Saying [that it was] the šidkül “ of the mother [in law Hö’-

elün] Čotan had brought a coat of black sables. Temüjin, Qasar, and Belgütei—all three—took away that coat.—In days of old Ong Qan of the Kereyid people had declared himself anda with [their] father Yesügei Qan."—Temüjin," saying, "As for the fact that he declared himself anda with my father, he is like [9v] a father," went, knowing that Ong Qan was in the Black Forest of the Tu'ula [River]. When Temüjin, coming unto Ong Qan, spake, he said, "Saying [unto myself] that in days of old thou didst declare thyself anda with my father and that thou art also like a father, having made a wife to fight [at my tent], I have brought the emüsgel** for thee," he gave the coat of black sables [unto him]. When [40r] Ong Qan rejoiced exceedingly and spake, he said,

"In return for the coat of black sables
I shall collect for thee
Thy people which have separated themselves.**
In return for the coat of sables
I shall gather for thee
Thy people which have dispersed themselves.

Let [my promise] be

In the back
Of [my] kidneys,
In the diaphragm
Of [my] breast."**

§97 [41r] Returning from thence, when they were at the Bürgi Escarpment, a person of the Uriangqad, Old Man Jarč'udai, carrying his bellows on his back, came from [Mount] Burqan Qaldun, leading his son named Jelme. When Jarč'udai [41v] spake, saying, "At the moment when [ye] were at Deli'in Hill of the Onan [River] and at the moment when Temüjin was born,** I gave [unto him] swaddling clothes of sable. I also gave this my son Jelme. Saying, ' [He is] little,' I took [him] away. Now, Jelme

**See §150 below for the narration of this event.
**The text erroneously has emüsgel. The word is a synonym of šigkil. See note 51 above.
**See also §§ 104 and 208 below.
**See also §104 below.
**See § 59 above.
he gave [Jelme unto Temüjin].""

§98 [42r] At the moment when they were pitching at the Bürgi Escarpment, at the head of the Kelüren River, one morning, early, the light [being yet] yellow, at the moment when day was dawning, when Old Woman Qo‘ayčin which served within the tent of Mother [42v] Hö’elün rose up and spake, she said, "Mother, Mother! Rise up quickly! The earth quaketh! A rumbling is heard! Are the frightful Tayiči’ud drawing nigh? Mother! Rise up quickly!"

§99 [43r] When Mother Hö’elün spake, having said, "Wake [ye] quickly the sons," Mother Hö’elün also quickly rose up. The sons, Temüjin and the others, also being quickly risen up, taking their horses, Temüjin rode one horse. Mother Hö’elün rode one horse. Qasar rode one horse. Qac’i’un rode [43v] one horse. Temüge Odc’iin rode one horse. Belgütei rode one horse. Bo’orcu rode one horse. Jelme rode one horse. Mother Hö’elün carried Temüliin at her bosom [on her horse]. They made ready one horse as a led horse. A horse was wanting for Börte Üjin.""

§100 [44r] Temüjin and [his] brethren set forth, while it was [yet] early, and went out toward [Mount] Burqan. Old Woman Qo‘ayčin, saying, "I shall hide Börte Üjin,"

Making her to ride in a [44v] böken,"" black cart,

Harness[ed] to it an ox speckled of loins.""

At the moment when, removing up along the Tenggel[g] Stream, they were going forward and, in the twilight, at the moment when the day was dawning, from over against [them] soldiers, trotting, going round about, arrived and asked, saying, "What [manner of]"
person [art] thou?" When Old Woman Qo'ayčin [45r] spake, she said, "I am of [the house of] Temūjin. I am come for to shear the sheep at the great tent." I am returning to my tent." Thereupon, when they spake, they said, "Is Temūjin at the tent? How far is the tent?" When Old Woman Qo'ayčin spake, she said, "As for the tent, it is near. I did not perceive whether Temūjin was [there] or not. [45v] Being arisen from behind [the tent], I am come [hither]."

§101 [46r] Those soldiers then trotted [away]. Old Woman Qo'ayčin having struck her ox speckled of loins, as, hastening, she began to move forward, the axletree of the cart brake in pieces. At the moment when they were saying unto each other, "[Forasmuch as] our axletree hath been broken in pieces, let us run into the woods on foot," straightway the same soldiers, making the mother of Belgüeti to ride double with them and making her two feet to hang, trotting, being arrived, said, "What art thou carrying in this cart?" When Old Woman Qo'ayčin spake, she said, "I am carrying wool." When the elder brethren of those soldiers spake, they said unto their younger brethren and sons, "Light off and see [ye what it is]!" The younger brethren and sons lighted off and, with their taking [away] the door of the qa'atai cart, [they found that] a woman was sitting within. Pulling her from the cart, making her to light off, having made both [her and] Qo'ayčin to ride double, they trailed after Temūjin by the tracks in the grass and [47r] went out toward [Mount] Burqan.

§102 [48r] Going thrice round about [Mount] Burqan Qaldun after Temūjin, they were not able to seize [him]. As they swerved this way and that—its miry bottoms where one is swallowed up and [its] difficult woods [are] a forest [so] difficult that, if a glutted serpent were [to assay] to creep [into it], he would not be able—

---

41 I.e., the tent of Temūjin.
42 See note 69 above.
43 This word, not glossed, is not elsewhere attested.
44 See also §§111 and 206.
45 For another example of the same figure used of the Alan capital taken by the Mongols in 1239 cf. V. Minorsky, "Caucasica III: The Alan Capital Magas and the"
although they followed after him, they were not able to seize [Temüjin]. [48v] Those were the Three Merkid. Toyto'a of the Uduyid Merkid, Dayir Usun of the Uus Merkid, and Qa'atai Darmala of the Qa'ad Merkid—these Three Merkid—were now come to avenge that avengement, saying, "Mother Hö'elin of old was taken from Ciledii." When those Merkid spake unto one another, they said unto one another, [49r] "Now we have taken their wives to take the vengeance of Hö'elin. We have taken our vengeance," they descended from [Mount] Burqan Qaldun and returned to their abodes.

§103 [49v] Saying, "Are these Three Merkid truly returned unto their abodes or are they lying in ambush?," Temüjin made Belgütei, Bo'orcu, and Želme—all three—to follow behind the [50r] Merkid three days to spy and [so] he suffered the Merkid to go far away. When Temüjin, descending from on [Mount] Burqan, striking his breast, spake, saying, "Mother Qo'ayčin,

Because she heareth
Like a weasel,
Because she seeth
Like an ermine,
Escaping as to mine own body,
With a horse hobbled by [means of] the tether,
Walking in the paths of the deer,
Making an abode of a tent of [50v] elm twigs,
I went up on [Mount] Burqan.

By [Mount] Burqan Qaldun,
As to my life [which is only] so much as a louse,
I escaped.
Sparing
Mine only life,
With an only horse,

---

Mongol Campaign," Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies 14 (1952). 291-298, where, in the citation of Dr. J. A. Borria's translation of a passage from the Persian historian Juwaini, we read (pp. 292-293): "the inhabitants of which were as [228] numerous as ants or locusta, while its environs were entangled with woods and forests, such that even a serpent could not penetrate them."
Walking in the paths of the elk,
Making an abode of a tent of willow switches,
I went up on [Mount] Qaldun.
By [Mount] Qaldun Burqan,"
As to my life [which is only] so much as a grasshopper,
[51r]
I was shielded.

I was caused to be sore afraid. Every morning I shall sacrifice unto [Mount] Burqan. Every day I shall pray unto [it]. Let the seed of my seed observe [this]," over against the sun he hanged his girdle on his neck, hanged his hat in his hand," struck his hand into his breast, and, kneeling nine times toward the sun, offered a sprinkling [of mare's milk] and a prayer.

"See also §113 below for another instance in which we have an inversion of the more usual Burqan Qaldun.
"For another reference to the girdle and the hat, symbols of power and authority respectively, see §344 below. For a reference to the hat alone see §255 below.
THE SECRET HISTORY OF THE MONGOLS

CHAPTER III

§104 §1r] So saying, when [Temüjin], Temüjin, Qasar, and Bel-gütei—all three—going unto To’oril Ong Qan of the Kerchid, at the moment when he was in the Black Forest of the Tu’ula River, spake, he said, “By the Three Merkid, as they were come at the moment when we were unprepared, my wife was ravished and carried away. We are come, saying, ‘Let my father the Qan [1v] save and give [unto me my] wife.’” In answer to that word; when To’oril Ong Qan spake, he said, “Spake not I unto thee a year ago? When thou broughtest a coat of sables unto me, when I was clothed [with it by thee], saying, ‘As for the fact that [thou] didst declare thyself anda of the time of [my] father;[1] [thou] art also like a father,’ then, when I spake, saying,

‘In return for the coat of sables [2r]
I shall gather for thee
Thy people which hath dispersed itself.

In return for the coat of black sables
I shall unite for thee
Thy people which hath separated itself;’
said I not,

‘Let [my promise] be
In the diaphragm
Of [my] breast?

Let [my promise] be
In the back
Of [my] kidneys?*

Now, keeping to that my word,

---

1 See §100 below. See also §96 above.
2 See §96 above.
CHAPTER III

In return for the coat of sables,
[Even] until I destroy
Wholly the Merkid,
I shall save and give [unto thee] thy Börte Üjin. [2v]
In return for the coat of black sables,
Breaking
All the Merkid,
Making thy Qatun Börte to return, we shall bring
[her].

Send thou, sending a message, unto Younger Brother Žamuya.
Younger Brother Žamuya is in the Qorqonay Valley. I shall
set forth from hence, twenty thousand [in number], becoming the
right hand. Let Younger Brother Žamuya, being twenty thou-
sand [in number], set forth, becoming the left hand. Let [3r] our
appointed time be [decided] from [the part of] Žamuya."

§105 [3v] When, Temüjin, Qasar, and Belgütei—all three—re-
turning from To’öril Qan, arriving at their tent, Temüjin sent
both Qasar and Belgütei unto Žamuya, when he sent, speaking,
saying, “Speak unto Anda Žamuya,” he sent, saying, “By the
[4r] Three Merkid, when they came,

As to my bed,
I was made to be empty.
Are we not ones of which the family origin [is] one?
How shall we avenge
Our avengement?*

As to my breast,
I have been rent in twain.
Are we not kindred of liver?*
How shall we requite
Our requital?"*  

Such [was] the word whereby he sent speaking unto Anda

* See Chapter I, note 41.
* The liver denotes intimacy and close relationship.
* See Chapter I, note 41.
Jamūya. Again, when he sent, speaking unto Jamūya the words which had been spoken by [4v] To'oril Qan of the Kereyid, he said, "Mindful of the fact that in an early day a help and good things were done for my father by Yesügei Qan, I shall be a companion. Being twenty thousand [in number], I shall set forth, being the right hand. Send, telling [it] unto Younger Brother Jamūya. Let Younger Brother Jamūya set forth, [being] twenty thousand [in number]. Let our appointed time when we shall join forces be [decided] from [the part of] Younger Brother [5r] Jamūya." After that they had made an end of these words, when Jamūya spake, he said, "Knowing that Anda Temüjin,

As to [his] bed,
Was become empty,
My heart did pain.

Knowing that,

As to [his] breast,
He had been rent in twain,
My liver did pain.

Avenging our avengement,
Destroying
The Uduyid and
Uuas Merkid,
We shall save our Üjin Börte.* [5v]

Taking our vengeance,
Breaking all the Qa'ad Merkid,
Making our Qutun Börte to return, we shall save [her].

Now that

Toyt'a which trembleth,
At the moment when one striketh a shabrack,
Taking [this noise] for the sound of a drum,
Must be in the Bu'ura Steppe.

---

* In Üjin Börte, an inversion of the usual Börte Üjin, Üjin is placed first for the purpose of alliteration.
Dayir Usun, which,
At the moment when a quiver with a cover
Rattleth,
Revolveth,
Must now be at [6r] Talquin Isle [between]
both the Orqon and the Selengge.

Qa'tai Darmala, which,
At the moment when the [uprooted] tumbleweed * bloweth
[across the steppe] in the wind,
Striveth for the Black Forest,
Must now be in the Qaraqi Steppe.

Now, straightly,* cutting the Kilyo River—let the saqal bayan ** be in good state—tying [with them] rafts, we shall enter [into the land of the enemy]. Of that Tojo' a which trembleth,

Entering [as one might say] upon the hole at the
  top of his tent [6v]
Smiting his weighty tent frame
In such a way that it shall fall down flat,
We shall destroy
Until his wives and sons be extinguished.

Smiting his door frame, which [for him] is a god
which bringeth happiness,***
In such a way that it shall break to pieces,

---

* Cf. Job 29 §§2: The quiver rattleth against him, . . . .” See also §220 below.
* For this restoration, cf. Antoine MONTAENT, op. cit., p. [45], n. 42.
** I.e., by the shortest route.
*** Lit., “beard rich.” For this plant name cf. Antoine MONTAENT, op. cit., p. [45], n. 45.
**** The association of the qutu (fu shen) ‘god conferring happiness’ with the frame of the door is explained perhaps by the custom mentioned by Johannes de Pianu Carpini in his Ysaria Mongalorum: ‘Habent ydola quedam de filtro ad ymaginem dominis facta, et illa ponunt ex utraque parte hostii stationis’ (A. Van Den Wyngaert, Sinica Franciscana, vol. I, p. 36).” Antoine MONTAENT, op. cit., p. [47]. See also § 221 below.
We shall wholly destroy his people,
Until there be [only] emptiness [there].

§106 [7v] When Jamuya again spake, when he spake, saying,
"Speak [this] unto both Anda Temujin and Elder Brother
To'oril Qan," he sent, speaking, saying, "Speak, saying, 'As for me,
I have sprinkled 13 my standard visible from afar.
I have beaten my drum with a voice which is rumbling,
covered with the skin of a black bull.
I have gat me up upon my black courser,
I have put on my raiment hard as steel.
I [8r] have taken in hand my steel lance.
I have placed on the bowstring mine arrow garnished
with peach bark.
I shall set forth
Against the Qa'd Merkid in battle.'

Speak, then, saying,

'I have sprinkled my long standard visible from afar.
I have beaten my drum with a hollow voice, covered with
the hide of an ox.
I have gat me up upon my courser with a black stripe along
the backbone. 14
I have put on my breastplate with thongs. 15
I have taken in hand my sword [8v] with a hilt.
I have placed on the bowstring mine arrow with a notch.
Let us die together [in fighting]
Against the Uduyid Merkid.'

When Elder Brother To'oril Qan shall set forth, having passed by Anda Temujin by the front of [Mount] Burqan Qaldun,
[upon his] coming, we shall meet at Botoyan Bo'orji at the head of
the Onan River. [9r] When [I] shall set forth from hence, up along

13 See also §198 below for another example of this ceremony performed, on the
eve of battle, with mare's milk.
14 See Chapter I, note 13.
15 I.e., the slender thongs which hold together the various parts of the breastplate
of leather.
the Onan River—the people of the anda are here, [taking] from
the people of the anda ten thousand, I from hence ten thousand,
[this] being twenty thousand—going up along the Onan River, we
shall unite forces at the appointed place of meeting in Botoyan
Bo'orji.”

§107 [9v] Both Qasar and Belgütei coming [back] and speaking
unto Temüjin these words of Ėamuya, [10r] he sent a message unto
To'oril Qan. To'oril Qan, having suffered [him] to send these
words of Ėamuya, set forth, twenty thousand [in number]. When
To'oril Qan set forth, [Temüjin,] saying, “He draweth nigh, be-
taking himself [unto] the Bürgi Escarpment of the Kelüren, in
front of Burqan Qaldun.”—Temüjin was at the Bürgi Escarpment
—and saying, “[I] am on the way,” removing, journeying up along
the Tünggelig [Stream], pitched at the Tana Stream, in front of
[10v] Burqan Qaldun. Temüjin, moving [his] troops from thence,
at the moment when To'oril Qan, ten thousand [in number], and
Jaqa Gambu, the younger brother of To'oril Qan, ten thousand
[in number], with twenty thousand [in all], were pitching at Ayil
Qarayana of the Kimuyya Stream, pitched, uniting [forces with
them].

§108 [11v] Temüjin, To'oril Qan, and Jaqa Gambu—all three—,
uniting, removing from thence, as they arrived at Botoyan Bo'orji
[at] the head of the Onan [River], Ėamuya was [already] arrived
three days before at the appointed place of meeting. Ėamuya,
having seen the troops of these, Temüjin, To'oril, and Jaqa
Gambu, Ėamuya stood, [12r] making ready his twenty thousand
troops. And these Temüjin, To'oril Qan, and Jaqa Gambu having
likewise made ready their troops, coming unto one another and,
moreover, recognizing one another, when Ėamuya spake, he said,
“Said we not unto one another, ‘Let us not be late

At the appointed place of meeting,
Even though there be a snowstorm?

At the assembly,
Even though there be rain?’
[12v] Are not the Mongol ones which have an oath [pronounced only with the word] “yee”? 16 We said unto one another,

‘Let us expel out of [our] ranks
The one which shall be fallen behind from [his]
“yee.”’ 17

At the word of Jamuya, when To’oril Qan spake, saying, “[We] stood three days late at the appointed place of meeting,” he said, “Let Younger Brother Jamuya decide [how] he shall punish and [how] he shall blame.” Thus speaking unto each other [words of] blame [in respect] of the appointed place of meeting.

§109 [13v] removing from Botoyan Bo’orjin, arriving at the Kilyo River, tying rafts, having passed over [the River], in the Bu’ura Steppe, of Toyo’ta Beki,

Entering [as one might say] from upon the hole at the top of the tent,

Smiting the weighty tent frame
In such a way that it is fallen down flat,
They spoiled until his wives and sons were extinguished.

Smiting his door frame, which [for him] was a god which brought good luck,
In such a way that it brake to pieces,
They wholly spoiled his people, [14r]
Until they were emptied.

While Toyo’ta Beki was lying down,18 the fishermen, the hunters of sables, and the hunters of wild beasts which were at the Kilyo River, travelling all night, went, bringing the message that [the enemies] were arriving, saying, “The enemies which have hurled themselves forward draw nigh.” Having received that message, Toyo’ta and Dayir Usun of the Uuas Merkid, both joining [unto each other], [14v] entering Baryuljin along the Selenge [River], few [in number] and with [nothing other than their] bodies, escaped by fleeing away.

16 I. e., an oral promise which takes the place of an oath. See also § 255 below.
17 I. e., “who shall have failed to keep his promise.” See also § 255 below.
18 I. e., “while he was asleep.”
§110 [15r] At the moment when the people of the Merkid were going, fleeing in haste at night along the Selengge, at the moment when our soldiers likewise were pressing forward at night and were spoiling and ravishing the Merkid which were going, fleeing in haste, and, at the moment when Temüjin, in [the midst of] the people which went forward, fleeing in haste, was going, crying, saying, "Börte, Börte!," encountering [her], [15v] Börte Ûjin was among those people which were fleeing in haste. Hearing and recognizing the voice of Temüjin, being alighted from the cart, coming, running [unto him], both Börte Ûjin and Qo'aycên in the night recognized and seized the reins and tether of Temüjin. There was moonlight. When [Temüjin] looked, recognizing Börte Ûjin, they threw themselves upon each other in embracing each other. [16r] Thereupon, when Temüjin sent, then, speaking the same night unto both To'oril Qan and Anda Jamuya, he sent, saying, "I have found my necessity which I sought. Let us not travel all night. Let us pitch here." The Merkid people, [while] fleeing in haste they went forward and while, in the night, they went forward, dispersing themselves, pitching even there 19 passed [there] the night. Such [was] the manner in which [Temüjin] so encountered [16v] Börte Ûjin and [in which] he saved [her from] the Merkid people.

§111 [17r] In the beginning, beforetime, Toyto'a Beki of the Uduyid Merkid, Dayir Usum of the Uus Merkid, and Qa'atai Darmala [of the Qa'ad Merkid]—these Three [17v] Merkid—[with] three hundred men, saying, "Early of day Mother Hœ'elûn was ravished by Yesügei Ba'atur from Yeke Çiledû,20 the younger brother of Toyto'a Beki," went, avenging and requiting that.21 At the moment when they made Temüjin to go thrice round about [Mount] Burqan Qaldun, they seized Börte Ûjin there and made her to be cared for by [18r] Çilger Bökö, the younger brother of Çiledi. As he had been caring for [her] since that time, when Çilger Bökö, revolting, went out and when he spake, having said,

19 I.e., at the same place where Temüjin had stopped to pass the night. The Merkid were unwilling to continue their flight, because they saw that to do so served no purpose.
20 See §§54-56 above.
21 I.e., the rape of Hœ'elûn.
"While the black crow
Hath [it] as destiny to eat scraps of skin,
He hath hoped, saying, 'I shall eat goose and crane.'
I, qatar ²² and bad Čilger,
Laying hand
Upon the lady Ūjin,
[Am become] a plague unto all the Merkid.
[I] [18v] commoner and bad Čilger,
Am at the point to be attained unto ²² my black head. ²⁴

Saving mine only life,
I shall slip into the dark defiles.
By whom shall [the office of] shield be done for me?

While the bad bird, the buzzard,
Hath [it] as destiny to eat rats and mice,
He hath hoped, saying, 'I shall eat swan and crane.'
I, gunar ²² and bad [19r] Čilger,
In gathering the happy and fortunate Ūjin,
Am become a plague unto all the Merkid.

[I] qokir ²² and bad Čilger,
Am at the point to be attained unto ²² my withered head.
Saving my life [which is only] so much as [a piece of]
sheep's dung
I shall slip into the qarat ²² and dark defiles.
For my life [which is only] so much as [a piece of]
sheep's dung [19v]
By whom shall [the office of] fenced place be done for me?;"

revolting, he escaped.

¹² This word, not glossed, is not elsewhere attested.
²² I.e., to lose.
²⁴ See §81 above, where the term "black heads" means "commoners." See also §123 below for another occurrence of the term.
²² This word, not glossed, is not elsewhere attested.
²² This word, not glossed, is not elsewhere attested.
²² I.e., to lose.
²² This word, not glossed, is not elsewhere attested.
§112 [20r] They seized Qa’atæi Darmala.

Bringing [him], making [him] to wear a board buya’u,
They made [him] to betake himself unto [Mount] Qaldun
Burqan.\(^{29}\)

It being shewed [by somebody], saying, "The mother of Belgütei is in that ayûl," [20v] Belgütei going for to take his mother, with Belgütei’s entering into her tent by the right door, his mother—[clothed] with a raiment of tattered sheepskins—being gone out by the left door, when she spake unto another person outside, having said, "I am told that my sons are become qad. Being joined here unto a bad man, now how shall I behold the faces [21r] of my sons?," she ran and slipped into the thick woods. So he sought [her, but] she was not found. Belgütei Noyan, saying, "Bring [thou unto me] my mother!," shot with yodoli\(^{30}\) [arrows] any person which was but of the Merkid "bone."\(^{31}\) He made an end of the Three Hundred Merkid which were gone round about [Mount] Burqan [Qaldun],\(^{22}\) [21v] unto the seed of the seed, till they blew [away] as the ashes [of the hearth]. [As for those] of their wives which remained, he embraced in his bosom\(^{23}\) [those which were] such as one might embrace in the bosom. He made to enter into his door [as slaves those which were] such as might be made to enter into the door [as slaves].

§113 [22v] When Temüjin, being thankful unto both To’oril Qan and Jamuyä, spake, he said [unto them], "Being made a companion by both my father the Qan and Anda Jamuyä, [my] might being increased by Heaven and Earth,\(^{24}\)

Being named by powerful Heaven,
Effecting [this] by Mother Earth—
The male hath [taken his] vengeance—
and, as for the Merkid people,
[We] have made their breasts to become empty.
And we have broken off [a piece of] their [23r] liver.

\(^{29}\) See Chapter II, note 68.
\(^{30}\) An arrow without a point, which does not wound.
\(^{31}\) I.e., tribe. \(^{32}\) I.e., "took to wife."
\(^{22}\) See §102 above. \(^{23}\) See also §§109, 308, and 300 below.
And we have made their beds to become empty.
And we have made an end of
The men of [their] descendants.
And we have ravished [those of the women] of them
which remained.

The Merkid people being so dispersed, let us withdraw ourselves.”

§114 [23v] When the Uduyid Merkid hasted away, our soldiers
finding and bringing a boy [clothed] with a hat of sable, with boots
[made] of the skin of the legs of the doe, with raiment [made] of
the skins of the water sable which had been stripped of their
hairs 32 and sewed together, [a boy] five years old, named Kūčū,
with fire in his eyes, 30 [one] which had remained behind in the en-
campment, taking [him] away, gave [him] unto Mother Hö'elüün
as a sauya.”

§115 [24v] When Temüjin, To'oril Qan, and Jamuya—[all]
three—uniting, of the Merkid,

Overthrowing the čorqan 34 tents,
Ravishing the glorious 38 women,

withdrew from Talqun Isle of both the Orqan 46 and the Selengge,
both Temüjin and Jamuya, uniting, [25r] withdrew, betaking
themselves unto the Qorqonay Valley. When To'oril Qan with-
drew, passing by Hökörtü Valley by the back of Burqan Qaldun,
passing by Qača’uratu Subčid and Huliyatu Subčid, having

32 For a discussion of the words īšikīs īškāy, in which īšikīs is an error for īškīs,
cf. Antoine Moustier, “Remarques sur le paragraphe 114 de l'histoire secrète des
30 See Chapter I, note 44.
34 I.e., gift.
32 This word, not glossed, is not elsewhere attested. In §124 below, however, there
is found the expression čo'orqatai tergen-i (acc.) “the cart having a lock.” It may,
therefore, be that čorqan = čo'orqan čo'orqan “lock.” If so, the expression čorqan gor
in this passage may mean “lock-tents,” i.e., “tents with locks.”
36 The word čorqat “having glory” is glossed 鱒鶴 (ka-hu), a term used during the
Yüan dynasty to designate a kind of headdress worn by Mongolian women of mark.
It is evident from the word 鱒鶴 (hao) (“good,” i.e., “of mark”) in the continuous
translation (POPS 3.25r3) that čorqat was so glossed, because only women of mark
wore the ka-hu which, in fact, characterized such women.
46 Orqan is an older form of Orgen.
hunted their wild beasts, he withdrew, betaking himself unto the Black Forest of the Tu'ula [River].

§116 [25v] Both Temüjin and Jamuya, joining forces, pitched at Qorgonay Valley and, being together mindful of the fact that they were formerly together become anda, renewing unto each other their [state of] anda, said unto each other, "Let us love each other." The first time, when they were together become anda, at the moment when Temüjin was eleven years old, Jamuya giving unto Temüjin a roebuck knucklebone—Temüjin’s brass knucklebone [being given unto Jamuya]—together becoming anda, at the moment when they were playing at knucklebone on the ice of the Onan [River] where they had declared themselves anda, then they declared themselves anda. [26v] After that, in the spring, at the moment when they were shooting together with [their] bows of wood, Jamuya, gluing [together] the [four halves of] two horns of a calf of two years old and boring holes, giving unto Temüjin his sounding yor 41 [made of the horns] and [with] Temüjin’s exchanging a yodoli arrow with a tip of cypress wood, they together became anda. Such [was] the manner in which they declared themselves anda a second time.

§117 [27v] [Temüjin and Jamuya,] saying unto each other, "Hearing the word of the former elders, saying, ‘[As for] persons [which are] anda, [their] lives [are] one. Not forsaking one another, they are [the one for the other] a protection for [their] lives,’ [one seeth that] such [is] the manner whereby [the anda] love each other. Now renewing again [the oath of] anda, we shall love each other," Temüjin [28r] made to be girded unto Anda Jamuya the golden girdle which he had taken in spoiling Toyto’a of the Merkid. He suffered to be ridden by Anda Jamuya Toyto’a’s yellowish white [mare] with black tail and mane 42 and barren for several years. Jamuya made to be girded unto Anda Temü-

41 This word is glossed: "the tip of a sounding bone arrow."
42 The word qalının is glossed "horse with black mane and tail." In §177 below it is glossed "yellow [horse] with black mane and tail." "The word designates properly a horse's coat of which the shade can vary from yellowish white to yellow mixed with black, the mane and the tail being black and the spine carrying a black band." Antoine Montalet, op. cit., p. [58].
jin the golden girdle which he had taken in spoiling Dayir Usun of the Uuas Merkid. He suffered to be ridden by Temüjin the kid [coloured] white [horse] and which had a horn, also of Dayir Usun. At the front of the Quldaryar Escarpment of [28v] the Qorqonay Valley, at the Branching Tree, declaring themselves anda, loving each other, banqueting and feasting, they rejoiced and, at night, in their covering they passed the night together alone.

§118 [29r] When both Temüjin and Jamuya loved each other, loving each other one year and half of a [29v] second year, when, saying unto each other, “Let us journey,” they journeyed one day from that encampment where they had been, they journeyed on the sixteenth of the first moon of summer, the “red circle day.” When both Temüjin and Jamuya going together in front of the carts went forward, when Jamuya spake, he said “Anda, Anda [30r] Temüjin,

Let us pitch next [unto] the mountain.
Let our herdmen
Attain unto a tent.”

Let us pitch next unto the stream.
Let our shepherds and keepers of lambs
Attain unto [food for] the gullet.”

Temüjin, not being able to understand this word of Jamuya, standing in silence, remaining behind, waiting for the carts within the journeying camp—since it was a journeying camp—Temüjin said unto Mother Hö'ellin, “Anda Jamuya speaketh. He speaketh, saying,

‘Let us pitch next unto the mountain.
Let our herdmen
Attain unto a tent.”

---

44 “It obviously is not a question of a true horn, but of a protuberant callosity which had developed on the upper part of the horse’s head.” Antoine Montaigt, op. cit., p. [56].
45 “See Chapter II, note 39.
46 “See Chapter I, Note 40.
47 I.e., “pitch a tent for themselves.”
CHAPTER III

Let us pitch next unto the stream.
Let our shepherds and keepers of lambs
Attain unto [food for] the gullet.'

I not being able to understand this his word, I spake not [31r]
even aught as an answer unto it. I am come, saying, ‘I shall inquire of [my] mother [concerning this].’ At the moment when Mother Hö'elün had not yet uttered [aught], when Börte Üjin spake, she said, "Anda Jamuya is said [to be] one who easily becometh weary. Now the time is come when he becometh weary of us. The words which Anda Jamuya hath said a little while ago are words which, then, cover a plot against us. Let us not pitch. While we continue in this movement, let us, separating ourselves well, move, then, travelling at night."

§119 [32r] Approving [this] according to the word of Börte Üjin, not pitching, at the moment when, moving, travelling at night, he went forward, he passed by the Tayiçi'ud on the way. And the Tayiçi'ud, trembling, also removed the same night, then, in disorder toward Jamuya. In the encampment of the Besüd of the Tayiçi'ud ours, [33r] having taken a little boy named Kökööü, [one] which had remained behind in the encampment, came and gave him unto Mother Hö'elün, Mother Hö'elün nourished [him].

§120 [33v] Travelling all that night, when the day dawned and when they looked, [they saw that] Qaçi'un Toyura'un, Qaraqai Toyura'un, and Qaraldai Toyura'un of the Jalayir—these three Toyura'un elder brethren and younger brethren—had travelled at night and were drawing nigh. Again Qada'an Daldurqan, elder brethren and younger brethren of the Taryud—five Taryud [in all]—[34r] were also drawing nigh. Again, [men] such as Önggür, son of Munggetü Kiyan, were also drawing nigh with their Çangüi'ud and Baya'ud. From the Barulas there came the elder brethren and younger brethren, Qubilai and Qudus. From the Mangyud there came both brethren Jetei and Doqolqu Čerbi. Ögölen Čerbi, the younger brother of Bo'orçu, separated himself [34v] from the Arulad and also came to join unto Bo'orçu, his
elder brother." The younger brethren of Jelme, Ça’urqan and Sübe’etel Ba’atur, separated themselves from the Uriangqan and came to join unto Jelme. From the Besüd there also came both brethren Degei and Küügür. From the Suldu there also came the elder brethren and younger brethren [35r] Çilgütei, Taki, and Tayiči’üdai. Sece Domoy of the Jalayir also came with his two sons Arqai Qasar and Bala. From the Qonggotan there also came Söyüketü Çerbi. Sükegei Je’ün, 44 the son of Jegei Qongdaqor of the Sükeken also came. Ne’uidei [35v] Çava’an Uua 40 also came. There also came Kinggiyadai of the Olqunu’ud, [and] from the Görolas Seći’ürt, and from the Dörben Moći Bedi’in. Forasmuch as Butu of the Ikires had proceeded here as a son in law, he also came. From the Noyakin there also came Jungsö. From the Oronar there also came Jiryo’an. From the Barulas there also came Suyu Scechen [36r] with his son Qarāçar. Again, Qorći, Old Man Üsün, and Kökö Ços of the Ba’arin also came [as] one güre’en together with their Menen Ba’arin.

§121 [37v] When Qorći came and spake, he said, "We [are] born of the woman which Bodončar Boydo 44 seized and took [to wife]. With Janaüya we were ones of whom

---

44 Although this appears to be at variance with §99 where Bo’orchu says, "The only son of Naçu Bayan is I," as demonstrated by Paul Pelliot and Louis Hamris, Histoire des campagnes de Gengis khan, Cheng-wou ts’in-teheng lou, Tome I (Leiden, 1951), p. 348. "To escape the contradiction, we can only admit that conformably moreover to a current Sino-Mongolian usage, ‘brother’ is applied here to first cousins."

45 The epithet Ba’atur "Valiant Man" has been introduced anachronistically by the chronicler at this point.

46 Although each element of this name is, in this instance, independently glossed, as if Sükegei Je’ün constituted, in reality, the names of two persons, the two elements are glossed in §151, however, as the name of a single person. In §§177 and 181, where the name is written Sükegei Je’ün, it is also glossed as the name of a single person. In §§124 and 177 only the first element Sükegei occurs. In §186 the same element is written Sügegei.

47 Although the elements of this name, Ne’uidei and Çava’an Uua, are, in this instance, independently glossed, as if Ne’uidei Çava’an Uua constituted, in reality, the names of two persons, they are glossed in §129 below, however, as the name of a single person. From the Mongolian text in both §129 and §130 it seems evident that Ne’uidei Çava’an Uua is, in fact, the name of a single person.

48 I.e., Bodončar "The Holy One." For the episode in question see §§40-42 above.
The [mother's] belly [was] one [and the same]
[and of whom]

The water of the mother's womb [was] an only [one].

We would not [ever] have separated ourselves from Jaruča. 
[Howbeit,] a heavenly foretoken is come unto me and shewed unto mine [38r] eyes [that for which Temūjin is foreordained]. A fallow cow coming, going round about Jaruča, having butted his tent cart, butturing Jaruča, breaking one of [her] two horns, becoming one with [but] a [single] crooked horn, saying and saying, 'Bring [unto me] my horn,' bellowing and [38r] bellowing toward Jaruča, she standeth, raising and raising the dust [with her hoofs]. A hornless, fallow ox lifting up a great stake under the tent, harnessing [himself to it], drawing [it], when, behind Temūjin, he drew nigh by the great way, bellowing and bellowing, saying, 'Heaven and Earth taking counsel with each other, let Temūjin become [39r] Lord of the Nation,' and saying, ' [I] draw nigh, conveying the nation [unto thee], heavenly foretokens shew unto [mine] eyes and [foretell unto me [that for which Temūjin is foreordained]. If thou, Temūjin, become Lord of the Nation, because I have [so foretold unto thee, how wilt thou cause [me] to rejoice?' When Temūjin spake, he said, [39v] 'Verily, if they so suffer [me] to govern the nation, I shall make thee a captain of ten thousand.' [Qorči] said, "Even if I, a man which hath [foretold unto thee] many principles, become a captain of ten thousand, what happiness will [that] be? Having caused [me] to become a captain of ten thousand, suffering [me] to take of my freewill the beautiful and good maidens of the nation, make [me] to become one which hath even [40r] thirty wives. Again hearken unto whatsoever I shall have said."

§122 [41r] The Geniges having Ḳunan at their head also came [as] one gürê'en. Again, Daritai Odčiğin also came [as] one gürê'en. From the Jadar Ken there also came Mulqalqal. Again, Ünjin came [as] one gürê'en of the Sayyad. Having removed, so separating

**See §207 below, wherein Qorči's request is granted. See also §241 below for another reference.**
themselves from Jamuya, at the moment when they were pitching
[at] Ayil [41r] Qara'yana of the Kimurya Stream, again, separating
themselves from Jamuya both Sača Beki and Taiču, sons of
Sorgatu Jürki of the Jürkin," [also came as] one güre'en. Again,
Qučar Beki, the son of Nekün Taisi [also came as] one güre'en.
Again, Aj[li]tan Odčigin, the son of Qutula Qan, [also came] as one
güre'en. These, again, removing, separating themselves from Ja-
mya, joining [unto him], pitched [with Temüjin], at the moment
when [42r] [Temüjin] was pitching at Ayil Qara'yana of the Ki-
murya Stream. Journeying from thence, they pitched [at] Kökö
Lake of Qara Jüüginas of the Senggü Stream within [Mount]
Gürelgü.

§123 [42v] When Altan, Qučar, and Sača Beki took counsel with
one another together and spake [43r] unto Temüjin, [saying,] "We
shall make thee to become qan. If [thou] Temüjin become qan, we,

"  Hasting as spies unto the many enemies,
Maidens and ladies
Good of beauty,
Palace tents,
Ladies and maidens
Comely of cheek
Of realms and peoples,
And geldings good of rump,
Making [them] to trot, we shall bring for [thee]. [48v]

If we hunt the crafty wild beasts,
We shall go out beforehand to compass [them] for thee.

We shall press [them] for [thee] in such wise that the bellies
Of the wild beasts of the steppe become united together.
We shall press [them] for [thee] in such wise that the thighs
Of the wild beasts of the cliff become united together."
If we, a day of battle,
Violate thine orders,

" See Chapter I, note 81.
" See §179 below.
Severing [us] 
From [our] goods, 
From our ladies and wives, 
Go [thou], forsaking on the earth and ground [44r] 
Our black heads. 

If we, a day of peace, 
Break thy counsel, 
Severing [us] 
From household and goods, 
From our wives and children, 
Go [thou], forsaking [us] 
In a land without a lord."

Thus pledging [their] word, 
Thus swearing an oath, 

they made Temūjin to become qan, naming [him] Činggis Qahan."*

§124 [44v] Činggis, being become qahan, Ögülei Čerbi, the younger brother of Bo'orçu, carried [45r] a quiver. Qaji'un Toγura'un carried a quiver. Both the brethren Jetei and Doqolqu carried [each] a quiver. When Önggür, Söyiketü Čerbi, and Qada'an Daldurqan—all three—spake, saying. 

"May we not suffer [thee] to lack [Thy] morning drink. 
May we not neglect [Thine] evening drink," 

they became cooks. When Degei spake, [saying.] [45v]

"In making a wether of two years old 
Into broth, 
May I not fail 
In the morning; 
May I not be negligent 
At night. 

* For the second coronation of Temūjin see §222 below.
Herding the speckled sheep,
I shall cause the bottom of [thy] cart to be filled
[with them].

Herding the yellow sheep,
I shall cause [thy] fold to be filled [with them].
I have been gluttonous and bad.
Herding the sheep,
I shall eat [their] bowels.”

Degei [46r] herded the sheep. When his younger brother Güçügür spake, saying,

“May I not cause
Its linch-pin
To overturn the cart having a lock.
May I not cause
The cart having a tengisge
To break on the road.”

he said, “I shall put in order the tent carts.” Dodai Čerbi [46v] said, “May I oversee the maidservants and menservants within the tent.” [Činggis Qahan] said, “Qubilai, Čügùtei, Qarqái Toyura’un—all three—together with Qasar, carrying swords,

As for those which pride themselves on their might,
Cut ye off
Their necks.
As for those which pride themselves on their courage,
Cut ye in twain
Their breasts.”

[Činggis Qahan] said, “As for both Belgütei and Qaraldai Toyura’un,

---

45 This word, not glossed, may mean “axletree.” Cf. the word tengel “axletree” in §101 above.
46 The word ongjadqun, not glossed and not elsewhere attested, is a benefactive in -dun of a verb ongjad- “being cut off.” Cf. the word ongjadajun “being cut off” in §203 below.
Let them bring [from the pasture] the geldings.
Let them become the keepers of the geldings.

[Činggis Qahan] said, “As for the Tayiči’ud Qutu, Morići, and Mulqalqu—[all] three—let them herd the herds.” [Činggis Qahan] said, “As for Arqaı Qasar, Tayai, Sükgegi, and Ça’urqan—[all] four—let them become

The go’oĉay” [arrows]
Of far [bowshot],
The odora’” [arrows]
Of near [bowshot].

When Sübe’etei Ba’adur” spake, he said,

“Becoming a rat
I shall gather with [others]. [47v]
Becoming a black crow
I shall assemble with [others]
Those which are outside.

Becoming the felt which covereth [a horse]
I shall assay with [others] to cover [thee].
Becoming the felt which restraineth the wind
Toward [thy] tent
I shall assay with [others] to serve as shelter.”

§125 [48v] Then, when Činggis Qahan, becoming qan, spake unto both Bo’orçu and Ėlme, he said, “Ye twain,

At the moment when I had no companion other than
[my] shadow,
Being [my] shadow,“
Did settle my mind, ye!
Let [this] be in [my] thoughts.”

“Tw Quo’oĉay: “name of a kind of arrow.”
“Tw Odora: “name of a kind of arrow.”
“In Ba’adur we have an instance of the frequent alternation of -d- with -t-, the form Ba’atar (Ç Barytar) being the primitive one.
“Tw See §§76, 77, and 78 above.
And he said, "[Ye twain,]

At the moment when I had no whip other than a
horse'tail,
Becoming a horse'tail,  
Did settle [49r] my heart, ye!
Let [this] be within [my] bosom."

And he said, "Forasmuch as ye twain beforetime stood [at my side], shall ye not be chiefs of all these?" Again, when Činggis Qahan spake, he said, "If I be protected by Heaven and Earth in such a way that [my] might increase, ye, the elders which are come [separating yourselves] from Anda Jamuya, [49v] by affection toward me, saying, 'We shall become companions,' could ye not be my happy companions? I have appointed you severally [to an office]."

§126 [50r] He sent both Dayai  and Sügegei [as] messengers unto To'oril Qan of the Kerkeyid, saying "They have made Činggis Qahan to become qan." To'oril Qan sent, saying, "To make my son Temüjin to become qan is very right. How would the Mong- öl fare without a qa? Break ye not this your decision. Undo [ye] not your decision and that which hath been tied [of you]. Rend [ye] not your collar."

**See §§76, 77, and 78 above.

**In Dayai we have an instance of the frequent alternation of d- with t-, the form Toyai being the primitive one. See also note 61 above.
§127 [1r] When Činggis Qahan sent both Arqai Qasar and Ča′ur-qan as messengers unto Jamuyə, when Jamuyə spake, when he sent, speaking, saying, “Speak unto both Altan and Qučar,” he sent, saying, “Altan and Qučar, ye twain, between both Anda Temüjin and us,

Piercing
The loins,
Pricking
The ribs

of the anda, why [1v] have ye made [us] to separate ourselves? At the moment when both the anda and we were yet together, not suffering [you] to make [us] to separate ourselves, why made ye not Anda Temüjin qan? Now, thinking what thoughts have ye made him qan? Altan and Qučar, ye twain, keeping to your words which ye did speak, pacifying the thoughts of the anda, be [ye] companions well unto mine anda.”

§128 [2r] After that, when Taičar, the younger brother of Jamuyə, was at Ölegei Spring [2v] in front of [Mount] Jalama, he went for to steal the herd of horses of our Joči Darmala which was at the Sa′ari Steppe. Taičar stole the herd of horses of Joči Darmala and took [it] away. [As for] Joči Darmala, his herd having been stolen and the hearts of his companions having failed, [3r] the same Joči Darmala going, pursuing [him], and at night arriving at the side of his herd, lying with his liver 1 on the mane of his horse, arriving, shooting asunder the back of Taičar, having killed [him] and having taken his herd of horses, he came [back].

§129 [3v] Saying that their younger brother Taičar had been

1 i.e., “on his belly.” In this position he could approach Taičar without being seen. The approach of a “riderless” horse on the steppe would not have alarmed Taičar.
killed, the Jadaran having Jamuya at their head, thirteen tribes becoming companions, being thirty thousand [in number], passing by [Mount] Ala’u’ud and [Mount] Turya’ud, setting forth against [4r] Činggis Qahan, saying, “They draw nigh,” both Mülke Totay and Boroldai from the Ikires, at the moment when Činggis Qahan was at [Mount] Gürelgii, came, bringing a message. Having [thus] known this message—Činggis Qahan was thirteen güre’ed [in number]—being also thirty thousand [in number], [4v] setting forth against Jamuya, setting himself in array [at] Dalan Bajjud, Činggis Qahan, then being made to remove by Jamuya, fled for refuge unto the Jerene Narrows of the Onon [River]. When Jamuya spake, he said, “We have made [him] to flee for refuge unto Jerene of the Onon,” and, when he returned, [5r] making the princes of the Çinos to be boiled [in] seventy kettles and cutting off the head of Ne’üdei Çaya’an U’a, he dragged [it] away at the tail of [his] horse.

§180 [5v] Then, after that Jamuya was returned from thence, Jürçedi of the Uru’ud, having led his Uru’ud, and Quyuldar of the Mangyud, having led his Mangyud, [6r] separated themselves from Jamuya and came unto Činggis Qahan. Father Münglig of the Qongqotad then being with Jamuya, Father Münglig with his seven sons separated himself from Jamuya and then came to join himself unto Činggis Qahan. Saying, “These people are come from Jamuya,” Činggis Qahan, rejoicing [6v] in himself, saying, “The people are come,” Činggis Qahan, Hö’elün Üjin, Qasar, together with Saça Beki,* Taiçu, and others of the Jürkin, saying unto one another, “Let us feast in the forest of the Onon [River],” when they feasted, they poured [the content of] one pitcher first for Činggis Qahan, for Hö’elün Üjin, for Qasar, for Saça Beki, and [for] others. [7r] Because [in serving the women] they also poured [the content of] one pitcher beginning at Ebegei, the “little mother” of Saça Beki, both Qorijin Qatum and Qu’určin Qatum, saying, [each unto herself] “How pour they, not beginning at

* The name is transcribed Saça Beki in §49 above, but Saça Beki elsewhere in the text.
* Ebegei was called the “little mother” of Saça Beki, because she was a secondary, not a principal wife of his father Sorqatu Jürki (erroneously transcribed Qutwytu Yürki in §40 above).
me, but beginning at Ebegei?,” smote the cook Šikiür. Being
smitten, when the cook Šikiür spake, having said, “Because both
Yesügei Ba’adur and [7v] Nekün Taisi are dead, why am I thus
smitten?,” he wailed with a loud voice.

§131 [8r] Belgütei from us, having set that feast in order, bringing
the geldings of Činggis Qahan, was standing [there]. Büri Bükö
from the Jürkin was setting [8v] that feast in order. [Belgütei]
seized as a robber a person of the Qdagid which had stolen a tether
from our kiri’ese. Büri Bükö protecting his that person—Belgütei,
constantly, when he wrestled, having put off his right sleeve,
went [with his right arm] bare—Büri Bükö clave asunder [9r] with
a sword his bare shoulder from which he had so put off [his
sleeve]. When Činggis Qahan, sitting in the shade, seeing from
within the feast Belgütei, which, being thus cloven, then, not
making [it] to be even aught and not troubling himself, went,
suffering the blood to flow, came out and spake, at the moment
when he was saying, “How have we been being so done unto?,”
[9v] when Belgütei spake, he said, “The wound is not yet [griev-
ous]. I fear lest, because of me, there he for the brethren dis-
pleasure on one side and the other. I am not disabled. I am
somewhat better. At the moment when the elder brethren and
the younger brethren are hardly become accustomed to one
another, let the elder brother abstain [from doing something which
could make an end of the agreement]. Wait a moment! ‘’

§132 [10r] Činggis Qahan [and his people], as Belgütei stayed
[him] so much as that, not being willing, tearing asunder the
branches of trees, drawing the beaters [10v] out of the leathern
buckets, together smiting [them], overcoming the Jürkin, ravished
and took both Qorijin Qadun and Qu’určin Qadun. Moreover, the
same, being told, “Let us make peace,” returning both Qorijin
Qadun and Qu’určin Qadun, at the moment when they were

* For a similar reference to the deceased Yesügei Ba’atür see the words of Hőčilin
Ūjin in §70 above.

* This word is glossed: “[place where] one lights off a horse.”

* This episode, as we have seen, was anticipated in §50 above.

* I.e., “Haste not to take vengeance!”

* I.e., the Mongyol.
sending messengers unto each other, saying, "Let us make peace," [Činggis Qahan] learned the message [whereby one was] saying, "The Altan Qan of the Kitad people, when Megüjin Se'ültü and others of the Tatar [11r] would not hearken unto his counsel, sent, then, saying unto Ongging Čingsang: 'Making ready the soldiers, doubt [thou] not!' Ongging Čingsang, driving up along the Ulja [River] the Tatar having Megüjin Se'ültü at their head, with their herds and food, draweth nigh." Having learned that message, §138 [11v] when Činggis Qahan spake, having said, "From days of old the Tatar people have been a hating people which have made an end of [our] [12r] grandfathers and fathers. Now at this opportunity we shall together attack [them]," he sent messengers bringing this message unto To'oril Qan, saying, "One saith, 'Ongging Čingsang of the Altan Qan draweth nigh, driving up along the Ulja [River] the Tatar having Megüjin Se'ültü of the Tatar at their head.' We shall together attack [12v] the Tatar which have made an end of our grandfathers and fathers. Let Father To'oril Qan come quickly." Having received this message, when To'oril Qan spake, having said, "My son is come, telling [me] rightly. We shall together attack," the third day, mustering his army and making the army to arise [13r] To'oril Qan, hasting, came in person. 10 When both Činggis Qahan and To'oril Qan sent, telling [it] unto the Jürkin having Sača Beki and Taiçu of the Jürkin at their head, [13v] they sent, saying, "Let us now at this opportunity jointly attack and let us set forth together against the Tatar which from days of old have made an end of our grandfathers and fathers." Waiting six days from the [time when it was] to be come by the Jürkin, not being able [to wait any longer], both Činggis Qahan and To'oril Qan, [their] armies arising together, at the moment when they were drawing nigh along the Ulja [River], together attacking with Ongging Čingsang, at Qu-sutu Šittü'en and Naratu Šittü'en of the Ulja, the Tatar having

10 The word igtînefû, not glossed, is not elsewhere attested. It is a _converbum imperfecti_ in -jit of a verb igtîne-. My tentative translation is based on that which is found in the continuous translation of the Yuan-ch'ao pi-shih 4.14v8: 親自到來 (CK'in-tau tao-lai). "He came in person."
Megüjn (Se’ultů) of the Tatar at their head held there [14r] a fortress. Both Činggis Qahan and To’oril Qan, seizing from their fortress [those] which had so fortified themselves and Megüjn Se’ultů, then killing Megüjn Se’ultů, Činggis Qahan then took his silver cradle and [his] bed covering decked with [big] pearls.

§134 [15r] Saying, “They have killed Megüjn Se’ultů”—[that is to say] both Činggis Qahan and To’oril Qan 31—Onggōng Čingsang, having learned that they had killed Megüjn Se’ultů, rejoicing exceedingly, gave unto Činggis Qahan the title ja’ud quri. Then he gave unto To’oril of the Gereyid the title ong.12 Because Onggōng Čingsang had named the name [15v] Ong Qan, from thenceforth [To’oril] was [Ong Qan]. When Onggōng Čingsang spake, he said, “[By] your having jointly attacked and killed Megüjn Se’ultů ye have done exceeding great service unto the Altan Qan. I shall report this your service unto the Altan Qan. Let the Altan Qan know whether he should add unto Činggis Qahan a greater title than this and should give [unto him] the title [16r] Jautau.” 13 Onggōng Čingsang withdrew from thence, rejoicing so much as that. Both Činggis Qahan and Ong Qan, then, spoiling the Tatar, parting unto each other [the spoil], together taking [it], returned unto their abodes and lighted.

§135 [16v] At the moment when we were spoiling in the encampment where the Tatar had pitched at Naratu Šitu’en where they had fortified themselves, our soldiers got from the encampment a little boy—one which [the Tatar] had forsaken. Bringing the little boy which had a golden, round ring [in his nose] and which had a stomacher of gold silk and lined with sable, Činggis Qahan

11 Although I have translated the text as it is, regarding its irregular, if not awkward construction as one characteristic of the spoken language, Paul Pelliot, Histoire secrète des Mongols (Paris, 1948), p. 86 §134, seeing a lacuna, “restores” the words Onggōng čingsang-un ēesegii ad-bai taken from the Altan tabi (nose). Cf. Altan Tabi, A Brief History of the Mongols, Vol. I, p. 82, l. 8-9. If we adopt this “restoration,” the text must then be rendered: “Saying, ‘[We] have killed Megüjn Se’ultů,’ both Činggis Qahan and To’oril Qan [went to the encounter of Onggōng Čingsang].”

12 I.e., the Chinese wǒng 王 (“prince”).

13 I.e., the Chinese chao-t’ao 官給 (lit., “to summon [those who have not submitted] or to punish [those who have revolted]”), a term of Sung origin, used by the Chin 倜, for “pacification commissioner.”
gave [him] unto Mother Hö’elün, saying, “[He is] a sawya.” [17v] When Mother Hö’elün spake, [she said], “He must be the son of a good man. He must be the offspring of a man whose origin is good.” Making [him] to be [her] sixth son, the younger brother of her five sons, the mother named [him] Šíkikèn Qudùqu  

§136 [18r] The a’uru of Činggis Qahan was at Hariltu Lake. The Jürkin stripped off the clothing of fifty men—[those] which had remained behind in the a’uru’ud. They killed ten men. Saying, “[We] have been so done unto by the Jürkin,” when those [18v] of us who had remained behind in the a’uru’ud told [it] unto Činggis Qahan, having heard this message, when Činggis Qahan, being exceeding wroth, spake, having said, “How have we been being thus done unto by the Jürkin? At the moment when we were feasting in the forest of the Onan [River], the same also smote the cook Šiki’üür. The same also clave the shoulder of [19r] Belgütei. As it was said [by them], ‘Let us make peace,’ [we] returned and gave [back] both Qorîjîn Qadun and Qu’urîn. After that, saying, ‘Let us set forth, together attacking the hating and resentful Tatar of former times which had made an end of our grandfathers and fathers,’ although we awaited the Jürkin for six [19v] days, neither was it come [by them]. Now, again, relying on the enemy, “an enemy they themselves also are,” Činggis Qahan set forth against the Jürkin. At the moment when the Jürkin were at the Dolo’an Bolda’ud of Ködö’e Isle of the Kelüren [River], he spoiled their people. Both Saça Beki and [20r] Taiçu, few [in number] and with [nothing other than their] bodies, fled. Pursuing after them and overtaking them at the Telêtü Outlet, he seized both Saça Beki and Taiçu. [After] seizing [them], when Činggis Qahan spake unto both Saça and Taiçu, [20v] being told, “What said we unto one another in days of old?,” when both Saça and Taiçu spake, having said, “We have not kept to our

14 The name is transcribed Šíkikèn Qudùqu in §138 below. Elsewhere it is Šípi Qudùqu (§§202, 203, 214, 244, 262, and 287) and Šípi Qudùqu (§280). In this instance, the form Šíkikèn (–Šípìqèn), with the diminutive suffix -kèn, is one of endearment.

15 I.e., “taking advantage of the fact that we are involved in a campaign against the Tatar.”
word which we did speak. Make [thou us] to keep to our word!" 16 Being aware of their words, they stretched forth their necks for [him]. 17 Making [them] to be aware of their words, making [them] to keep to their words, he accomplished [the matter] and forsook them even there. 18

§187 [21r] Having accomplished [the matter of] both Sača and Taču, [Činggis Qahan] came back. 19 At the moment when he was making the people of the Jürkin to remove, the sons of Telegetü Bayan of the Jalayir, Gii'ün U'a, Čila'un Qayiči, and Jebke—all three—were at those Jürkin. When Gii'ün U'a presented himself with his two sons Muqali and [22r] Buqa and spake, he gave [them unto him], saying,

"Let them be the slaves
Of thy threshold.
If they swerve
From thy threshold,
Cut [thou] their sinews above the heel.
Let them be the private slaves
Of thy door."

If they depart
From thy door,
Cutting
Their liver, forsake 21 ye [them]."

[22v] When Čila'un Qayiči also presented himself unto Činggis Qahan [with] his two sons Tüngge and Qaši and spake, he said, "I have given [them unto thee], saying,

16 See §183 above: "If we, a day of battle, violate thine orders, . . . go [thou], forsaking on the earth and ground [44r] our black heads." Aware that they have broken their oaths, Sača Beki and Taču request of Činggis Qahan the punishment which they themselves had prescribed.
17 I.e., for Činggis Qahan to cut off.
18 I.e., killed them at the very place where he had overtaken and seized them.
19 I.e., to the Jürkin encampment.
20 See §§ 180 and 211 below.
21 I.e., kill.
Let them be
Guarding thy "golden threshold."
If they go apart
From thy "golden threshold,"
Sever ye their life and forsake ye [them].

I have given [them unto thee], saying,

Let them [23r] raise up
For [thee thy] wide [felt] door.
If they go away
From thy wide [felt] door,
Trample their hearts and forsake ye [them]."

They gave Jebke unto Qasar. Jebke brought from the encampment of the Jürkin a little boy named Boro'ul and, presenting himself unto Mother Hö'elün, [23v] gave [him unto her].

§138 [24r] When Mother Hö'elün raised up within the tent the boy named Gūčü which was gotten from the encampment of the Mer-[kįd], the boy named Kököcü which was gotten from the encampment of the Besüd in the midst of the Tayići'ud, [24v] the boy named Shigiken Qutoqu which was gotten from the encampment of the Tatar, and the boy named Boro'ul which was gotten from the encampment of the Jürkin—these four—, Mother Hö'elün raised [them] up within the tent, saying, "[If it be not they,] of whom, for my sons, would I [otherwise] make

Eyes to see by day,
Ears to hear by night? "

§139 [25r] [As for] the reason [of the name] of these Jürkin people, when they became Jürkin, the eldest brother of the seven sons of Qabul Qan was Ökin Baraqay.²² His son was Sorqatu Jürki. [25v] When he became Jürkin, saying, "[He is] the eldest brother of the sons of Qabul Qan," [Qabul Qan] chose from among his people and chose and gave [unto Ökin Baraqay] strong and mighty [men]

---

²² See § 293 below.
²² Elsewhere Ökin Baraqay. See §§ 48 and 49 above and §140 below.
Which had gall in the liver;
Which had ability in the thumb to shoot arrows;
Which had lungs full of heart;
Which had mouths full of fury.
Which, every man,
Had skill

and, because they had fury, had gall, had courage, and were [28r] ʃərkimes, such [is] the reason for which they are called Jürkin. Činggis Qahan conquered such courageous people and destroyed those which were of the Jürkin clan. Činggis Qahan made its people and [its] folk to be his own private people.

§140 One day Činggis Qahan said, “Let us make the twain, Büri Bökö and Belgüei, to wrestle.” Büri Bökö [27r] was at the Jürkin —[Beforetime] ʃə Büri Bökö, seizing Belgüei with one of [his] hands, thrusting [him] with one of [his] legs, making [him] to fall, assayed to press [him to the ground], not suffering [him] to move. Büri Bökö [was] the strong man of the nation.—Then [Činggis Qahan] made both Belgüei and Büri Bökö to wrestle. Büri Bökö —a man which was not to be overcome—willingly fell. Belgüei, not being able [27v] to press [him to the ground], took hold of [his] shoulders and got him up on [his] buttocks. Belgüei looked back and, with [his] seeing Činggis Qahan, the Qahan bit his lower lip. Belgüei, getting understanding, sat on top of him and, crossing the two [ends of] his collar, pulled, holding in [his] hand [the two ends of the collar], and, putting his knee on his

[28r] In ʃərkimes we have a folk etymology based on a consonance (ʃərgatu ʃərk, ʃərkimes, and Jürkim). The word ʃərkimes, not glossed, is not elsewhere attested. The meaning “irresistible” is suggested by the continuous translation in the Yün-ch’ü ʃi-ʃi: 無人能敵 (Wu jen neng ti). “There was not anyone who could resist [them].” In note 4 on pages 200-201 of the Histoire des campagnes de Gengis khan, Pelliot and Hamaïs stated, with reference to ʃərkimes, “in fact, this appears to be a negative form of Turkish type.”
[28r] Hence, his name Büri Bökö, Büri “The Strong Man.”
[28v] As on a gelding.
backbone, brake [it] and dispatched [him]. When [23r] Büri Bökö, his back being broken, spake, having said, “I should not have been overcome by Belgütei. Being afraid of the Qahan, by a device, being fallen and faltering, I have been attained unto my life,” he died. Belgütei, having pulled his back so that it brake, dragged [him] away, [23v] cast [him] away, and departed. The eldest brother of the seven sons of Qabul Qan was Ökin Barqay. The next was Bartan Ba’atur. His son was Yesügei Ba’atur. The one next to him was Qutuytu Müngrler. His son was Büri. Because, [going] [23r] beyond [the lineage of] the son of Bartan Ba’atur which was closest [to him in age], he was become a companion unto the courageous sons of Barqay, Büri Bökö, [although he was] the strong man of the nation, died, suffering his back to be broken by Belgütei.

§141 [30r] After that, [in the year of the cock [1201], the Qadagin and the Saljii’ud joining themselves—the Qadagin having Baqu Çorgi of the Qadagin at their head and [the Saljii’ud] having Çirgidal Ba’atur of the Saljii’ud at their head,—the Dörben making peace with the Tatar—[the Dörben] having Qajii’un Beki of the Dörben at their head and [the Tatar] having Jalim Buqa of the Alçi Tatar of the Tatar at their head—[the Ikires] having [30v] Tüge Maqa of the Ikires at their head, [the Unggirad] having Dergeq, Emel, Alqui, and others of the Unggirad at their head, [the Örolas] having Conay and Çeya’an of the Örolas at their head, Buyiruy Qan of the Gütti’ud Naiman from the Naiman, Qutu the son of Toyto’a Beki of the Merkid, Quduya Beki of the Oýirad, and Tayiçi’ud such as Taryutai Kiriltuy, Qodun Orçang, and [30v] A’uçu Ba’atur of the Tayiçi’ud, these tribes, assembling themselves at Alqui Spring, saying, “Let us raise up Jamuya the Jajirad as qa,” together cut in twain a stallion and a mare and made covenant with one another. Journeying from there down along the Ergüne River at the corner of the island where the Ken River poureth into the Ergüne, they then raised up [31v] Jamuya as gür qa. Having raised [him] up as gür qa, they said unto one

29 He is called Qutuytu Müngrür in §48 above.
30 L. e., “Ruler of All.”
another, “Let us set forth against both Činggis Qahan and Ong Qan.” That they had said unto one another, “Let us set forth,” Qoridai of the Horolos, at the moment when Činggis Qahan was at [Mount] Gürelgü, sent, bringing this message. §32r Having suffered this message to come, when Činggis Qahan sent, bringing this message unto Ong Qan, Ong Qan, having suffered [him] to bring [this] message [unto him], making his army to arise, hastening, Ong Qan, arriving, came unto Činggis Qahan.

§142 [32v] Having suffered Ong Qan to come, both Činggis Qahan and Ong Qan joining themselves, [33r] said unto each other, “Let us set forth against Jamuya.” When they set forth down along the Keliüren River, Činggis Qahan made Altan, Quḍar, and Daritai—all three—to go as vanguards. Ong Qan made Senggüm, Jáqa Gambu, and Bilge Beki—all three—to go as vanguards. Again when they sent watchmen in front of these vanguards, they placed one station [33v] of watchmen at Enegen Gūletü. Beyond that they made [one] to place one station of watchmen at [Mount] Čegêr. Beyond that they made [one] to place one station of watchmen at [Mount] Čiqurqu. At the moment when our vanguards, Altan, Quḍar, Senggüm, and others, arriving at Udkiya, were saying unto one another, “Let us pitch,” a man from the watchmen [34r] which we had placed at [Mount] Čiqurqu, hastening, came and brought a message, saying, “The enemy draweth nigh.” That message being come, not pitching, going against the enemy, saying, “Let us get tidings,” together arriving, getting tidings, when they asked, saying, “Who are [ye]?,” [they learned that] A’uču Ba’atur from the Mongol, [34v] Buyiruy Qan of the Naiman, Qutu, son of Toyo’a Beki of the Merkid, and Quduqa Beki of the Qyirad, vanguards of Jamuya—these four—were gone as vanguards of Jamuya. Our vanguards cried unto those. While they were crying, it was become evening. Saying, “We shall fight with one another to morrow,” withdrawing, they passed the night, uniting [forces] with the middle [of our army].

§143 [35r] On the morrow making [the soldiers] to march, coming together, together setting themselves in array [at] Köyiten, at the
moment when [in joining battle the two armies] were making each other to retire [now] downward and [now] upward 81 and [35v] were reforming their ranks, both the same Buyiruy Qan and Quduqa knew [how to make] a jada. 82 As they began to make a jada, the jada turned, and the jada was upon them, the same. The same not being able to march, being tumbled into ravines, having said unto one another, "We have not been loved by Heaven," [36r] dispersed themselves.

§144 Buyiruy Qan of the Naiman, [36v] separating himself [from Jamuya], removed, betaking himself [unto] Ulu Tay 84 in front of the Altai. Qutu, son of Toyo’a of the Merkid, removed, betaking himself [unto] the Selenge [River]. Quduqa Beki of the Oyrad, striving for the forest, removed, betaking himself [unto] Šisgis. A’uçu Ba’atur of the Tayiči’ud removed, betaking himself [unto] the Onan [River]. Jamuya, having spoiled the peoples which had raised himself up as qa, Jamuya removed, returning down along [37r] the Erguine. Those being so dispersed, Ong Qan pursued Jamuya down along the Erguine [River]. Činggis Qahan pursued A’uçu Ba’atur of the Tayiči’ud toward the Onan. A’uçu Ba’atur, being come unto his people, having made [them] to remove, making [them] to haste, the Tayiči’ud, [37v] A’uçu Ba’atur and Hodun Orčang, ordering their remaining soldiers having square shields [on] the yonder side of the Onan [River], stood, ordering [them], saying, "Let us fight!" 84 Činggis Qahan, being arrived, fought with the Tayiči’ud. Fighting exceedingly back and forth, evening coming, [the two armies] passed the night [so close to each other that they were as] propped the one over against the other in the same place [38r] in which they had fought.

81 I.e., "now toward the foot of the mountain and now toward the top of the mountain."
82 This word is glossed: "the ability to bring about wind and rain."
84 I.e., "Big Mountain." (in Turkish).
84 Although I have translated the text as it is, it is not to be doubted, as already demonstrated by P. Pelliot in his article "Un passage altéré dans le texte mongol ancien de l’Histoire sécrète des Mongols” in the Tounq Pao 27 (1930) 309-320, that the reading hülë’ud tumsa’ta “[their] remaining [soldiers] having square shields” is an error for Ülengüd Turas-tur “at Ülengüd Turas.” The Altan töbi (novel) has Ülengüd Turas-tur. Cf. Altan Töbi, A Brief History of the Mongols, Vol. I, p. 90, l. 12.
Chapter IV

And when the people, fleeing, were drawing nigh, even there they made a giur'en and passed the night togeth with their soldiers.

§145 [39v] As Činggis Qahan, a vein of his neck being wounded in that battle, tried to stanch the blood, when, not being able, he was in a strait, waiting till the sun was set, even there, [the two armies being so close to each other that they were as] propped the one over against the other, he pitched. Jelme, sucking and sucking [39r] the blood which had stopped [the wound], his mouth being stained with blood, Jelme, not relying on [any] other person, sat keeping watch over [him]. Until it was become midnight, in mouthfuls having swallowed or having spat [out] the blood which had stopped [the wound], as midnight was passed, when Činggis Qahan, awakening within him, spake, he said, “The blood hath finished drying up. [39v] I am thirsty.” Thereupon, Jelme putting off his hat, boots, and garments—everything—with [his] only breeches, [otherwise] stark naked, running amongst the enemies which were standing, [the two armies being so close to each other that they were as] propped the one over against the other, getting him up into a cart of the people which had made a giur'en yonder, seeking mare’s milk, [but] not being able [to find any]—when [those people] were fled, they had loosed their [40r] mares, not milking [them]—not being able to get mare’s milk, having taken from [one of] their carts a great [vessel of] curd having a covering, he lifted [it] up and came. On the way, when he went and came, he was not seen by [any] person. Heaven, indeed, protected him. Having fetched the curd with the covering, the same Jelme [40v] himself, indeed, seeking and fetching water, mixed the curd and made [it] to be drunk by the Qa’an. Drinking [it], resting thrice, when the Qahan spake, having said, “[Mine] eyes are become bright within [me],” while he sat up, the day dawned and, as it became bright, when he looked, [he perceived that] round about that [place where he] had sat there was a mire round about [the place where] Jelme had, sucking and [41r] sucking, spat [out] the blood which had stopped [the wound]. When Činggis Qahan, seeing [it], spake, he said, “What is this? If [thou] hadst spat afar, how would it have been?” Thereupon, when Jelme spake, he said,
“When thou wast in a strait, being afraid of the fact that, if I should go afar, I should be separated from thee, being in haste, having swallowed [41 v] that which I swallowed and having spat that which I spat, as I was in a strait, how much also entered into my belly?” When Činggis Qahan again spake, he said, “While, being such, I was [so] lying, why didst thou, naked, run and enter [amongst those enemies]? If [thou] hadst been taken, wouldst [42 r] thou not have reported that I [was] such?” When Jelme spake, he said, “As for my thought, [it was that,] when [I] went naked, if I should be taken [by them], I would say, ‘I have had the desire of submitting myself unto you. Perceiving and seizing [me], saying, ‘Let us kill [him],’ [the Mongol] putting off my garments—everything—, at the moment when they had not yet put off mine only breeches, I suddenly escaped and now am come, [42 v] rejoicing myself unto you.” Regarding me as sincere, they would have given garments unto me and would have cared for [me]. Having ridden a horse, while [astonished] they would have been watching [me escape], in a space of time as long [as that which they would have needed to do that], would I not be come [back]?

So thinking and saying [unto myself], ‘I would that I arrive in time for satisfying the desire to drink] caused by the parching thirst of the Qa’an, ‘the eye remaining black,’” thus thinking, [43 r] I am gone.” When Činggis Qahan spake, he made a decree, saying, “Now what shall I say? In days of old, at the moment when the Three Merkid, coming, were making [me] to go round about Burqan [Qaldun] thrice, thou didst once save my life.” Now, again, sucking with [thy] mouth the blood which was drying up [43 v], thou didst [reopen my life. Again, at the moment when I was in a strait with a parching thirst, risking thy life, ‘the eye remaining black,’ thou didst enter into [the midst of] the enemy. Making [my] drink to be sufficient, thou didst make [my] life to enter [into me again]. Let these thy three services be within my thoughts.”

**t.e., “without winking the eye.”**

**See § 102 above, where, however, there is no mention of this fact.**

**See note 85 above.**
§146 [45r] After that the day had dawned, the soldiers which had passed the night [so close to one another that they were as] propped over against one another, in the night, then, had dispersed themselves. The peoples which had made a gūreb'en [there], saying that they would not be able to flee, did not remove from the place where they made a gūreb'en. Saying, "Let us cause the people which are fled to come back," Činggis Qahan, setting forth from the place where he had passed the night, at the moment when he was going, causing [45v] the people which were fleeing to come back, Činggis Qahan himself, hearing a woman with a red garment which was standing on a [mountain] pass, crying and wailing in a loud voice, saying, "Temüjin," sent a man to ask, saying, "What man's wife is so crying?" As that man went and [46r] asked, when that woman spake, she said, "I am the daughter of Sorqan Śira. [I am] named Qada'an. The soldiers here have seized my husband and are killing [him]. When my husband was being killed, I called, cried, and wailed, saying, 'Let Temüjin save my husband.'" When that man came [back] and spake these words [46v] unto Činggis Qa'an, Činggis Qahan, having heard these words, trotting, arrived. Činggis Qahan lighted at [the place where] Qada'an [was] and they embraced each other. Our soldiers had before killed her husband. Having caused those people to return, Činggis Qahan and the great army, pitching even there, [47r] passed the night. Inviting Qada'an, he suffered [her] to come and suffered [her] to sit beside [him]. The next day both Sorqan Śira and Jebe—those two which were people of Töđöge of the Tayiś'ud—also came. When Činggis Qahan spake unto Sorqan Śira, he said,

"Having cast upon the ground
The heavy wood
Which was at [my] neck,
Having made to be removed
The buya'ü wood
Which was at [my] [47v] collar,

were services of you, father and son. Ye, why have ye delayed [to come]?" When Sorqan Śira spake, he said, "I have been thinking
within me of [my] present support. Saying [unto myself], 'Why should I be in haste? If, being in haste, I am come before, my Tayit'i'ud chiefs, those, will make to blow away as the ashes [of my hearth] my wife and sons, [49r] herd and food which I shall have left behind,' not being in haste, now, overtaking [you], we are come to unite forces with our Qahan.' When he had made an end of speaking, Činggis Qahan said, "[It is] right!"

§147 [49r] Again, when Činggis Qahan spake, he said, "At the moment when [in joining battle the two armies], setting themselves in array [at] Kōyiten, were making each other to retire and were reforming their ranks, from on those ridges there came an arrow. Who [then], from on the mountain, shot so as to break the atlas 44 of my war qula 45 white of mouth?" At [49v] that word, when Jēbe spake, he said, "I shot from on the mountain. Now, if I be caused to die by the Qa'an, I shall remain rotting [on] a [piece of] ground the size of the palm [of a hand]. If I be favoured, before the Qa'an"

I shall rush [forward] for [him]
So as to cleave the deep water asunder,
So as to break the bright stone to pieces. 46
I shall rush [forward] for [him]
So as to break to pieces
The blue stone
In the place whither he shall have said,
'Arrive [thither]';

So as to break to pieces
The black stone [50r]
At the time when he shall have said, 'Assault.'" 47

When Činggis Qahan spake, saying, "A man which hath walked as an enemy concealeth the fact that he hath killed, that he hath

44 I. e., the first cervical vertebra.
45 A qula, a word which [67] in the interlinear translation is rendered 'by 黃馬 huang-ma 'yellow horse', is properly a horse with a fallow coat which has a black mane and tail, a black stripe covering the spine." Cf. Antoine Montaret, Sur quelques passages, pp. [68]-[67].
46 See Chapter II, note 3.
47 See also §200 below.
been an enemy, and [even] his [own] body, and hideth his [own] words and is afraid. If [I] say, 'As for this [man],' **however, not hiding the fact that he hath killed and that he hath been an enemy, he [50v] is, however, declaring [it]. He is a man that may be a companion. He is named Jiryo’adai. Because the same shot my war qula white of mouth, in the atlas, I shall use him as a weapon, naming [him] Jebe,’ **namely naming [him] Jebe, he made a decree, saying, "Go at my side." Such [was] the manner in which Jebe came from the Tayiči’ud and [51r] became a companion [unto Činggis Qahan].**

**I.e., Jiryo’adai.**

**The name Jebe means "Weapon." He is so named, as we see, from the facts that he shot the jebelegi qula, "the war qula" or, more literally, "the qula which served as a weapon (jebe)," and that Činggis Qahan says: "jebeley iimagi" "I shall use him as a weapon (jebe)," i.e., "instead of my jebelegi qula which he shot."

**See also § 237 below.**
§148 [1r] Činggis Qahan then spoiling the Tayiči‘ud, making [them] to blow in the wind as ashes [of the hearth], slew unto the seed of the seed the men of the Tayiči‘ud “bone”—Tayiči‘ud such as A‘ūcu Ba‘ṣtur, Qoton Orćang, and Qudu‘udar. Making their nation and people to remove, [1v] coming, Činggis Qahan wintered [at] Quba Qaya.

§149 Old Man Širgū‘etū of the Ničugūd Ba‘arin with his sons, Alay and Naya‘a, seizing Taryutai Kiriltuγ, chief of the Tayiči‘ud which was staying in the woods, saying, “He is a hated 1 man”—Taryutai [2r] which was not able to ride upon a horse 2—making [him] to ride in a cart, at the moment when [2v] Old Man Širgū‘etū with his sons, Alay and Naya‘a, was drawing nigh, holding Taryutai Kiriltuγ, the sons and younger brethren of Taryutai Kiriltuγ came, overtaking [them], saying, “Let us take [him] away!” With his sons and younger brethren coming, overtaking [them], when Old Man Širgū‘etū, getting him up into the cart, sitting astride 3 Taryutai which was not able to arise—on [him] on his back—drawing out a knife, spake, having said, “Thy sons and younger brethren are come for to take thee away. Even if, saying [unto myself], “[I] have laid hand upon my qaν, I do not kill thee, they, indeed, will kill [me], [3r] saying, “[He] hath laid hand upon his qaν.” And if I kill [thee], I shall likewise be killed. At the very moment when I die, I shall die, taking a pillow,” 4 at the

1 I.e., by Činggis Qahan.
2 Because, as implied by his nickname Taryutai (“Fatty”), he was too fat.
3 As on a gelding. See Chapter IV, note 28.
4 “‘To die, taking a cushion (or a pillow),’ means ‘by anticipation to avenge one’s own death by killing at the moment of dying an enemy who will be able to serve as cushion (as pillow), that is to say with whom one will be able to be interred and on the body of whom one will be able to be recumbent as on a cushion (a pillow).’” Antoine Montebnh, op. cit., p. [60]. For another example see §154 below.
moment when, being astride [him], he was at the point to cut his throat with his big knife, when Taryutai Kiriltuy, with a loud voice, calling his younger brethren and sons, spake, saying, "Sirgü’etü [3v] is killing me. When he maketh an end of killing [me], taking away my dead body without life, what will ye do? At the moment when he hath not yet killed me, return ye quickly! Temüjin will not kill me. At the time when Temüjin [was yet] little, saying [unto myself], 'He hath Fire in his eyes, Light in his face,'*

saying [unto myself], [4r] 'He is remaining behind in an encampment without a lord,' [7r] I went for to take [him] and [I] brought [him hither]. Saying [unto myself], 'If I instruct [him], it seemeth that he will learn,'

[I] instructed and taught [him]
As if I were training
A new foal of three years old or a [new] foal of two years old.

If [I] had said [unto myself], 'I shall make [him] to die,' would I have not been able to make [him] to die? It is said, 'Now

His intelligence
Is entering.
His mind
Is opening.'*

Temüjin will [4v] not make me to die. Ye, my sons and younger brethren, return ye quickly. Sirgü’etü will kill me," he wailed with a loud voice. When his sons and younger brethren spake unto one another, saying unto one another, "We are come, saying, 'We shall save the life of [our] father.' When Sirgü’etü maketh an end of making his life to die, what shall we do with his empty [5r]

*See note 8 above.
*See "Chapter I," note 44.
*Because his father, Yetüget Ba’atur, is now deceased.
*I.e., he is conducting himself as a rational man. See Chapter XII, note 44.
body without life? However, let us quickly return, at the moment when he hath not yet killed [him],” they returned. The sons of Old Man Širgū’etū, Alay and Naya’a, came [back], having withdrawn themselves [from their father], at the moment when those were come. [Širgū’etū] having suffered them to come, when, removing, they were drawing nigh, when, on the way, they arrived at Qutaqul Nu’u, then when [5v] Naya’a spake, he said, “If, seizing this Taryutai, we arrive, Činggis Qahan, saying [unto himself] that we are come, laying hand on our proper qan, Činggis Qahan, saying of us, ‘Those who are come, having laid hand on their proper qan, people worthy of what confidence [are] these? How would they also be companions unto us? [They are] people which one is not able to regard as companions. People which have laid hand upon their proper [6r] qan shall be beheaded.’ Shall we [not] be beheaded? In stead, releasing Taryutai from hence and sending [him back], let us go, saying, ‘We are come [with nothing other than] our bodies to give [our] might 10 unto Činggis Qahan.’ [6v] We shall say, ‘Seizing Taryutai, we were drawing nigh. Not being able to forsake 11 our proper qan, saying [unto ourselves], “How shall we make [him] to die before our eyes?,” releasing [him], we are come, believing in [you] and saying, ‘We shall give [our] might [unto you].’” The father and sons, approving this word of Naya’a, released Taryutai Kiriltuy from Quduqul Nu’u and sent [him back]. When the same, Old Man Širgū’etū, with his sons Alay and Naya’a, was come, he 12 said, “How [7r] [is it that ye] are come?” When Old Man Širgū’etū spake unto Činggis Qahan, he said, “When, seizing Taryutai Kiriltuy, [we] were drawing nigh, saying, moreover, ‘How could we make our proper qan to die before our eyes?’, not being able to forsake [him], releasing [him], we are come, saying, ‘We shall give [our] might unto Činggis Qahan.’” At that, when Činggis Qahan spake, saying, “If [ye] were come, laying hand upon Taryutai your [7v] qan, ye would have caused yourselves to be beheaded with

* I.e., the sons and brothers of Taryutai.  
10 I.e., devotion.  
11 I.e., to kill.  
12 I.e., Činggis Qahan.
your seed—people which had laid hand upon their own proper qan. Your thought that [ye] were not able to forsake your own proper qan is right,” he favored Naya’a.

§150 [8v] After that, Jaqa Gambu of the Kereyid came for to be a companion unto Činggis Qahan, at the moment when [Činggis Qahan] was at [9r] Tersüd. At [the time when] he came, as the Merkid came for to fight, Činggis Qahan, Jaqa Gambu, and others fought and made [them] to withdraw. Then the ten thousand Tübegen and the many Dongqayid 14 and the Kereyid people which had dispersed themselves, came submitting themselves unto Činggis Qahan. As for Ong Qahan 14 of the Kereyid, before, in the time of [9v] Yesügei Qa’an, 15 inasmuch as they lived together happily and peacefully, he declared [himself] anda with Yesügei Qan. 16 [As to] his reason for having declared [himself] anda, because Ong Qan had killed the younger brethren of Qur-čaqus Buyiruy Qan, his father, making a revolt against his paternal uncle, Gür Qan, being made to slip [into] Qara’un Qabčal, [10r] [only] a hundred men going out, as he came unto Yesügei Qan, Yesügei Qan receiving him unto himself, his own soldiers setting forth, because he drave Gür Qan toward Qašin and took and gave unto Ong Qan his people and folk, that they became anda [is] that.17

§151 [11r] After that, when Erke Qara, the younger brother of Ong Qan, was [to be] killed by his elder brother, Ong Qan, he fled away and submitted himself unto Inanča Qan of the Naiman. Inanča Qan sent troops, but Ong Qan, passing by three cities, betaking himself [thither] was gone unto Gür Qan of the Qara Kidad. From thence, making a revolt, having passed by [11v] the

14 In §§170 and 171 below, these people are named the Tümen Tübegen and Olen Dongqayid respectively.
15 This is the only instance in the Secret History in which Ong Qan is referred to as Ong Qahan.
16 This is the only instance in the Secret History in which Yesügei is referred to as Yesügei Qa’an. Elsewhere he is referred to as Yesügei (e.g., §40), Yesügei Bu’tur (e.g., §60), and Yesügei Qan (e.g., §96).
17 Allusion to this event has already been encountered in §§96 and 104 above.
18 L.c., “That is the reason for which they became anda.”
cities of the Uyiyd and of the Tangyüd, seizing and together milking five goats and pricking the blood of a camel, having eaten [it], as being in a strait, he came to Lake Gùse'üir, Çinggis Qahan, by reason of the fact that beforetime [Ong Qan] had declared [himself] anda with Yesügei Qan, having sent messengers, both Tayai Ba'atur and Sükegei Je'ün, from the head of the Kelüen [River], Çinggis Qahan himself went toward [him]. Saying, "He is come, hungering and wasting away," for Ong Qan he levied levies and, suffering him to enter within [his] gûre'en, so nourished [him]. That winter they journeyed in [parallel] ranks and Çinggis Qahan wintered at Quba Qaya.

§152 [12v] Then, when the younger brethren of Ong Qan, the chiefs and others, spake unto one another, they said unto one another, [13r] "This qan, our elder brother, hath a poor nature and goeth, having a stinking liver in his bosom." He hath made an end of [his] brethren. He hath also submitted himself unto the Qara Kidad. And he maketh the people to suffer. Now how shall we deal with him? If we speak of an early day, [we recall to mind that] the Merkid people ravished [him which was] seven years old and made [him] to wear a black, speckled kid [13v] coat and he beat a mortar of the Merkid in the Bu'ura Steppe of the Selenge [River]. As his father Qurqas Buyiruy Qan, however, breaking the Merkid people, then came, saving his son, again, at the moment when again Ajai Qan of the Tatar, ravishing [him which was] thirteen years old, together with [his] mother, was making [him] to herd his [14r] camels, having taken a shepherd of Ajai Qan, he fled and is come [hither]. Again, after that, being afraid of the Naiman, he escaped and went unto Gür Qan of the Qara Kidad, in the land of the Sarta'ul at the Cui River. Then, one year not [yet] being ended, furthermore, removing in revolt, when he was going, passing by the lands of the Uyiyd and [14v] the Tangyüd, being in a strait, seizing and milking five goats and pricking and eating the blood of a camel, having an

18 See also §§152 and 177 below.
19 See §150 above.
20 I.e., he is a man of a bad disposition.
only, blind yellow horse with black mane and tail, as, being in a strait, he came unto [his] son Temüjin, [Temüjin] levied levies and [so] nourished [him]. Now, [15r] forgetting the fact that he was so gone unto [his] son Temüjin, he goeth, having a stinking liver in his bosom. How shall we deal with [him]?” Altun Aṣuy reported unto Ong Qan the words which they had thus spoken unto one another. When Altun Aṣuy spake, saying, “And I also am entered into this counsel. However, I was not able to forsake thee, my Qan,” then [15v] Ong Qan made one to seize his younger brethren and his chiefs such as El Qutur, Qulbari, and Arin Taisi, which had thus spoken unto one another. Jaqa Gambu, fleeing from the younger brethren, submitted himself unto the Naiman. Making those to enter into [his] tent with fetters, when Ong Qan spake, having said, “At the moment when we were going forward by the lands of the Ul’ud and of the Tang’ud, what [16r] said we unto one another? How could I think as ye?,” spitting in their faces, he made one to loose their fetters. When they were but spat upon by the qan, the people which were in [his] tent all arose and spat upon [them].

§158 [17r] Wintering that winter, [in] the autumn of the year of the dog [1292], Činggis Qahan set himself in array [at] Dalan Ne-mürges against the Ča’a’an Tatar, Alći Tatar, Duta’ud [Tatar],23 and Aluqai Tatar—those Tatar—and, before joining battle, when Činggis Qahan spake an ordinance with [his soldiers],24 he made an ordinance with [them], saying, [17v] “If we overcome the enemy, let us not tarry for spoil. When we shall have made an end of overcoming, that spoil shall be ours. We shall part [it] with one another. If we be made to withdraw ourselves by an enemy, let us return unto our place from whence we first rushed [forward]. We shall make [one] to behead the man which shall not have

21 The word qul’un is glossed “yellow [horse] with black mane and tail.” See Chapter III, note 42.
22 See §96 above, wherein Temüjin declared that Ong Qan was like a father.
23 The omission of the word Tatar was apparently inadvertent, for we find it in the text immediately below (3.18r2). Cf. also the Altan tobči (novel) which has Dusdul Tatar. Cf. Altan Tobči, A Brief History of the Mongols, Vol. I, p. 116, l. 4.
24 I.e., with their full consent.
returned unto [the place of] the first rushing [forward].” [18r] Joining battle [at] Dalan Nemürge, he made the Tatar to remove. Overcoming [them], making [them] to join themselves unto their nation at Ulqi Şilügeljid, he spoiled [them]. Then destroying the weighty peoples, the Čahan Tatar, Alei Tatar, Duta'ud Tatar, and Aluqai Tatar, [not keeping] to the words whereby they had spoken the ordinance with [Chinggis Qahan], Altan, Qučar, and Daritai—all three—[18v] not keeping to the words, halted for spoil. Saying, “[Ye] have not kept to [your] words,” sending both Jebe and Qubilai, he made them to take [from them] the herds and things which they had spoiled, [the things which] they had taken—everything.

§154 [19r] Making an end of destroying and spoiling the Tatar, saying, “How shall we deal with their nation and people?” Činggis Qahan, entering into a solitary tent with his kinsmen, counseled great counsel with [them]. When they were counseling one another, saying, “From days of old [19v] the Tatar people have been making an end of [our] grandfathers and fathers.

Avenging  
The avengement,  
Requiting  
The requital

of [our] grandfathers and fathers, let us, comparing [their height] unto [that of] a linchpin, destroy and slay [them] for [them].” Let us slay until we destroy [them]. Let us make slaves of those that shall have been left. Let us part [them] with one another severally,” as, together making an end of [their] counsel, they went out from the tent, Yeke Čeren of the Tatar asked of Belgütei, saying, “What [20r] counsel have ye counseled one another?” When Belgütei spake, he said, “We have said unto one another that, comparing [your height] unto [that of] a linchpin, we would slay you all.” At this word of Belgütei, Yeke Čeren made a proclamation unto his Tatar and made a fortress. When

**I.e., killing all those whose height exceeds that of the linchpin in the axletree of a cart. In other words, killing all except the little children.**
our troops assayed to attack the Tatar which had made a fortress, they suffered great loss. Making, with labour, the Tatar which had made a fortress, to submit themselves, at the moment when, destroying [them], comparing [their height] unto [that of] a linchpin, they were slaying [them], when the Tatar spake unto one another, saying unto one another, "Each person putting a knife in his sleeve, let us die 'taking a pillow,'" 26 again [our soldiers] suffered great loss. And so making an end of slaying the Tatar, comparing [their height] unto [that of] a linchpin, then, when Činggis Qahan made a decree, he made a decree, saying, "Because of the fact that Belgütei had revealed that we had together made an end of [21r] great counsel with our kinsmen, he made our soldiers to suffer great loss. After this, let Belgütei not enter into great counsel. Let him order [those] that are outside until we shall make an end of counsel. Having [so] ordered, let him judge quarrels and those of whom theft and lies [are] the deeds. When we shall have made an end of counsel, after we shall have drunk the ötög, 27 let both Belgütei and [21v] Da’aritai then enter."

§155 [22r] Then Činggis Qahan [22v] then took [to wife] Yesügen Qatun, daughter of Yeke Çeren of the Tatar. When she was loved [of Činggis Qahan], when Yesügen Qadun spake, she said, "If the Qahan favour [me], he will take care of [me], considering me a person and a thing [worthy to keep]. She who is named Yesii, a sister older than I, is better than I. She is fit for a qan. Lately a son in law was come to be a son in law [for her]." 28 Now who knoweth whither she is departed in this confusion?" At this word, when [23r] Činggis Qahan spake, he said, "If thine elder sister have been better than thou, I shall make [one] to seek [her]. If thine elder sister come, wilt thou withdraw thyself for [her]?" When Yesügen Qadun spake, she said, "If the Qahan favour [me], if I but see mine elder sister, I shall withdraw myself for mine

26 See note 4 above.
27 This word is glossed "wine which is offered."
28 I.e., her husband who was the son-in-law of her father and mother and the brother-in-law of Yesügen Qatun.
elder sister.” At this word, when Činggis Qahan, proclaiming a decree, [23v] made [one] to seek [her], our soldiers encountered her going in the woods together with the son in law to which she had been given. Her husband fled away. Then one brought Yeső Qatun. Yesųgen Qadun, having seen her elder sister, keeping to the words which she had spoken before, arising, making [her] to sit on her seat on which she had sat, she herself sat below. As she ** was like unto [that which had been said of her in] [24r] the words of Yesųgen Qatun, Činggis Qahan, suffering [her] to enter into his thoughts,** took Yeső Qatun [to wife] and suffered her to sit in the row [of imperial wives].

§156 [24v] Making an end of spoiling the Tatar people, one day, when Činggis Qahan, sitting outside, was drinking together [with Yesů Qadun and Yesųgen Qadun], at the moment when he was sitting between both Yesů Qadun and Yesųgen Qadun and drinking together [with them], Yesů Qadun [25r] sighed deeply. Then when Činggis Qahan, thinking within him, calling and making the chiefs Bo’orču, Muqali, and others to come, spake, he made a decree, saying, “Ye **”—these people which have assembled themselves stand [ye] all tribe by tribe **—set [ye] apart the persons of a tribe other than your own.” And so, as they [all] stood, each with his [25v] tribe, a young, good, elegant person stood apart from the tribes. As one said, “What [manner of] person art thou?,” when that person spake, he said, “I am the son in law ** unto whom was given the daughter named Yesů of Yeke Čeren of the Tatar. When we were spoiled by the enemy, being afraid, I fled away, but saying, [26r] ‘It is now become peaceable,’ I am come and have been saying, ‘Why should I be recognized among the many people?’” As one reported this word unto Činggis Qa’an, when he made a decree, he said, “The same, thinking

** I. e., Yesů Qatun.
** I. e., affection. See also §86 above.
** I. e., Bo’orču, Muqali, and others.
** Although Činggis Qahan uses the imperative form of the second person plural, he really is not addressing himself directly to these people. He means: “Let these people, etc.”
** I. e., of the father and mother of Yesů.
an enemy, was gone, becoming a robber. Now he is come for to espy what? We have compared [the height of] those that are like him unto [that of] a linchpin. Why should ye doubt? "Cast [ye him] away from [26v] the sight of [mine] eyes." And so he was beheaded.

§157 [27r] In the same year of the dog [1202], at the moment when Činggis Qahan set forth against the Tatar people, Ong Qan, setting forth against the Merki[d] people, pursuing Toyto’a Beki toward Baryujin Hollow, killing Tögüs Beki, the eldest son of Toyto’a, taking Qutuytai and Ca’alun of Toyto’a, his two daughters, and [27v] his wives, spoiled his two sons, Qutu and Čila’un, together with [his] people, and gave not even aught unto Činggis Qa’an.

§158 [28r] After that, both Činggis Qahan and Ong Qan, setting forth against Buyiruy Qan of the Güçügüd of the Naiman and arriving at the moment when he was at the Soqoy Usun of Uluy Tay, Buyiruy Qan not being able to set himself in array, removed, passing over the Altai [Mountain]. Pursuing Buyiruy Qan from the Soqoy Usun, at the moment when, making [him] to pass over the Altai [Mountain], they continued to pursue [him] down along the Ürünggii [River] of Qum Şinggir, his chief named [28v] Yedi Tubluy, going as a spy, being pursued by our spies, as he was at the point to flee on the mountain, his belly strap being broken, then he was taken. Having pursued [him] down along the Ürünggii [River], overtaking [him] at Lake Kišil Baši, there they destroyed Buyiruy Qan.

§159 [29r] At the moment when both Činggis Qahan and Ong Qan, returning from thence, were drawing nigh, Kögse’ü Sa’bray, the [best] fighter [29v] of the Naiman, setting [his] soldiers in order at Bayidaray Belčir, was at the point to fight. Both Činggis Qahan and Ong Qan, saying, "Let us fight," setting [their] soldiers in order, arrived, [but,] it being [already] become evening, saying, "Let us fight to morrow," passed the night on the [same] line.

II. I.e., "Why should ye hesitate?" See also §207.
III. I.e., "Soqoy Water (== River)."
IV. I.e., "Sand Headland" (in Turkish).
V. See §151 above for a slightly different use of the term jérge’er.
Then Ong Qan, making one to light fires at his station, it being night, removed up along the Qara Se’ul [River].

§160 [30r] Then, when Jamuya went, removing together with Ong Qan, when [30v] Jamuya spake unto Ong Qan, he said, “Mine anda, Temüjin, from afore hath had messengers unto the Naiman. Now he is not yet come. Qan, Qan, the qayiruyana 49 which remaineth is I. The bïldu’ur 35 which returneth is mine anda. He is gone unto the Naiman. He hath remained behind, being at the point to submit himself [unto them].” At that word of Jamuya, when Gürin [31r] Ba’atur of the Uböy spake, he said, “Flattering, why so speakest [thou], slandering and defaming thine upright brother?”

§161 [31v] Činggis Qahan, at night, passing the night even there, saying, “Let us fight,” on the morrow, as, early, day dawned, when he looked at the station of Ong Qan, [saw that] he was no more [there]. Having said, “As for these, they look upon us as if we were burnt-offerings,” 46 Činggis Qahan, removing from thence, passing over by the mouth of the valley of Eter Altai, continuing to remove, [32r] pitched [at] the Sa’ari Steppe. From thence both Činggis Qahan and Qasar, perceiving the devices of the Naiman, did not count [them] as people [of worth].

§162 [32v] Kögse’ü Sa[b]ray, 44 pursuing after Ong Qan, spoiling and taking the wives and sons of Senggüm together with the people and folk, returned, having spoiled and having taken half the people, herds, and food of Ong Qan which were at Telegegettı Outlet. When, in that battle, the two sons of Toyto’a of the Merkid, Qutu and Čila’un, were there, having taken their people, [33r] separating themselves, they removed down along the Se-lengge [River], joining themselves unto their father.

§163 [33v] Being spoiled by Kögsegü Sabray, Ong Qan sent a

49 This word is glossed: “small bird with white feathers.”
45 This word is glossed: “small bird which tells Heaven,” i.e., the lark.
46 I.e., “food burned in sacrifice to the dead and which no longer serves for anything.” Antoine Morfærk, op. cit., p. (80), n. 14. See also §177 below.
47 In the name Kögse’ü Sabray, Kögse’ü – Kösegü. See, for example, §163 below.
messenger unto Činggis Qahan. When he sent the messenger, he sent, saying, “I have been spoiled by the Naiman [in respect of] my people and folk and my wives and sons. I have sent, requesting from my son thy ‘four külü’üd.’” Let them save my people and folk for me.” Činggis Qahan then, setting [his] soldiers in order, sent these his “four külü’üd,” Bo’orçu, Muqali, Boroyul, and Čila’ün. Before these “four külü’üd” arrived, Senggim being at the point to set himself in array at Hula’an Qud, the thigh of his horse being shot [by an arrow], at the moment when he was at the point to be taken, these “four külü’üd,” being arrived and having saved [hím], saved [34v] for him [his] people and folk and wives and sons—all of them. Then when Ong Qan spake, [35r] he said, “Aforetime I was delivered by his good father [in respect of] my people which were wholly departed like this. Now again, of my son, I have been saved [in respect of] my people which were wholly departed, my ‘four külü’üd’ being come.” Let the protection of Heaven and Earth know how I shall return the benefit.”

§164 [35v] Again, when Ong Qan spake, saying, “Mine anda, Yesügei Ba’atur, once saved for me my people which was wholly

**I.c., Bo’orçu, Muqali, Boroyul, and Čila’ün. See immediately below. The word külü’üd (=<i>külü’üd</i>), a plural in -üd of külü, might be rendered “heroes.”

**Although I have rendered the text as it stands, that it has been altered is clear from the observation made by the Reverend Antoine Moerker in a letter dated 7 July 1854:

“There is a remark to be made in regard to the text Edi’s base körün-üren odun barayasan ulas-i minu dörb'en külü’üd-iyan iresü aburaju ıştebe. If one examine the continuous Chinese version of this passage, one sees that this version has been made on a text which must have been: Edi’s base körün ışnu odun barayasan ulas-i minu dörb'en külü’üd-iyan iresü aburaju ıştebe [‘Now again, his son, sending his four “heroes,” has just saved my people which had completely departed, and, thanks to him, it has been given back to me.’]. A wording which the Altan tobü (now) also supposes: Edi’s base körün ışnu odun barayasan ulas-i minu dörb'en külü’üd-iyan [ilefesü] aburaju ıştebe ([‘Now again, the son, (sending) his four “heroes,” has just saved my people which had completely departed, and, thanks to him, it has been given back to me.’]. Cf. Altan Tobü, A Brief History of the Mongols, Vol. I, p. 192, ll. 6-7. It seems to me quite evident that the text of the Chinese transcription is altered. Külü’üd-iyan iresü of the Chinese transcription is inexplicable. That körün-üşües be separated from dörb'en külü’üd by the words odun barayasan ulas-i minu is not explicable either.”
departed. [His] son, Temüjin, again hath saved my people which were departed. [And] he hath given [them unto me]. When these, both father and son, [36v] assemble and give unto me the people which were entirely departed, on whose behalf do they suffer, assembling and giving [them]? I also now

Am waxed old.
When, waxing old,
I go out to the heights,44
I am become old.
When, becoming old,45
I go out to the cliffs,46
Who will govern my people?

My younger brethren are without virtue. Mine only son is as if I had none. Senggüm is alone." Making [my] [36v] son Temüjin to be the elder brother of Senggüm, I would have two sons and would be at ease."44 With Činggis Qahan, Ong Qan assembling himself in the Black Forest of the Tu'ula [River], they declared themselves father and son. [As for] the reason for which they declared themselves father and son—by the reason that before-time in days of old Ong Qan had declared himself anda with the father [of Činggis Qahan], Yesügei Qan, [Činggis Qahan] [37r]

44 I.e., “When I shall die.” It was the custom to bury the deceased of rank on a height or a cliff. See also §§176, 201. For an interesting and, in some respects, parallel example in the Ongyod gare sakiyurnum tséke suður bìöö orangoba [The Book (Entitled) the History of the Black Guardian, the Ongyod, Has Taken Its Place (Herein)] of the early 17th century in which it is told concerning a certain Ingdaqai, how, immediately upon the death of his aged father, "all by himself he laid the corpse on the top of a flat boulder at the southeastern declivity of the Red Cliff which towered up there all by itself," cf. Walther Hermand, "A Mongolian Source to the Lamaist Suppression of Shamanism in the 17th Century (Concluded)," Anthropos 48 (1953) 483-535 (pp. 505-504).
45 I.e., "something old which no longer serves any purpose."
46 See note 44 above.
47 This statement is contrary to historical fact, for the Nestorian Christian Kereyid Princess Diqyas Xátan (= Toyus Qatan) was, in the words of Rashid al-Din, “fille de Ikou, fils d’Ong-khan.” Cf. [E.] Quatremère, Histoire des Mongols de la Perse 1 (1850) 94. Hence, we know that Ong Qan had at least two sons. Cf. also Paul Pelliot et Louis Hamme, op. cit. 1 (1881). 257.
48 I.e., "I shall have no more soliciitute on the subject of my succession."
saying that [Ong Qan was] like a father—such [was] the reason for which they declared themselves father and son. When they spake words unto each other, they said unto each other, "When we hurl ourselves at the many enemies, let us hurl ourselves together in one place. When we hunt for the wild beasts, let us hunt together also in one place." Again, when both Činggis Qahan and Ong Qan spake unto each other, saying, "[Others] envying us twain,

If, by a serpent with teeth [37v],
We are provoked [into dissension],
Let us not yield ourselves unto [his] provocations.
Let us believe [only when] speaking unto each
other by teeth and mouth.\^\text{50}

If, by a serpent with fangs,
We are backbitten [into dissension],
Let us not accept his backbitings.
Let us believe [only when] verifying
by mouth and tongue,"\^\text{51}

thus pledging [their] word, they were friendly unto each other.

\^\text{50 See §88 above.}
\^\text{51 I.e., face to face. See §177 below.}
\^\text{52 I.e., face to face. See §177 below.}
\^\text{53 By this Senggüm means that, if his younger sister Ča'ur Beki were to marry Joči, she would be treated as a servant who sits just inside the door facing the place of honor at the back of the tent, but that, if Qojuin Beki were to marry his son Tussaqa, she would be treated as a lady who sits in the place of honor at the back of the tent.}
self to be [somebody] great, speaking, despising us, not giving Ča'ur Beki [unto us], he did [39v] not love [our words]. At that word Činggis Qahan, within him, lost his affection for both Ong Qan and Nilqa Senggüm.

§166 [40r] Jamuγa perceived that he had so lost his affection. [In] the spring of the year of the pig [1203], Jamuγa, Altan, and Qučar [as well as] Süge'etei, To'oril, and Qači'un Beki of the Qardakid, Ebüğejin, and Noyakin—being those—being with one accord, arising, departing, going unto Nilqa Senggüm at the back of Jeje'er Heights at Berke Sands, when Jamuγa spake slanderously, [40v] he said, "Mine anda, Temüjin, hath messages and messengers unto Tayang Qan of the Naiman. His mouth is [yet] saying, 'father, son,' [but] his behaviour is other. Are ye [yet] relying upon [him]? If ye do not prevent him, how will it be for you? If [ye] set forth against Anda Temüjin, [then] I shall enter with [you] from athwart." When both Altan and Qučar spake, [41r] they said, "[As for] the sons of Mother Hölülün, we shall kill the eldest for [thee] and we shall forsake the youngest." When the Ebüğejin, Noyakin, and Qarta'ad spake, they said, "For [thee]

We shall seize
His hands;
We shall seize
His feet."

When To'oril spake, he said, "It were best that we go and take the people of Temüjin. If he be taken [in respect of] his people and if he be without people, [41v] what will those do?" When Qači'un Beki spake, saying, "If thou, Nilqa Senggüm, [my] son, think whatsoever it may be, I shall arrive with [thee] at the extremity of [that which is] long and at the bottom of [that which is] deep." **44**


**44** See §§77 and 88 above and §187 below.

**46** See §199.
§167 [42r5] Being told these words, Nilqa Senggūm sent, speaking those words unto his father, unto [42v] Ong Qan, by Sayiqan Töde'en. Being told these words, when Ong Qan spake, saying, "Why are ye so thinking on my son, in [respect of] Temüjin? Until now [our] prop being by him," now, then, if [we] so think evil in [respect of] my son, we shall not [43r] be loved by Heaven. Jamuya hath vain words. Is he speaking rightly? truly?" he did not love [the words of Sayiqan Töde'en] and sent [him back to Nilqa Senggūm]. Again, when Senggūm sent, speaking, having sent, speaking back and forth, saying, "Whereas a man which hath a mouth and which hath a tongue be speaking, why is he not to be believed?" when, being in a strait, going by himself in person, he spake, he said, [43v] "Even in a time in which thou art [yet] so much alive, he is not regarding us as even aught.

And verily when thou, his father the Qan,

Will choke
On the 'white,'
Will gag
On the 'black,' "

will he suffer thy people which thy father Qurčaqs Buyiruy Qan, with labour, assembled in so great a quantity to be governed by us? By whom and how will he suffer [them] to be governed?" "At that word, when Ong Qan spake, he said, "How shall I forsake my lad, my son? If, until now, [our] prop being by him, [we] think evil, would it be fit? We shall not be loved by Heaven." At that word, his son, Nilqa Senggūm, being displeased, casting

"I. e., "he being our prop."
"See note 53 above.
"I. e., Chinggis Qahan.
"I. e., "Will choke on liquid food (principally milk products), and will gag on solid food (principally meat)." For this explanation cf. Antoine Moustard, op. cit., p. [76].
"Senggūm means that, since Chinggis evinces already so great a scorn for Ong Qan, although the latter is still in all his strength, it is to be feared that he may take his subjects from him, once Ong Qan will have attained to extreme old age, 'the time when one chokes in drinking milk products and obstructs the gullet in eating meat.'" Cf. Antoine Moustard, op. cit., p. [77].
"See note 55 above.
aside the [felt] door [of the tent], went out.\textsuperscript{41} However, [44v]
dealing sparingly with the affection of his son \textsuperscript{42}—of Senggium—
calling [him], making [him] to return, when Ong Qan spake, he said, "[If we did that,] who knoweth whether we would [yet] be
loved by Heaven? How say ye that ye will forsake [my] son?" \textsuperscript{31}
Do ye but as [ye] are able. Know [ye how ye shall do]."

§168 [45v] Then, when Senggium spake, saying together [with
Ong Qan], "The same, indeed, have requested our Ça’ur Beki.
Now saying, ‘Come [ye] for to eat the betrothal meal,’ let us, ap-
pointing a day, inviting [them] and making [them] to come, then
seize [them]," saying, "Yea!," making an agreement [with Ong
Qan], he sent, saying, "We shall give Ça’ur Beki. Come [ye] for to
eat [46r] the betrothal meal." Being invited, when Činggis Qahan
drew nigh, ten men [in number], as, on the way, he passed the night
in the tent of Father Münglig, then when Father Münglig spake,
saying, "When we requested Ça’ur Beki, the same, indeed, despi-
sing us, would not have given [her unto us]. Now how con-
trariwise \textsuperscript{44} have they invited [us] [46v] to eat the betrothal meal?
Why contrariwise would people which imagine themselves to be
great invite [us], saying, ‘We shall give [her unto you]’? Is
[their] thought right? true? Son, it is to be gone by thee, under-
standing [this]. Let us send in pretence, saying, ‘It is become
spring. Our herds of horses are lean. We shall nourish our herds of
horses,’" not going [himself], sending both Buqatai and Kiratai,
saying [unto them], [47r] "Eat [ye] the betrothal meal," Činggis
Qahan returned from in the tent of Father Münglig. With the
arriving of both Buqatai and Kiratai, [Senggium and the others]
said unto one another, "We have been felt.\textsuperscript{48} Let us compass
and seize [them] early to morrow."

§169 [47v] When [48r] Yeke Čeren, the younger brother of Altan,
coming unto his tent, spake the fact that they had so taken a

\textsuperscript{41} See §77 above.
\textsuperscript{42} I.e., for fear of losing it.
\textsuperscript{31} I.e., “How do you wish to kill my son?”
\textsuperscript{44} I.e., “contrary to our expectations.” See also Chapter VIII, note 48.
\textsuperscript{48} I.e., “We have been suspected by him.”
decision together, saying, “Let us so compass and seize [them],” he said, “We said unto one another, ‘Let us seize Temüjin early to morrow.’ The man which goeth, carrying this word as a message unto Temüjin, how will he fare?” At the moment when he was so speaking, when his wife Alay Yid spake, [48v] she said, “What availleth that thy superfluous word? [I] fear lest people take [it] as true.” At the moment when they were so speaking unto each other, their herdmans Badai, coming for to bring the milk, heard this word and returned. Badai, departing, spake unto [his] companion, the herdmans Kišiliy, the words which [Yeke] Čeren had spoken. When Kišiliy spake, saying, “I shall go again and perceive [whether it be so],” he went unto the tent. When the son of [Yeke] Čeren, [49r] Narin Ke’en, sitting outside, sitting, polishing his arrows, spake, he said, “What said we unto one another a little while ago?

We ought to have suffered our tongues to be taken [to constrain us to silence.

Now] whose mouth shall we stay [from speaking]?”

Having so said, when Narin Ke’en again spake unto his herdmans, unto Kišiliy, he said, “Bring [from the pasture] and fetch both Merkidei Čaya’an” and Aman Čaya’an Ke’er.” Tying [them], early in the night [49v] we shall set forth.” When Kišiliy, departing, spake unto Badai, saying, “[I] have examined thy message of a little while ago. It was true. Now let us twain depart, carrying the message unto Temüjin,” pledging unto each other [their] word, bringing [from the pasture] both Merkidei Čaya’an and Aman Čaya’an Ke’er, coming, tying [them], evening being come, killing one of their [50r] lambs in their tent, boiling [him] by means of [the wood of] their bed, riding both Merkidei Čaya’an and Aman Čaya’an Ke’er which they had tied ready, departing in the night, arriving unto Činggis Qahan at night, when the twain, Badai and Kišiliy, spake north of [his] tent, they wholly spake for

*I.e., “What good welcome would he not receive from Temüjin?”

*This is the name of a gelding, signifying, “The Merkid White.”

*This is the name of a gelding, signifying, “The Bay with Black Mane and Tail and with a White Muzzle.”

*Even though Činggis Qahan was inside his tent, he could, when so addressed, hear
him the words which Yeke Čeren had spoken, [the words] which his son, Narin Ke'en, sitting, polishing his [50v] arrows, had spoken —the words which he had said: "Bring [from the pasture] and tie the two geldings Merkidei Čaya'an and Aman Čaya'an Ke'er."

Again when the twain, Badai and Kišili, spake, they said, "If Činggis Qa'an favour [us], [we assure to him that] there is no doubt. They pledged [their] word, saying, 'Let us compass and seize [him].'"

perfectly what was said outside. See also §220 below. For a parallel instance in the Epic of Gilgamesh cf. André Parrot, The Flood and Noah's Ark (New York, 1956), p. [25].
§170 [1r] Being so told, Činggis Qahan, believing the words of both Badai and Khišliy, having, [it being yet] night, then, sent the message unto the trusty who were in the neighbourhood, lightening [himself], having forsaken [all] his things, fleeing, [it being yet] night, then, removed. When he removed, [going his way] by the back of Mau Heights, at the back of [1v] Mau Heights, as he trusted Jelme Qo’a of the Uriangqad, making him to be rearward guard at his rearward, and, placing watchmen, he removed. Continuing to remove, the next day, at noon, waiting until the sun was inclining itself, arriving [at] the Qalaqaljid Sands, he pitched to rest and to eat. At the moment when one was resting and eating, at the moment when [2r] Çigidei and Yadir, the keepers of the geldings of Alcidai, were going, each his own way, feeding their geldings in the green [pastures], they saw the dust of the enemy which was drawing nigh from the rearward, along the front of Mau Heights, passing by Hula’an Buruqad. Saying, “The enemy is arrived,” they came, having driven their geldings before [them]. When, being told, “The enemy is arrived,” one looked, beholding the dust [2v] along the front of Mau Heights and passing by Hula’an Buruqad, one said, “Ong Qan—that [one]—is drawing nigh, pursuing [us].” Then, Činggis Qahan, having seen the dust, having made one to bring his geldings [from the pastures], laded [them] and set forth. If, at that moment, one had not seen [the enemy approaching, one would have been taken unawares, because] one was unprepared. At that drawing nigh, Jamuya was drawing nigh, drawing nigh [3r] together with Ong Qan. Then Ong Qan asked of Jamuya. He asked, saying, “At [the side of my] son, Temüjin, who are [those] such as will fight?” When Jamuya spake, he said, “There are there his people named the Uru’ud and the Mangyud. Those his people will fight.”
Each time they turn,  
[Their] ranks are proper.  
Each time they turn,  
[Their] order [3v] is proper.

Those [are] peoples which from childhood have been accustomed to swords and spears. Those are ones which have black and speckled standards. [They] are people against whom one should forewarn himself.” At that word, when Ong Qan spake, he said, “If it be so, we shall make our Jirgin ba’atud 1 to rush against them, Qaday opposing [them], our Jirgin ba’atud. As succourer [4r] of the Jirgin, we shall make Aciy Sirun of the Tumen Tübegen to rush against [them]. As succourers of the Tübegen, we shall make the Olon Dongqayid ba’atud to rush against [them]. As succourer of the Dongqayid, let Qori Silemün Taisi, leading the thousand dayguards of [me], Ong Qan, rush against [them]. As succourers of the thousand dayguards, we, the great middle, shall rush against [them].” Again, when Ong Qan spake, he said, “Younger Brother [4v] Jamuya, order thou our army!” At that word, Jamuya going out, being alone apart, when he spake unto his companions, saying, “Ong Qan saith that I should order this his army. I have never been able to fight against [mine] anda. [Now] he saith that I should order this army. Ong Qan is [even] more yonder than I. 2 [5r] He is a companion which hath a measure. 3 I shall send in a message unto [mine] anda. Let [mine] anda be vigilant,” when Jamuya, secretly sending a message unto Činggis Qahan, sent, speaking, he sent, saying, “Ong Qan hath asked of me. As he asked, saying, ‘At [the side of my] son Temūjin who are [those] such as will fight?’, when I spake, I spake in such a way that I placed first the Uru’ud and the Mangyud. At my [5v] word, they placed first his same Jirgin and [then proceeded to] set [them] in order as the vanguards. They declared Aciy Sirun of the Tumen Tübegen as succourer of the Jirgin. [They

---

1 The word ba’atud is a plural in -d of the word ba’atar “valiant man.” See Chapter III, note 48 and note 61.
2 I.e., “is even more incapable of it than I.”
3 I.e., “which is measurable,” “of which the qualities are not out of the ordinary.” See also Chapter X, note 61.
declared the Olon Dongqayid as succourers of the Tübegen.4
They declared Qori Şilemün Taisi, captain of the thousand day-
guards of Ong Qan, as succourer of the Dongqayid. He said, 
‘As succourer of him, likewise I shall stand with the great middle army
of [me.] Ong Qan.’ [6r] Again when Ong Qan speaketh, he speak-
th, appointing me, saying, ‘Younger Brother Jamuya, set thou
this army in order.’ If I perceive by this, [I see that] he is a com-
pion which hath a measure.6 How would [he] be able to set his
army in order? Beforetime I was never able to engage in battle
with [mine] anda. Ong Qan is [even] more yonder than I." Anda,
be [thou] not afraid. Be [thou] vigilant.”

§171 [7v] Having received this message, when Chunggis Qahan
spake, he said, “What sayest thou, Uncle Jürçedei of the Uru’ud?
I shall make thee the vanguard.” Before Jürçedei[1] had uttered
[his] voice, when Quyildar Seçen 7 of the Mangyud spake, he said,
“I shall fight on behalf of [mine] anda. Let [mine] anda decide
how one shall, long after, take care of mine orphan sons.”8 When
[8r] Jürçedei spake, he said, “On behalf of Chunggis Qahan we
Uru’ud and Mangyud shall fight as the vanguard.” Having so
spoken, both Jürçedei and Quyildar, stood ordering [their armies],
on behalf of Chunggis Qahan, with their Uru’ud and Mangyud.
With [their] standing, the enemy, making the Jirgin the vanguard,
arrived. With [their] coming, the Uru’ud and [8v] the Mangyud
rushed against [them] and overcame the Jirgin. At the moment
when they went forward, overcoming [them], Aşir Sirun of the
Tümen Tübegen rushed [against them]. Rushing [against them]
Aşir Sirun pierced Quyildar and made [him] to light off [his horse].
The Mangyud returned over Quyildar. Jürçedei rushed [against

4 The line Tübegen-u şepçe Olon Dongqayid-i ke’le’düba was restored by Paul
Pallot, Histoire secrète, p. 53. In the Altan toboi (novo) we find: Tümenen-u
köbegün Aşim Sirun-u şepçe Olan Dongqayid-i kemeldübei. “They declared the
Olan Dongqayid succourers of Aşim Sirun, son of Tümenen.” Cf. Altan Toboi, A
5 See note 3 above.
6 See note 2 above.
7 In the name Quyildar Seçen, Quyildar—Quyildar in §160 above.
8 For the decision, see §168 below.
them] with his Uru'ud and overcame the Tümen Tübegen. [9r] At
the moment when he was going forward, overcoming [them] and
making [them] to remove, the Olon Dongqayid rushed against
[him]. Jüreñeñei, also overcame the Dongqayid. At the moment
when, overcoming [them], he was going forward, Qori Šilemüñ
Taisi rushed [against him] with a thousand dayguards. At the
moment when Jüreñeñei, again, making Qori Šilemüñ Taisi to
withdraw himself, was going forward, overcoming [him], as Senggüm,
without [9v] leave from Ong Qan, began to rush against
[him], [his] red cheek being shot by an arrow, Senggüm fell even
there. Suffering the fall of Senggüm, the Kereyid all returned
and stood over Senggüm.5 Overcoming them, at the moment when
the setting sun was smiting upon the hills, ours, returning, having
taken Quyildar, [him] [10r] with wounds which was fallen, returned.
Činggis Qahan and ours, separating themselves from Ong Qan—
from the place where they had fought—removing in the
evening, separating themselves, passed the night.

§173 [11r] Standing, passing the night, when, waiting until the
day dawned, they mustered [the army], Öködei,6 Boroyul, and
Bo'orçu—all three—were absent. When Činggis Qahan spake,
he said, "With Öködei both the trusty Bo'orçu and Boroyul have
remained behind. Whether living or dying, how would [11v] those
separate themselves?" Ours in the night, bringing in their geld-
ings [from the pastures], had passed the night. When Činggis
Qahan spake, saying, "If one come, pursuing from our rearward,
we shall fight," he set in order [his soldiers] and stood [awaiting
the enemy]. When, waiting until the day is become light, one
looketh, [one seeth that] one man draweth nigh from the rear-
ward. When, arriving, he came, [one saw that] it was Bo'orçu.
Having suffered Bo'orçu to arrive and come, when Činggis Qahan
spake, saying, "Let Everlasting Heaven know," he smote his
breast. When Bo'orçu spake, he said, "At the moment when I
was rushing [against the enemy], my horse being shot [by arrows]

5From this it seems that the Kereyid detachment, with Senggüm, must have
already set forth to attack when Senggüm was hit.
6This is an alternate form of the more usual Öködei.
so that he fell, at the moment when I went running on foot, [12v] in a respite in the same battle in which the Kereyid had returned and were standing over Senggüm, as for a laden horse which, having suffered his burden to incline itself to one side, was standing [there], cutting off his burden, riding on his inggirčay,11 going out, going on, following the tracks along which ours had separated themselves and were gone out, finding [them], I am now come.”

§173 [13r] Again, while there is [but] a moment, yet one man draweth nigh. At the moment when he, arriving, draweth nigh, he draweth nigh, his legs hanging below.12 When one looketh, [one seeth that] he is like an only man. After that he was come, Boroyul, riding double behind Ökődei, suffering blood to flow by the corners of [his] mouth, arrived. [As for] Ökődei, the vein of his neck having been hit by an arrow, when his blood clotted, Boroyul, [14r] sucking [it] with his mouth, came, suffering the blood which had stopped [the opening of the wound] to flow by the corners [of his mouth]. Činggis Qahan, seeing [him], suffering the tears to flow from his eyes, [his] heart having been troubled, having made one quickly to kindle a fire, having made one to apply heat,13 making one to seek drink for Ökődei, making one to give [it unto him], said, “If the enemy come, we shall fight.” [14r] When Boroyul spake, he said, “The dust of the enemy, [moving] yonder, by the front of Mau Heights, toward Hula’an Boruqad, [this] dust, rising in a long train, is departed yonder.” At that word [of] Boroyul, saying, “If [the enemy] were come, we would have fought. [But,] if, [as now,] by the enemy, we are made to suffer the fact that, fleeing, he is removed, we shall reform our army and [15r] shall fight [again].” [Činggis Qahan] removed. When he removed, being removed up along the Ulqui Šilügeljid [River], he entered Dalan Nemürges.

§174 [15v] Then, from the rearward, Qada’an Daldurqan came, separating himself from his wife and [his] son. Coming, [16r] when

11 I.e., a wooden saddle serving as pack-saddle for horses and oxen, without stirrups attached.
12 Because he was sitting on the rump.
13 I.e., having made the wound to be cauterized.
Qada'an Dalduqan spake, saying, "[These are] words of Ong Qan," he said, "Ong Qan, his son Senggüm being shot in the red cheek by an ucumay [arrow] so that he fell, [the Kereyid] returning over him, then spake. As he said,

'At [a time] in which it seemeth [that we ought
to have asked ourselves,] "Shall
we stir [him] up?"
We have stirred [him] up.
Provoking [him]
At [a time] in which it seemeth [that we ought
to have asked ourselves,] "Shall we
provoke [him]?"
Alas! we have made one to nail
A nail
In the check of my son.' 14 [16v]

We shall together rush [against them], seeking [to save] the life of [my] son, at that, when Aciy Şirun spake, he said, 'Qan, Qan, let [it] be! 15 When we sought the son which was behind the back; 16 making elbesin [prayers] and jalama [prayers], we pray [Heaven], seeking [him], saying "Abui! Babui!" Let us, these, [now] take care of Senggüm the son which is already born. The more part of the Mongyol is here with Jamuya and with Altan and Qučar at [the side of] us. The Mongyol which have revolted and are gone out with [17r] Temüzjin, whither will those go? Those are

Ones which have beasts to ride [which are] horses;
Ones which have shelters [which are] trees.

If those come not, going, we shall fetch [them], putting [them] in the skirt [of our garment] like dried horse dung.' At this word of Aciy Şirun, when Ong Qan spake, having said, 'Yea! If it be so, I fear that [my] son be weary. Take care of [my] son, not shaking [him, while carrying him], returning, he withdrew from the place where one had fought.'

14 I.e., "We are responsible for the fact that he was shot by an ucumay arrow."
15 I.e., "Do thou not that!" (== "Assault thou not!"
16 I.e., "which was not yet born." Cf. the continuous translation in the FCPS 6.17v-5.
§175 [18r] Then, when Činggis Qahan removed from Dalan Nemürges along the Qalqa [River], he numbered the number [of his soldiers]. When he had numbered [them], [he knew that] there were two thousand six hundred. One thousand [18v] three hundred [in number], Činggis Qahan journeyed along the western side of the Qalqa [River]. One thousand three hundred [in number], the Uru’ud and the Mangyud journeyed along the eastern side of the Qalqa [River]. At the moment when they were so journeying and going forward, at the moment when they were going hunting for provision, at the moment when Quyildar was not yet healed of his wounds, 17 although he had been warned by Činggis Qahan, [19r] being unwilling [to cease to go forward], as he began to rush upon the wild beasts, [his wounds] opened again and he passed away. Then Činggis Qahan made one to place his bones at Keltegi Qada of [Mount] Or Nu’u of the Qalqa [River]. 18

§176 [19v] [Činggis Qahan], knowing that at the place where the Qalqa [River] pours itself into Lake Buyur there were the Unggirad [chiefs] Terge, Amel, 19 and others, sent Jurđeđif [unto them] with the Uru’ud. When he sent [him], as he had sent [him], saying, “If they say [unto themselves], ‘The Unggirad people from 20r days of old [have had their being not by the might of arms, but]

By the comeliness

Of the daughters of [their] daughters,

By the beauty

Of [their] daughters,” 20

they will submit themselves. If the same say, ‘Revolt!,’ 21 we shall fight,” they submitted themselves unto Jurđeđif. As they had submitted themselves, Činggis Qahan touched not even aught of them.

§177 [20v] Then having made the Unggirad to submit themselves,

17 See §171 above. 18 See Chapter V, note 28.

19 The fracture of the vocalic harmony, as evident in the transcription of this name, is extraordinary. “Amel is probably to be read Emel.” Cf. Antoine Mourtazé, op. cit., p. [94], n. 89. See, however, Amel in §278 below.

20 See §64.

21 I. e., “We do not submit ourselves.” Cf. Antoine Mourtazé, op. cit., p. [94].
departing, pitching east of the Tüngge Stream, when Činggis Qahan caused a message to be carried [unto Ong Qan] [21r] by the twain, by Arqai Qasar and [by] Sügegei Je‘ūn,22 when he spake, saying, “Speak unto my father the Qan, [saying,] ‘We have pitched east of the Tüngge Stream. And its23 grass is become good.” Our geldings have strengthened the joints [of their legs],” when he sent, saying, “My father the Qan, in [respect of] what grievance hast thou made me to be afraid? If thou must make [me] to be afraid, why makest thou not me to be afraid [so as, at least,] to suffer thy bad sons and thy bad daughters in law to have their fill of sleep?”

Bringing low the bench on which they sat ding,24
Dispersing the smoke which went upward [from the roof of their tents],

why hast thou made [them] so to be afraid? 27 My father the Qan,
Hast thou been pricked
By a person which is at the side?
Hast thou been stirred up
By a person which is in the way? 28

22 See Chapter III, note 49.
23 I. e., of the region east of the Tüngge Stream.
24 I. e., abundant.
25 For the explanation of this passage cf. Antoine Monzener, op. cit., pp. (80)-97:
"By these words Činggis reproaches Ong Qan for frightening his family, whereas, if truly Ong Qan had reasons for complaining about him, he ought to have contended himself with frightening Činggis alone: ‘If thou must frighten me, says he, why dost thou not it so as at least to let thy bad sons and thy bad daughters-in-law [97] sleep to their heart’s content?’ By the words ‘thy bad sons and thy bad daughters-in-law’ Činggis, who, in remembrance of the relations of anda which had existed between Ong Qan and Yestigei, treats the first as father, means all the members of his family and, quite specially, his own sons and daughters-in-law.”

26 This word, not glossed, is not elsewhere attested.
27 “In case we should read ding (= temp) soyuqsi iseri, I would translate: ‘The bench on which they sat [all] at the same level.’” Antoine Monzener, op. cit., p. [97], n. 92.
28 “If I understand the sentence well, Činggis asks Ong Qan why he has frightened ‘his sons and his daughters-in-law’ to such a point that they have taken flight, abandoning their tents, of which the movables fell into the hands of Ong Qan and letting go out their fire which, of a sudden, ceased sending up to the sky its column of smoke.” Antoine Monzener, op. cit., p. [97].
29 See also §801 below.
My father the Qan, what said we twain unto each other? At the Hula'anu'ud Bolda'ud of [22r] Jorqal Qun spake we not unto each other? Said we not unto each other,

‘If, by a serpent with teeth,
We are provoked [into dissension],
Let us not yield ourselves unto his provocations.
Let us believe [only when] verifying by teeth
and by mouth?’

Now my father the Qan, hast thou separated thyself [only after]
verifying by teeth and by mouth? Said we not unto each other,

‘If, [22v] by a serpent with fangs,
We are backbitten [into dissension],
Let us not yield ourselves unto [his] backbitings.
Let us believe [only when] verifying by mouth
and by tongue?’

Now my father the Qan hast thou separated thyself, [only when]
verifying by mouth and by tongue? My father the Qan, although I be few [in number], I made [thee] not to seek [others who might be] many [in number]. Although [I] be bad, I made [thee] not to seek [others who might be] [23r] good. If a cart having two shafts break its second shaft, its ox is not able to pull [it]. Am I not thy second shaft like that? If a cart having two wheels break its second wheel, it is not able to journey. [23v] Am I not thy second wheel like that? If we speak of the days of old, after thy father Qurqas Buyir Qan, saying, ‘[I am] the eldest brother of forty sons,’ thou didst become qan. After becoming qan, thou didst kill both Tai Temür Taisi and Buqa Temür, thy younger brethren. When thy younger brother Erke Qara was [at the point] to be killed, saving his life, going out, he escaped and submitted

\[\text{a}See \ssection{164} \text{above.}
\[\text{b}See \ssection{164} \text{above.}
\[\text{c}Chagis Qahan means by this: ‘It is true that my group is not numerous, but thou recognized in it just the same so great a value that thou didst not seek to ally thyself with a more numerous group. It is true that my qualities are not very eminent, but they appear to thee, however, such that thou soughtest not to ally thyself with another who had greater ones.’ Cf. Antoine Montaert, op. cit., p. [100].\]
himself unto Inanča Bilge Qan [24r] of the Naiman. When, saying, 'He is become the murderer of his younger brethren,' thine uncle, Gür Qan, setting forth, is come against thee, thou—a hundred men saving their lives—didst escape and fleeing down along the Selengge, thou didst slip [onto] Qara’un Qabčal. Moreover, when thou didst go out from there, [thou] didst give thy daughter Huja’ur Újin unto [24v] Toýto’a of the Merkid, [as a means of] ‘presenting [thy] face,’ and, coming out from Qara’un Qabčal, as thou didst come unto my father Yesügei Qan, then, when [thou] didst speak, being told, 'Save my people for me from [mine] uncle, Gür Qan,' my father Yesügei Qan being come unto by thee so saying, leading both [25r] Rūman and Baqajī from the Tayīq’ud, saying, 'I shall save thy people for thee,' ordering [his] army, departing, pursuing, toward Qaṣin, Gür Qan—twenty [or] thirty men—who were at Turban Telesūd, he saved thy people for thee. “Coming from thence, in the Black Forest of the Tu’ula [River], becoming [25v] anda together with my qan father, Yesügei Qan, then, Ong Qan, when [thou] didst speak, thanking my father, thou didst thank [him], saying, 'As to the benefit of this thy service, let the protection of Heaven above and Earth [below] know how I shall return the benefit unto the seed of thy seed. After that, when Erge Qara, requesting soldiers from Inanča Bilge Qan of the Naiman, setting forth, came [26r] against thee, thou, forsaking thy people to save thy life—a few persons fleeing—went out and thou departed unto the Gür Qan of the Qara Kidād, at the Čui River, in the country of the Sarta’ul. Not enduring one year, again, going out, rebelling from the Gür Qan, when, being in a strait, [thou] drewest nigh by the lands of the U’ud and of the Tang’ud, seizing five [26v] goats, milking [them], and eating [their milk], pricking and eating the blood of camels, thou art come with an only, blind, yellow horse with black mane and

"I.e., Ong Qan.

"For this interpretation of the word mürqan (mürqan) I am deeply indebted to Dr. William Henry, who, on 27 July 1861, interpreted the enigmatical Chinese gloss 適面皮 (kung mien-p’i) to mean "[gift of one person to another] to present the face." In view of this explanation, it seems that the words škim-yeq mürqan (škim-yeq mürqan, škim-yeq mürqan) really mean: "giving his daughter as a gift of first audience."

"Erge—Erke."
Knowing that thou, the father the Qan, being so in a strait, wast coming and being mindful [of thee] because of the fact that beforetime thou didst declare thyself anda with my father, Yesügei Qan, having sent as messengers to meet [27r] thee both Tay'ai and Sükegei,\[^{27v}\] again, I myself departing from the Bürgi Escarpment of the Kelüren [River] to encounter [thee], we did meet each other at Lake Güseür. Saying that thou wast come, being in a strait, I, having levied levies and having given [them] unto thee, by reason of the fact that beforetime thou hadst together declared thyself anda unto my father, was that not the reason for which [27v] we two declared ourselves father and son in the Black Forest of the Tu'ula [River]?\[^{27v}\] That winter, suffering thee to enter within [my] güre'en, I did nourish [thee]. Wintering the winter, summering, in the autumn, setting forth against Toyto'a Beki of the Merkid people, fighting [28r] with [him at] Mürtçê Seül of Qadiyê Niru'un, driving Toyto'a Beki toward Baruyjin Hollow, spoiling the Merkid people, taking their many herds and ordo tents and their grains—all—, I gave [them] unto [my] father the Qan. [I] suffered not thy being become hungry to endure unto the middle of the day. I suffered not thy having wasted to endure unto the half of the moon. Again, we, driving Buyiruy Qan of the Güçügür, making [him] to pass over the Altai from Soqoy Usum of [28v] Uluê Tağ, being gone down along the Ürûnggu [River], destroyed [him] at Lake Kiciê Baş. At the moment when, returning from thence, we were drawing nigh and at the moment when Kögseü Sabray of the Naiman was ordering his soldiers and setting himself in array [for battle] at Baidaray Belçir, as it was [already] become evening, as we passed the night, together setting [our soldiers] in order, saying, [29r] 'We shall fight early to morrow,' thou, my father the Qan, kindling fires at thy [battle] stations, thou didst remove in the night up along the Qara Seül. When [I] looked early on the morrow, [perceiving that.] as [thou] wast absent at thy [battle] station, thou wast removed, saying. 'These here look upon us as if we were burnt-offerings,'\[^{29v}\] I also, removing, passing over by the valley of [29v] Eder Altai, coming [hither],

\[^{27v}\] See Chapter V, note 18.  
\[^{27v}\] See Chapter III, note 49.  
\[^{27v}\] See §101 above.  
\[^{29v}\] See §101 above.
pitched at the Sa’ari Steppe. Then Köge’ü Sabray pursuing thee, having taken the wives and sons, people and folk of Senggüm—all—as he went, spoiling the half of thy people, herds and food, of thy father the Qan, which were at Telegetü Outlet, when both Qudu and Čila’un, sons of Toyto’a of [90r] the Merkid were with thee, with all their people and households, in that battle, joining themselves unto their father, entering Baryujin [Hollow], revolting, they removed from thee. Then as thou, my father the Qan, art come, saying, ‘I have been spoiled as to people and households by Köge’ü Sabray of the Naiman. Come [thou], my son, giving [80v] thy “four küli’üd,”’ not thinking like thee, then, when, ordering [them], I sent my soldiers with these my ‘four küli’üd,’ Bo’orçu, Muqali, Boroyul, and Čila’un Ba’atur, before these my ‘four küli’üd,’ [arrived], Senggüm being at the point to array himself [in battle] at Hula’an Qud, the thigh of his horse being shot [by an arrow], [31r] at the moment when he was at the point to be taken, these my ‘four küli’üd’ arrived and, having saved Senggüm, as they saved for him all the wives and sons together with people and households, then, my qan father, when [thou] didst speak, believing [me], thou didst say, ‘My people and households which were wholly departed have been given [back] by Temüjin, my son, his “four küli’üd” coming and saving [them].’ [31v] Now, my father the Qan, thou hast grieved in [respect of] what grievance of me? Send [thou] messengers in [respect of] the manner of [thy] grievance. When thou sendest [them], send both Qu’[bari] Quri and Idürgen. If [thou] send not both, send [thou] the second.”

§178 [33v] At these words, when Ong Qan spake, saying, “Ai! Soyūs!” Shall I separate myself from my son? [That is what I have done, but in so doing] I have separated myself from the principle. Shall I stand aloof [from him]? [That is what I have done, but in so doing] I have stood aloof from [mine] obligations,” [his] heart having been troubled, when he spake, swearing, saying, “Now, seeing my son, if [I] think evil, [34r] like this [I] shall be shed as to my blood,” pricking the tip of his little finger with an

**These words, not glossed, seem to constitute an exclamation.
arrows-whittling knife, suffering the blood to flow, putting [it] in a
little bucket of birch bark, he sent [them back], saying, “Give
[this] unto my son.”

§179 [34v] Again, when Činggis Qahan spake, saying, “Speak
[this] unto Anda Jamuya,” he sent, saying, “Not being able
to see [me],” thou hast made [me] to separate myself from my
father the Qan. The one of us which rose up first was wont to
drink [from] the blue goblet of the father the Qan. 41 When by me,
only rising up first, it was drunk, thou wast jealous. Now, empty
[ye] the blue goblet of the father the Qan. How much more will
ye consume?” 42 Again, when Činggis Qahan spake, saying,
“Speak [this] unto Altan and Qučar,” he sent, saying, “Ye twain,
for sake of me, have ye said, ‘We shall cast [him] away openly
[breaking from him]’ or have ye said, ‘We shall cast [him] away
after a covenant’? When, saying that [thou] art the son of Nekiu
Taisi, we said, ‘Qučar, from among us 43 become thou qan,’ thou
wast not willing. When we said, ‘Qutula Qan was governing [our
people]. Inasmuch as thy father was governing [our people], thou,
Altan, become thou qan,’ thou also wast not willing. Saying,
‘From a generation above [ye are] sons of Bartan Ba’atur,’ 44
saying, ‘Both Sača and Taiču, become [36r] ye qad,’ I was not
able [to convince them]. Saying unto you, ‘Become [ye] qad,’ I
was not able [to convince you] and, it being said by you [unto me],

41 I. e. “not being able to tolerate me.”
42 It would appear from this that Činggis Qahan, Jamuya, and Ong Qan had once
lived together and that the first to get up in the morning drank from the blue goblet
of Ong Qan.
43 I. e. “Not much more.” By this veiled threat Činggis Qahan implies that Jamuya
will not have much longer in which to drink, because he will attack Ong Qan and
Činggis Qahan.
44 I. e., “me, Činggis Qahan, and you, Altan and Qučar, to whom I am speaking.”
45 This statement is clearly contradicted by that in §40 and that in §132 above. (See
Chapter I, note 31, and Chapter III, note 83.) It is also contradicted by Rašīd al-Din.
Cf. PHILIP and HAMMAN, op. cit., pp. 66-68, n. 28. Sača and Taiču were not the sons
of Bartan Ba’atur, but the sons of Qutula (—Sorgatu) Yurki (—Yurki), the son of
Ükin Baqqu, eldest son of Qubul Qan and elder brother of Bartan Ba’atur, the second
son of Qubul Qan. Hence, the descendants of Ükin Baqqu were the senior branch and,
by birthright, took precedence of the descendants of Bartan Ba’atur, which, in this
instance, were Činggis Qahan and Qučar, both grandsons of Bartan Ba’atur. Altan,
'Become thou qan,' I have been governing [our people]. If ye had become qad and if [I] had been made to ride against the many enemies as a scout, if [I] had been protected by Heaven, at the moment when [I] would have been spoiling the enemy,

Maidens comely of cheek,
Ladies and [36v] wives,
And geldings good of rump

I would have fetched and given [unto you].

If I had been made beforehand to compass
In [respect of] the wild beasts,
[As to] the wild beasts of the cliffs,
In such wise that the upper parts of their legs might
become united together

I would have pressed [them] for [you].

[As to] the wild beasts of the escarpments,
In such wise that their thighs might become united together

I would have pressed [them] for [you].

[As to] the wild beasts of the steppes,

too, as son of Qutula Qan, fourth son of Qabal, belonged to a junior branch. (See the genealogies in §§48-51.)

In a communication dated 6 September 1932 the Reverend Antoine Montemmer remarked:

"In §179 we have to deal with an altered text. This alteration must have occurred rather early, since it was already present in the manuscript used by the authors of the continuous version, which was different from that of which the transcribers who put the Mongolian text into Chinese characters made use. The author of the Secret History cannot have worded his text in the manner in which we read it at present. He knew very well that Saça and Taích were the sons, not of Bartan Ba'atur, second son of Qabal Qan, but of Qutuču (or Sorqatu) Yūrki, who was son of Ökin Bærqeq, eldest son of Qabal Qan. He had, in effect, written it in §49 and in §132. The original text must then have been as follows: D'ere-et Qutuču (or Sorqatu) Yūrki-yin ko'ın ke'ja, Saça Taeń qoşar-i ta qad bulaqun ke'ja yudaba je bi. I translate this restored text in the following manner: "Saying, "Among those [who, by birthright, are] above [us], they are the sons of Qutuču (or Sorqatu) Yūrki," saying to Saça and Beki, both: "Become ye qad," I was not able (to convince them)."
In such wise that their bellies might become united together [37r]

I would have pressed [them] for [you]." Now excellently be [ye] a companion for my father the Qan. I am afraid that ye are said to be negligent. Make ye not one to say, 'It was but the support of the ča'ad quri [which made them great men].'" Suffer ye not to be pitched by any one at the head of the Three Rivers."

§180 [38r] Again, when Činggis Qahan spake, saying, "Speak unto Younger Brother To'oril," [he said,] "The reason for which [I] say 'Younger Brother'—Oyda of both Tumbainai and Čaraqai Lingqu came in captivity as a slave. The son of the slave Oyda was the slave [38v] Sübegei. The son of the slave Sübegei was Kököčür Kirsa'an. The son of Kököčür Kirsa'an was Yegei Qongtayar." The son of Yegei Qongtayar [is] thou, To'oril. Of whom sayest thou continually in flattering that thou wilt give the peoples [unto Ong Qan]? Both Altan and Qurçar will not [39r] suffer my people to be governed by any one—the reason for which [I] say that thou [art] 'Younger Brother' [is that thou art]

The slave of the threshold
Of my great great grandfather;

The private slave of the door
Of my great grandfather."

Such [is the manner in which] I send, saying [this]."

§181 [39v] Again, when Činggis Qahan spake, saying, "Speak unto Anda Senggüm," having said, "I am a son which was born with raiment." Thou art a son which wast born naked. The father the Qan was wont to raise us both up [40r] equally. From the fact that thou [wast afraid that thou] mightest be supplanted

"See §128 above.

"I. e., "They were nothing by themselves without the support of the ča'ad quri, i.e., Činggis Qahan."

"I. e., the Keliren, the Tula, and the Onon which issue from Mount Bargaa Qaldum.

"Yegei Qongtayar—Yegei Qongdaqor in §180 above.

"See §137 above and §211 below.

"I already had something on my body when I became the adopted son of Ong Qan.
[by me], Anda Senggüm, envying me, thou dravest [me] away. Now, not making the heart of our father the Qan to sorrow, evening and morning, going in and going out, go [thou], consoling [him]. Not putting away thine old thoughts [of jealousy], making [it] to sorrow, distract not the heart of our father the Qan, [40v] whilst the father the Qan is [yet] alive, saying, ‘[I] shall become qan,’” he sent, saying, “Anda Senggüm, send [thou] envos unto me. When they come, send [thou] the companions of both Bilge Beki and Tödö’en.” Saying, “When the messengers come unto me, father the Qan, send two messengers. Anda [41v] Senggüm, send [thou] also two messengers. Anda Jamuya, send [thou] also two messengers. Altan, send [thou] also two messengers. Quçar, send [thou] also two messengers. Ačyū Şirun, send [thou] also two messengers. Qaçɨ’un send [thou] also two messengers,” he sent, thus making these words to be carried as [41v] a message by both Arqai Qasar and Sügegi Je’ün. These words being thus spoken [unto him], when Senggüm, spake, he said, “When was he wont to say ‘father the Qan’? Was he not wont to say ‘old man killer’? When was he wont to call me anda? Was he not wont [42r] to say, ‘The sorcerer Toyto’a walketh, having joined [unto himself] the tail of a Sartayčin sheep.’”? The devices of these words have been perceived. They are the first words of fighting. Both Bilge Beki and Tödö’en, raise [ye] the standard proclaiming battle. Make [ye] one to fatten the geldings. There is no doubt.”  

§182 [43v] And so Činggis Qahan, being departed, pitched at Lake Baljuna. At the moment when he was pitching there, the forulas of Čo’os Cahan encountered [him] even there. Those

---

22 This must be an old saying containing an allusion which was perfectly clear at the time. The Sartayčin sheep has an enormous tail which, sometimes, is so big that it is placed in a small cart. The shaman with a big sheep tail attached to his posterior would not be at ease. It is possible that this means that Senggüm wishes to do something which he cannot do, because it is beyond his capacity.

23 I.e., “There is no reason to hesitate.”
Forulas, not fighting, [44r] came to submit themselves. When,
from Alā Quš Digü Quri of the Önggüd, Asan, a Sartay, having
a white camel, driving a thousand wethers, drew nigh down along
the Ergün River for to buy sables and squirrels, at the moment
when he was entering to water [his wethers at] Baljuna, he en-
countered [Chinggis Qahan].

§183 [44v] At the moment when Chinggis Qahan was watering [his
beasts at] the same Baljuna, Qasar, casting away unto [45r]
Ong Qan his wife and his three sons, Yegü, Yesüngge, and Tuqu,
went out with his companions, few [in number and with nothing
other than their] bodies. Saying, "[I shall seek] mine elder brother,"
seeking Chinggis Qahan, climbing up the ridges of [Mount] Qara'un
Jidun, not being able to find [him], being in a strait, being gone,
eating raw skin and sinews, he joined unto Chinggis Qahan at Bal-
juna. Having suffered Qasar to come, rejoicing, Chinggis Qahan,
taking counsel, saying, "I shall send messengers unto [45v] Ong
Qan," when he sent, speaking by [means of] both Qali'udar of the
Je'üri'ed and Çaqurqan of the Uriangqai, when he spake, saying,
"Speak [ye] unto the father the Qan, saying, 'These are] words of
Qasar,'" &" [he said,] "Speak [ye], saying 'Qasar] hath sent [us]
saying,

"Beholding mine elder brother,
I lost sight of him.
Tracking [him],
I could not find his way.
When I shouted, [46r]
My voice was not heard."44

Beholding the stars,
Being one having a pillow of earth,"45

I lie down. My wife and sons are at [the side of] the father the
Qan. If I obtain confidence and expectation, I shall go unto the

44 I.e., "Pretend to be envoys of Qasar."
45 For the word urbang, not glossed, is not elsewhere attested. My tentative translation
of it is based on that of the continuous translation (YCP 6.47v:2) where it appears
as rendered by the word دمّ (2'aw) "earth."

father the Qan.”’ ” When he spake again, saying, “We shall remove, straightforward after you, and shall meet by appointment at Arqal Geügi [46v] of the Kelüren [River]. Come [ye] there,” he appointed a place of meeting. And so having sent both Qali’udar and Çaqrqan, he sent [before] as spies both Jürèdei and Arqai [Qasar], and from Lake Baljuna Činggis Qahan, straightforward, arising together with [his army], going out, [47r] by having set forth, arrived at Arqal Geügi of the Kelüren [River].

§184 [48r] Both Qali’udar and Çaqrqan, coming unto Ong Qan, saying, “[These are] words of Qasar,” spake [unto him] the words which from hence Činggis Qahan had sent, saying. Ong Qan, having pitched the golden tent, was feasting unawares. When, at the word of both Qali’udar and Çaqrqan, Ong Qan spake, saying, “If it be so, let Qasar come,” he sent [him] with [them],” saying, “I shall send [48v] Itürügen in which [Qasar] may have confidence. And so being come, with the arrival at the appointed place of meeting, at Arqal Geügi, seeing that the appearance [was] great,” the envoy Itürügen fled back. The horse of Qali’udar was swift. Qali’udar overtook [him], [but] the heart to seize [him] failing [him], at the moment when he was [49r] cutting off [the way] before and behind him, the horse of Çaqrqan was slow. At the extremity unto which an arrow arriveth from the rearward,” he shot so that [the arrow] lodged [at] the end of the rump of the black gelding of Itürügen, with the golden saddle. Then both Qali’udar and Çaqrqan seized Itürügen and brought [him] unto Činggis Qahan. Činggis Qahan, not talking unto [49v] Itürügen, said, “Go [ye], taking [him] unto Qasar! Let Qasar decide [how he shall deal with him]!” When they went, taking [him], Qasar, not talking unto Itürügen, even there cut [him] down and cast [him] away.

§185 [50r] When both Qali’udar and Çaqrqan spake unto Činggis Qahan, they said, [50v] “Ong Qan is unaware. Having pitched his golden tent, he feasteth. . . .?” in haste, making [the men]

"I.e., with Qali’udar and Çaqrqan.
"I.e., that there was a big camp with numerous tents, etc.
"I.e., “at an arrow’s shot from the rear.”
"The word ış tügüşi, a *converbase imperfect* in -ışu of a verb ışügü-“, not glossed, is not elsewhere attested.
to march through the night, let us surprise and compass [him].” [Chinggis Qahan], approving this word, making both Jurđādi and Arqai to be spies, having marched through the night, arriving, compassed [Ong Qan], at the moment when he was at the outlet of the Jer Qabči yap of Jeje'er Heights. When it was fought [51v] three nights and three days, when they stood, compassing [the men of Ong Qan], the third day, being in a strait, the same submitted themselves. It was not known in what manner both Ong Qan and Senggüm were gone out at night. This one which had fought [so long] was Qaday Ba'atur of the Jirgin. When Qaday Ba'atur, submitting himself, coming, spake, he said, “When we had fought three nights and [51v] three days, saying, ‘How shall [I] suffer [one], seizing my proper qan, before mine eyes, to kill [him]?;’ not being able to forsake [him], I fought, prolonging the strife, saying, ‘Let him flee away, saving his life.’ Now, if I be made to die, I shall die. If I be favoured by Chinggis Qahan, I shall give [my] might [unto him].” When Chinggis Qahan, [52r] approving the word of Qaday Ba'atur, made a decree, having said, “Is that not a man which fighteth, saying, ‘As [I] am not able to forsake my proper qan, let him flee away, saving his life?’ He is a person which may be regarded as a companion,” favouring [him], not making him to die, he was pleased to make a decree, saying, “Because of the life of Quyildar, [52v] let Qaday Ba'atur and the hundred Jirgin give [their] might unto the wife and sons of Quyildar. If boys be born, let them follow and give [their] might unto the seed of the seed of Quyildar. If girls be born, let their parents not betroth [them] according to their own wishes. Let them serve before and behind the wife and son of Quyildar.” Because Quyildar Sečen had beforetime opened [his] mouth [before Jurđādi], when Chinggis Qahan was pleased to make a decree, he made a decree, saying, “Unto the seed of the seed of Quyildar, because of the service of Quyildar, let one receive the ‘grant of orphans.’” 44

44 I. e., the men of Ong Qan.
45 I. e., “I shall devote myself to him.”
46 I. e., “devote themselves.”
47 I. e., “devote themselves.”
48 See §171 above and §217 below.
CHAPTER VII

§186 [1r] Then bringing down the Kereyid people and severally parting [them], he let one spoil [them]. Because of the service of the Suldud Tayai Ba'atur, he gave [unto him] one hundred Jirgin. Again, when Činggis Qahan made a decree, [. . .].¹ [1v] [As to] Jaqa Gambu, the younger brother of Ong Qan, there were two daughters. When Činggis Qahan himself took Ibaqa Beki, the elder of them, he gave Sorqaytani Beki, the younger, unto Tolui. By that reason, saying that Jaqa Gambu and the private slaves and people subject unto him wholly should be [2r] a second shaft [for himself], favouring [him], he did not suffer [one] to spoil [him].

§187 [2v] Again, when Çinggis Qahan made a decree, he made a decree, saying, "Because of the service of both Badai and Kišili, [I give unto them] the golden tent of Ong Qan such as it sitteth [there], together with the golden flagons, and the people which took care of bowls and basins. Let the Ongqojid Kereyid become their guards. [With my] suffering [you] to carry quivers and suffering [you] to drink the ötöl, rejoice [ye] as freemen unto [3r] the seed of the seed.

When [we] haste unto many enemies, when [ye] get spoil, as much as [ye] shall have gotten, take [ye it].²

When [we] kill wild beasts, as many as [ye] shall have killed, take [ye them].³"

Again, when Çinggis Qahan made a decree, he made a decree, saying, "Because both Badai and Kišili [3v] made service to come

¹ There seems to be a lacuna, because what follows is not the text of the decree. This passage is not found in the Altan tobi (novus). The words base Çinggis qahan jariy baturun are not rendered in the continuous Chinese translation (YCPS 7.2v4).
² The meaning is "such as it is with all its appurtenances."
³ See Chapter V, note 27, for the word ötöl.
⁴ See §219 below.
between [my] life [and death], being protected by Everlasting Heaven, bringing down the Kereyid people, [I] have attained unto the throne of height. Long [here]after, [as] to the seed of the seed, let one, sitting on my throne, successively perceive those 8 who have done service [for me] like this." Spoiling the Kereyid [4r] people, they distributed [them] unto one another so that they were not wanting unto even anyone. Distributing the Tümen Tübe’en unto one another, they together took [them] until [the quantity] was enough [for each one]. They suffered one to plunder the many Donggayid, not suffering [it] to attain unto a whole day. 4 They clave and parted the Jirgin ba’atud which had taken the bloody clothing, [but] 4v were not able to bring [them] for every one. 7 So destroying the Kereyid people, that winter he 8 wintered at Abji’a Ködeger.

§188 [5r] Both Ong Qan and Senggüm, with [nothing other than] their bodies, revolting 9 and going out, being departed, [5v] as Ong Qan, thirsting, began to enter into the Nekün Usun 10 of Didig Saqaal, he fell into [the hands of] Qori Sübeçi, a watchman of the Naiman. Qori Sübeçi seized Ong Qan. When he said, "I am Ong Qan," not recognizing [him], he believed [him] not and then killed [him]. Senggüm, not entering into the Nekün Usun of Didig Saqaal, betaking himself outside, entering into the Çöl, 11 when he sought water, Senggüm, lighting off [his horse], espied wild horses which, being bitten by gadflies, [6r] were standing [there].—The companion of Senggüm, the keeper of geldings, Kököçi, had his wife [with him]. With Senggüm they were three together.—He made his horse to be held by his keeper of geldings, Kököçi. The keeper of geldings, Kököçi, having led his gelding [by the tether], trotted back [home]. When his wife spake, saying,

8 I.e. "Badal and Kiäliy."
9 I.e., so quickly that it did not take a whole day in which to finish it.
10 I.e. Jirgin is an error for Jürkün.
11 I.e., Çługha Qahan.
12 I.e., not wishing to submit themselves unto Çługha Qahan.
13 I.e., the "Nekün Water (= River)."
14 I.e., "Desert" (In Turkish and Mongolian).
"At the moment when [thou] wast wearing [raiment] having gold,
At the moment when [thou] wast eating [6v] [meats] having savour,
he was wont to say, 'My Kököčü.' How art thou going, so forsaking and abandoning Senggüm, thy qan?,' his wife, halting, stayed behind. When Kököčü spake, he said, "Thou art saying [unto thyself], 'I shall take Senggüm as husband.'" At that word, when his wife spake, she said, "I am said [by thee to deserve the saying]: 'A wife hath a dog [7r] face.'" Give [unto him] at least his golden cup. Let him at least draw and drink water." Then, the keeper of geldings, Kököčü, having cast behind [him] his golden cup, saying, "Take [it]!" trotted [away]. And so being come, the keeper of geldings, Kököčü, coming unto Činggis Qahan, saying, "I am come, [7v] so abandoning Senggüm in the Çül," then, when he had wholly spoken for [Činggis Qahan] his words which he had spoken [with his wife]—all [of them]—when Činggis Qahan made a decree, favouring his wife, saying, "The same keeper of geldings, Kököčü, is come thus forsaking his proper qan. Such a man now by whom, [8r] if he become a companion, will be trusted?" cut [him] down and abandoned [him].

§180 [9r] When Gürbesü, mother of Tayang Qan of the Naiman, spake, saying, "Ong Qan was an aged, great qan of old. Fetch [ye] his head. If it truly be [his], we shall sacrifice [unto it]," sending a messenger unto Qori Sübeçi, making [him], after that he had [it] cut off, to fetch his head, recognizing [it], placing [it] on a white toloş,15 [9v] making the daughters in law to perform the rites of a daughter in law, making [one] to present the otog, making [one] to play the qur'a,16 holding a bowl, sacrificed unto [it]. Then when the head was being so sacrificed unto, it laughed. Saying, "It hath laughed," Tayang Qan trampled [it] in pieces.

18 I.e., Senggüm.
30 I.e., Senggüm.
16 This word is glossed: "big felt carpet."
18 A stringed instrument.
Then Köösü Sabray spake. The head of the dead qan, [first] ye, indeed, cut off and fetch. Next ye, indeed, [10v] break [it] in pieces. How is it fit? The barking sound of our dogs is become bad.” Inancı Bilge Qan spake [beforetime]. He said, “[My] wife [is] young. I, [her] husband, am waxed old. We begot this Tayang by [our] elbesū. Ayi! Can my tortuy born son take care of and [10v] hold my törülmüşi, many, lowly, bad people? Now, [as to] the sound of the dogs, they bark a bark which signifieth [that evil] is near. The ordinances of Gürbesü, our Qadun, are become severe. Tortuy Tayang, my Qan, thou art weak. [Thou art] without thought and ability other than [those of] both falconing and hunting.” Then when Tayang Qan spake, he said, “It is said that there are very few Mongyol [in] [11r] this east. Those people by their quivers made the aged, great Ong Qan of old to be afraid, made [him] to revolt, and made [him] to die. Now are those, the same, [not] saying, ‘[We] shall be qan’?, saying, ‘Let there be on the Heaven luminous luminaries, both the sun and the moon.’ [We acknowledge it. It is true that] there are [11v] both the sun and the moon. [But] on the earth how can there be two qad? Let us go and bring those Mongyol.” At that, when his mother Gürbesü spake, she said, “What wilt thou do with those? The Mongyol people are ones whose scent is bad and whose clothing is dark. Let them be far apart. Perhaps, making [one] to bring their elegant [12r] daughters in law and daughters and making them to wash their hands, we

---

35 That is, the sound is such that it foretells misfortune.

36 The word elbesū-er (“by [our] elbesū”) is not glossed, but from the continuous translation (YCPS 7.19v5): “我是神聖受嘉的 ["(He) is one who was born through our prayers to the divinity "] , it would appear to be an instrumental in -"er of a word elbesū("n) "prayer." See also elbesūn in §174 above.

37 The word tortuy is not glossed. Cf., however, the Ordos “forok nom d’une plante qui croît dans les sahar (Hedysarum fructicosum L, d’après Psénis) | . . .” Antoine Moresq, Dictionnaire ordos. Tome deuxième (J-Z), p. 671a.

38 The word törülmüşi [= törülmüş] is not glossed. It is Turkish. In a letter dated 19 August 1934, Professor Nicholas Porrë stated: “As for törülmüş, this should be considered as a verbal noun in -müli from törü-, a deverbal (passive) verb in - from töri- 'to bear, to be born.’”

39 The word öskeød is not glossed, but it obviously is the plural in -ö of the word öskeam which is found in §190 (YCPS 7.18v6) and §193 (YCPS 7.24v5).

40 L.e., “by the sound of arrows rattling in the quivers.” See also Chapter III, note 7.
might, perhaps, make [them] to milk our cows and sheep." At that, when Tayang Qan spake, he said, "If it be so, they are ones having what?" Let us go unto those Mongol and, perhaps, bring their quivers."

§190 [13v] At these words, when Kögsü Sabray spake, he said, "Ayi! Ye speak great words! Ayi! Torluy "Qan, are they fit? Lay [ye them] up." Having been warned by Kögsü Sabray, when [Tayang Qan] sent the messenger named Torbi Taši, speaking unto Ala Quš Digid Quri of the Öngüüd, he sent, saying, [14r] "It is said that there are very few Mongol [in] this east. Be thou [my] right hand. I shall join with [thee] from hence and we shall take the quivers of those few Mongol." At that word, when Ala Quš Digid Quri spake in answer, having sent, saying, "I cannot be [thy] right hand," when Ala Quš Digid Quri sent, speaking unto [14v] Činggis Qahan by his messenger named Yoquan, he sent, saying, "Tayang Qan of the Naiman cometh for to take thy quiver. He is come, saying that I should become [his] right hand. I am not [so] become. Now I have sent, making [one] to forewarn [this] unto thee. I am afraid that they will come and that thou wilt suffer thy quiver to be taken from thee." Even then, at the moment when Činggis Qahan [15r] was hunting at Teme'en Steppe and was compassing Tülin Če'üf, the messenger Yoquan which Ala Quš Digid had sent, came, bringing this message. At this message, as [the Mongol], on the hunt, then, [15v] said unto one another, "How shall we do?" when many people spake, they said unto one another, "Our geldings are lean. Now what shall we do?" At that, when Odçigin Noyan spake, he said, "How can it be regarded [by us] as pretense, saying, 'The geldings [are] lean?' My geldings are fat. Hearing such words, how can [we] continue to sit?" Again, when Belgütei Noyan spake, he said, "If, when one is [yet] alive, he suffer his quiver to be taken by a 'companion,' what [16r] advantage is it to have lived? For a man that was born, when he dieth, if he also lie with his quiver and [his] bow in one

**In a letter dated 31 August 1954 the Reverend Antoine Mereb interpreted these words to mean "'ones having what [in special which can render difficult their conquest?]'"]

**See note 19 above.**

**I.e., "enemy."**
[and the same place] with [his] bones, is it not good? The Naiman people, saying that [it is] one of which the empire is great and one of which the people are many, is speaking great words. If we, relying on these their great words, setting forth and going [to find them], take their quivers [from them] [16v], would it be [so] difficult? If we go [to find them], would their many herds, halting [to rest], perhaps, not remain behind? Would their ordo tents, becoming empty, perhaps, not remain behind? Would their many people, perhaps, not go out to escape to high places? How can we continue to sit, suffering the same to speak these such big words? Let us, then, set forth!" [17r]

§191 [18r] Approving this word of Belgütei Noyan, Činggis Qahan, being come in from hunting, removing from Abjiya Köteger, pitching at Keltegei Qada of [Mount] Or Nu’u of the Qalqa [River], numbering his number, then dividing [the army] into thousands so as to form thousands, he then appointed the captains of thousands, the captains of hundreds, and the captains of tens. He then also [18v] appointed the stewards. He then appointed these six stewards: Dodai Čerbi, Dooqolqu Čerbi, Ügele Čerbi, Tolun Čerbi, Bučaran Čerbi, and Söyiketü Čerbi. Making an end of dividing [the army] into thousands so as to form thousands, dividing [it] into hundreds so as to form hundreds, and dividing [it] into tens, so as to form tens, when he then [19r] chose and enrolled as guards eighty nightguards and seventy dayguards, when he enrolled the sons and the younger brethren of the captains of thousands and of hundreds and the sons and the younger brethren of only simple people, he chose and enrolled those which had ability and whose body and appearance were good. Then, favouring Arqai Qasar, he made a decree, saying, "Let him choose batutq and make [of them a hand of] a thousand. On days of battle, [19v] let them join battle, standing in front of me. On the many days, let

28 I. e., "taking advantage of."
27 The word čerejü, the converbum imperfecti in -jü of a verb čäre-, not glossed, is not elsewhere attested. From the continuous translation, however, which has ตนเอง (kung-te) ("empty") (ICPS 6.17v+4), it would appear to mean "becoming empty." 
26 I. e., "Steward" Dodai, "Steward" Dooqolqu, etc.
25 I. e., "ordinary."
them be my guards [which are] dayguards.” He said, “Let Ögele Čerbi command the seventy dayguards. Take [ye] counsel with Qudus Qalčan.”

§192 [30r] Again, when Činggis Qahan made a decree, he made a decree, saying, “Let the quiverbearers, [30v] the guards [which are] dayguards, the cooks, the keepers of doors, and the keepers of geldings take [their] turn [in] the day[time] and, before that the sun setteth, retire for the nightguards and, going out to their geldings, pass the night. Let the nightguards, at night, make to lie [those of] their [men] that shall lie round about the tent and make to stand in turn [those of] their [men] that shall stand at the door. Let the quiverbearers and the dayguards, [21r] the next day, when We take broth, tell unto the nightguards [that they are come] and [then] let the quiverbearers, the dayguards, the cooks, and the keepers of doors go each unto his [daily] task. Let them sit upon their seats. Let them,‡ completing their days of turn of three nights and three days and passing the three nights in the very same manner, [31v] changing [places with those who relieve them], be nightguards the night [which followeth their being relieved]. Let them pass the night lying round about.” And so, making an end of dividing [the army] into thousands so as to form thousands, appointing stewards, enrolling eighty nightguards and seventy guards [which are] dayguards, choosing ba‘atud for Qasar, when, from Keltegei Qada of [Mount] Or Nu‘u of the Qalqa [River], he set forth [22r] against the Naiman people,

§193 the sixteenth [32v] day of the first moon of summer, on the “red circle” [day],‡‡ the year of the rat [1204], when [Činggis Qahan], having sprinkled the standard,‡‡ set forth, being gone up along the Kelüren [River], making Jebe and Qubilai to be spies, when he reached the Sa‘ari Steppe, at the head of [Mount] Qangqurqan, the watchmen of the Naiman were there. [The Naiman watchmen] pursuing unto our watchmen, one from our watchmen

‡ I. e., “my guards (koşqetu).”
‡‡ See Chapter II, note 29.
—one which had a white horse and a rather bad saddle—was taken by the watchmen of the Naiman. When the watchmen [23r] of the Naiman, taking that horse, spake unto one another, they said unto one another, “The geldings of the Mongol are lean.” When ours, reaching the Sa’ari Steppe and halting there, said unto one another, “How shall we do?,” then, when Dodai Čerbi gave advice unto Činggis Qahan, when he gave advice, saying, “We are, indeed, few [in number]. [Over and] above [the fact that we are] few [in number] we are come, [23v] being exhausted. Thus, indeed, halting, until our geldings be satiated, pitching, spreading ourselves in this Sa’ari Steppe, every person [be he] but alive lighting fires at [the rate of] five places a man, [we] shall terrify [them] by the fire. The Naiman people are said [to be] many. Their qan is called a weakening which is not [yet] come out from in his tent. [24r] While we confuse [them] by fire, our geldings, also will become satiated. Making our geldings to become satiated, having pursued the watchmen of the Naiman, if, following hard upon [them], making [them] to unite themselves at their middle, we join battle in that confusion, will it [not] do?,” when, approving this word, Činggis Qahan made a decree, he proclaimed an ordinance unto the soldiers, saying, “So, then, make [ye one] to light [24v] fires.” And so, pitching, spreading themselves in the Sa’ari Steppe, one made [every] man [were he] but alive to light fires at five places. At night the watchmen of the Naiman, from the head of [Mount] Qangqarqan, at night seeing the many fires, having sent unto Tayang Qan, [25r] saying, “Was one not saying that the Mongol [are] very few [in number]? They have fires [which are] more than the stars,” “giving [unto him] the little white horse which had the rather bad saddle, they sent, saying, “The soldiers of the Mongol have pitched until the Sa’ari Steppe is covered. Are they not increasing on [each] day? They have fires [which are] more than the stars.”

*Cf., e.g., Deuteronomy I §10: “The Lord your God hath multiplied you, and, behold, ye are this day as the stars of heaven for multitude”; and XXVIII §9: “And ye shall be left few in number, whereas ye were as the stars of heaven for multitude; . . . .” Cf. also Nahum III §16: “Thou hast multiplied thy merchants above the stars of heaven: . . . .”*
§194 [26r] Receiving this message of the watchmen, Tayang Qan was at the Qatir Usun \(^{22}\) of the Qangyai. Having suffered [one] to bring this message, when he sent, telling [it] unto his son Gülülg Qan, he sent, saying, “The geldings of the Mongyl [26v] are lean. One saith, ‘They have fires [which are] more than the stars.’ [Hence] the Mongyl are many. Now,

If we join [battle] in earnest,  
Will it [not] be difficult to separate ourselves [from them]?  
If [we] join [battle] in earnest,  
[They] will not wink [with] their black eyes—those.

If we join [battle] [27r]  
With the hard Mongyl  
Which draw not back,  
[Even] if they are pierced  
In the cheek;  
[Even] if the black blood  
Issue,  
Will it do?

The geldings of the Mongyl are said [to be] lean. We, making our people to pass over the Altai and rolling [them] back, removing, reforming our army, marching, enticing them, \(^{25}\) [marching, fighting dogfights,\(^{25}\) until we arrive [at] the foot of the Altai—our geldings are fat—making the bellies to be pulled up \(^{26}\) and waiting until [27v] the geldings of the Mongyl be exhausted, we shall pour out [our army] at their faces.” \(^{28}\) At that word, when Gülülg Qan spake, saying, “The woman Tayang of alway! When [his] heart hath failed [him], he hath spoken these words. The many of the Mongyl [of whom ye speak] would be come from whence?

\(^{22}\) I.e., “Qatir Water (= River).”

\(^{25}\) I.e., the Mongyl.

\(^{26}\) I.e., “skirmishes.”

\(^{25}\) “This expression means ‘to do so that the belly diminishes in volume.’ The horses fattened in pasture cannot furnish violent and prolonged efforts without being spoiled. It is why the Mongols, during a certain number of days, let them graze only a very short time, until, rid of superfluous fat, they are in good form.” Antoine Monastery, op. cit., p. [113].

\(^{26}\) I.e., “we shall deploy before them.”
The more part of the Mongyol are with Jamu-ya here in [the hands of] us. When the heart of the woman Tayang

Which is not yet gone out to the place where a woman [28v] heavy [with child] pisseth; 40
Which is not yet arrived at the pasture of the calf of the wheel 41

failed [him], came he not, speaking these words?," he sent, speaking by a messenger till his father was pained, till he was injured. At this word, Tayang Qan being mentioned [by his son] in such a manner that he himself [28v] was compared unto a woman, when Tayang Qan spake, he said, "Let the mighty, courageous Güçülgü, the day when [the enemy and we] shall encounter one another and [when the enemy and we] shall kill one another, not put away, perhaps, this his courage. When, in earnest, [the enemy and we] shall have encountered one another and shall have joined [battle], to separate ourselves [from them] will, perhaps, be difficult." At that word, when [29r] Qori Sübeci, the great chief which governed under Tayang Qan, spake, having said, "Thy father Ilanü Bilge Qan shewed not the back of man or the rump of gelding unto a companion 42 [which was] equal. 43 Now, thou, it having [yet] been the morning early,\" how faileth [thee] thy heart, thou? If we had known that [thy] heart would thus fail thee, even though she be but a woman, would we, bringing Gürbesü, [29v] thy mother, not have made [her] to set the army in order? Čima! Alas! Why by Köge'tü Sabrâu [must we be made] to suffer [the effect of his] waxing old? The ordinances of our army are become lax. It is the time and the destiny of the Mongyol. It is not be-

40 I. e., "who has not yet gone so far from the tent as a pregnant woman who, because of her pregnancy, does not go any farther from the tent to urinate than is absolutely necessary."
41 I. e., "who has not gone so far from the tent as the calf which, during the day, is tied to the wheel of a cart in the vicinity of the tent in order to prevent it from following its mother and sucking her milk, because a cow which has a calf is milked every day."
42 I. e., enemy.
43 I. e., "He never took flight." In other words, he was not a coward before his peers.
44 I. e., "Whereas it is still long before the battle will be joined."
come [favourable for us]. Agü Turlüy "*Tayang, thou art but as if [thou] art not able," [30r] having struck his quiver,"* he trottled elsewhere.

§195 [31r] At that, when Tayang Qan, being wroth, spake, saying, "A life which dieth and a body which suffereth are one [and the same] for all. If it be so, let us fight," removing from the Qaqir Usun, being gone down along the Tamir [River], passing over the OÒqon, passing by the eastern skirf of [31v] Naqu Qan, at the moment when, arriving, he was drawing nigh [unto] Čakirma'ud, the watchmen of Činggis Qahan seeing [him], as they brought a message, saying, "The Naiman, arriving, draw nigh," having suffered [them] to bring this message, when Činggis Qahan made a decree, [32r] having said, "[The issue] will be adversities [either which are] more than many or [which are] fewer than few,"* setting forth against them, having driven away their watchmen, when he set the army in order, he said, "Marching the 'qarayana' march, arraying ourselves in the 'lake' array, let us fight the 'chisel' fight."* Having so said, Činggis Qahan, going himself as a spy, made Qasar to set the middle in order. He made Odçigin Noyan to set [32v] the led horses in order. The Naiman, withdrawing themselves from Čakirma'ud, stood along the front of Naqu Qan and the skirt of the mountains. And so, our watchmen having driven before [them] the watchmen of the Naiman, having driven [them] before [them] so that they united themselves at their great middle [at] the front of Naqu Qan, arrived. [33r] Tayang Qan seeing that they were thus driving

*For this word, elsewhere transcribed *turiy*, see note 19 above.
*i.e., in disgust.
*i.e., "A mortal life and a possible body."
*This seems to mean, "It is all or nothing." i.e., "We shall risk all."
*This is the only passage in *The Secret History* in which these three types of tactics are specifically mentioned by name: (1) "To march the 'qarayana' march," means to march with the troops massed in close order in the manner of the *qarayana*, a thorny shrub which grows in thick clumps on the steppe. (2) "To array oneself in the 'lake' array" means to deploy with the troops widely scattered in the manner of the water of a lake which spreads over a large area. (3) "To fight the 'chisel' fight" means to engage the enemy with a thrust at his center in the manner of a chisel which is thrust into a piece of wood.
[his watchmen] before [them] and were arriving, [as to] Jamuya, then, with the Naiman, [his] army setting forth, being come with [them], being there, Tayang Qan asked of Jamuya. He asked, saying, “Those [are] what? [Even] as the wolves pursue the many sheep and come, pursuing [them] unto the folds, these what people, so pursuing, draw nigh?” When Jamuya spake, he said, [38v] “Mine anda, Temujin, hath been wont to nourish ‘four dogs’ with the flesh of men and to bind [them], using chains of iron. Those who draw nigh, pursuing those our watchmen, are they. Those ‘four dogs,’

- Having helmets [which are] copper,
- Having snouts [which are] chisels,
- Having tongues [which are] awls,
- Having hearts [which are] iron,
- Having whips [which are] swords, [34r]

march, eating the dew and riding the wind—those.

On the days when [they and the enemy] kill one another
They eat the flesh of men—those.

On the days when [they and the enemy] encounter one another,
They take the flesh of human beings as their provision—those.

Have they, their chains being put off, now not been restrained? Rejoicing, they draw nigh, so drivelling—those.” When he said, “Those ‘four dogs,’ who are those?” he said, “Both Jebe and Qubilai and both Jelme and Sübe’etci are those four.” When Tayang Qan spake, saying, “Let us stand far from those lowly creatures,” moving backward, he stood, straddling the mountain [and the plain]. Seeing [those] who, skipping for joy and making circles, were drawing nigh behind them, again Tayang Qan [35r] asked of Jamuya. He asked, saying, “Those are what? How so draw those nigh, making circles as foals which one hath loosed early [in the morning], foals which, sucking the milk of their

**I.e., Jebe, Qubilai, Jelme, and Sübe’etci. See immediately below.**
mothers, run merrily round about their mothers?” When Īmūya spake, he said, “Those are called the Uru’ud and the Mangyud,

Which, driving before [them]
The men with lances,
Strip [them of their] bloody clothing; [35v]
Which, pushing before [them],
The men with swords, cutting [them] down and killing [them],
Take [from them their] treasure and clothing.

Those now, rejoicing and skipping for joy, so draw those not nigh?” Then, when Tayang Qan spake, saying, “If it be so, let us stand far from those lowly creatures,” again, to the rearward, ascending [36r] the mountain, he stood. Saying, “Those who, pushing a point before [the others], draw nigh behind them,

Drivelling
Like falcons

which are become greedy of food, who are they who draw nigh?,” Tayang Qan asked of Īmūya. When Īmūya spake, he said, “This [is] mine anda, Temūjin, which draweth nigh. [In the armour on] his whole body

There is no space betwixt to pierce for an awl [36v]
Which hath been cast
Of unwrought copper.
There is no space betwixt to pierce for a great needle
Which hath been hammered
Of iron.

Mine anda, Temūjin, draweth nigh like a falcon which is become greedy of food and drivelling. Have ye seen [him]? The Naiman companions were [doing nothing other] than [saying] that, if they [ever] saw the Mongyol, [37r] they would not leave [them even] the skin of the foot of a kid.” See ye [them now].” At this word, when Tayang Qan spake, saying, “[It is] fearful! Let us, ascen-

* The goat (imaγan) is the animal which, with the Mongols, has the least value. Of the five kinds of livestock (tabun qaγγu med), i.e., the horse (moγin), the camel
ing the mountain, stand [there],” he ascended [the mountain] and stood [there]. Again, when Tayang Qan asked of Ḥanūya, again [97v] he asked, saying, “Who are they who thickly draw nigh behind him?” 52 When Ḥanūya spake, he said, “Mother Ḥe'elūn was wont to nourish one of her sons with the flesh of men.

Having a body three *alda* 53 [in height],
Having as food cattle of three years old,
Wearing a breast-plate
Of three layers,
He draweth nigh, making three bulls to draw [his cart].
If he swallow
A man with a quiver—the whole [man]—[88r]
He will not be obstructed in his gullet.
If he swallow a whole man,
It satisfieth not [his] heart. 54
If he be wroth,
If, drawing [his bow], he release his *angya'a* 55 arrow,
He shooteth so as to pierce
Ten or twenty
People
Which are
Beyond
A mountain.
If, drawing [his bow], he release his *keyibir* 56 arrow,
He shooteth so as to join 57 and [88v] so as to pierce
The companions 58 with which he hath quarrelled—
[Those] who are beyond
The steppe.

52 I.e., Temūjin.
53 An *alda*, properly, the span of the arms, is a measure of approximately six feet.
54 I.e., “it does not satisfy his appetite.”
55 This word is glossed “name of [a kind of] arrow.” It is an arrow with a forked tip.
56 This word is glossed “name of [a kind of] arrow.”
57 I.e., to transfix, as on a spit.
58 I.e., enemies.
If, drawing [his bow], in a great manner, he shoot,
He shooteth at a place [at a distance] of nine hundred alda,
If, pulling and drawing [his bow], he shoot,
He shooteth at a place [at a distance] of five hundred alda.
He is other [in countenance] than [all other] men.**
He is called Jocí Qasar which was born a gürelqii* python.

He is that [one].” [39r] Then, when Tayang Qan spake, saying,
“If it be so, let us strive for the height of the mountain. Ascend
[y]e upward!,” ascending the mountain, he stood [there]. Again,
when Tayang Qan asked of Jamuya, he said, “Who are [those]
who draw nigh behind him?” When Jamuya spake, he said,
“That is Odögööin, the youngest son [39v] of Mother Hö'elün. He
is said [to be one] which hath a [sluggish] liver.*** [He is] one which
sleepeeth early and one which ariseth late.***

[Yet] even he remaineth not behind from the multitude.
[Yet] even he remaineth not behind from the [battle]array.”

When Tayang Qan spake, he said, “If it be so, let us go up on
the top of the mountain.”

§196 [42r] Jamuya having thus spoken these words unto Tayang
Qan, separating himself from the Naiman, going out, being alone,***
when he sent, letting a message go in unto Činggis Qahan, when
he sent, speaking, saying, “Speak unto the anda,” he sent, saying,
“Tayang Qan,

At my word,
Losing [his] head,
Striving for the heights,
Being terrified, is gone up. [42v]
Being killed

** For a similar remark see §54 above.
*** This word is glossed “name of a [kind of] python.”
*** I.e., “which is a sluggard.” In the continuous translation (FPCS 7.41v3) the
word heiqi ("having lives") is rendered 性懶 (heiqi lan) “laziness of nature.”
*** Cf. Proverbs VI §6: “How long wilt thou sleep, O sluggard? When wilt thou
arise out of thy sleep?”
*** See also §170 above for a similar episode, when Jamuya defected from Ong Qan.
By [my] mouth,\[^44\]
Being afraid,
He is gone up,
Ascending
The mountain.

Anda, be [thou] prudent! The same are gone up into the mountain. These do not have the countenance [of daring] to set face against [thee]. As for me, I have separated myself from the Naiman.” Chinggis Qahan, the sun becoming evening, [43r] halted and passed the night compassing the mountain of Naqo Qun. That night, as the Naiman began to escape and to remove, tumbling down from on Naqo [Qun], heaping themselves up \[^45\] the one on top of the other, their bones falling to pieces, they crushed one another so that they stood [like] rotten trees \[^45\] and [thus] they died. On the morrow they made an end of Tayang Qan. [43v] Whereas Güçüllüg Qan was elsewhere, when, removing, revolting, [being but] few persons [in number], he was overtaken, he made a giure’en at the Tamir [River]. Not being able to stand in that his giure’en, removing, fleeing away, he went out and departed. They assembled the nation of the Naiman people, making an end of [it], at the front of the Altai. The Jadaran, the Qatagin, [44r] the Salji’ud, the Dörben, the Tayči’ud, the Unggirad and others which had been with Jamuya also submitted themselves there. When Chinggis Qahan, making [one] to bring Gürbesü, the mother of Tayang, spake, saying, ‘Wast thou not saying, ‘The scent of the Mongol [is] bad?’ ‘Why art thou now come?’ Chinggis Qahan took [her to wife].

§197 [45r] In the autumn of the same year of the rat [1204] Chinggis Qahan, setting himself in battle array with Toyto’a Beki

\[^44\] For this expression, see also §§200 and 255 below.

\[^45\] The word qutaylaldu, the concrete imperfect in -fu of qutaylada, the reciprocal form in -da of a verb qutayla, not glossed, is not elsewhere attested. In his letter dated 31 August 1954, the Reverend Antoine Mastraët suggested: “Qutaylada could have the meaning of ‘to heap themselves up.’” It is this meaning, therefore, that I have tentatively adopted here.

\[^45\] Although the word kunjū is not glossed, we find it used again in the same figure in §147 (YCS, Hsü 1.233), where the gloss reads: “rotten trees.”
of the Merkid at Qaradal HuJa’ur, making Toyto’a to remove, spoiled his people and folk and nation in the Sa’ari Steppe. Toyto’a [46v] with his sons Qudu and Cila’un, [being but] few persons [in number], with [nothing other than their] bodies, fled away and went out. And so, when the Merkid people were spoiled, when Dayir Usun of the Qo’as Merkid drew nigh, taking his daughter, Qulan Qatum, saying, “I shall present her unto Činggis Qahan,” being hindered by soldiers on the way, encountering Nayā Noyan  as the Ba’arid, [46r] when Dayir Usun spake, he said, “I draw nigh, saying, ‘I shall present this my daughter unto Činggis Qahan.’” Then, when Nayā Noyan spake, he detained [him], saying, “We shall present thy daughter together.” When he detained [him], saying, “If thou go alone, on the way the soldiers will not suffer even thee to live in [this] time of trouble and [46v] thy daughter also will suffer trouble,” he detained Dayir Usun three days and three nights. Then, with Qulan Qadun, having taken Dayir Usun, Nayā Noyan brought [them] together unto Činggis Qahan. Then, Činggis Qahan being greatly wroth, saying, “Why hast thou [47r] detained [her]?” at the moment when he was asking, saying, “Asking in a hard manner and in a minute manner, I shall make [it a matter of] ordinance,”  when Qulan Qadun spake, she made [one] to report, saying, “Nayā spake. He warned [us], saying, ‘I am a great chief of Činggis Qahan. We shall together present thy daughter unto the Qahan. On the way the soldiers will make trouble.’” Now, if we had encountered soldiers other than [those of] Naya’a, would we [not] be entered into being gendered in trouble? Peradventure our encountering this Naya’a was good. Now, instead of asking of Naya’a, if the Qahan favour [me], if he ask of the flesh  which, by the destiny of Heaven, [my] father and mother did beget, [he will find that it is perfect and entire]. When Naya’a was asked, he said, “A face of me other than [that devoted unto] the Qahan there is not. If I encounter

---

In the name Naya Noyan, Naya = Naya’a. See, for example, below.

I. e., “I shall make a precedent which shall serve as law for the future.” See also §§157 and 257 below for other instances of the application of the jasacy.

The anticipated answer is “Yes!”

I. e., “the pudenda muliebris.”
of a foreign people, I am saying, 'They are, indeed, [possessions] of my Qahan.' If there be [48v] a thought of me other than this, I shall die!' Cinggis Qahan, approving the report of Qulan Qadun, when, on the same day, then, examining [her], he tried [her], finding [it] to be like [unto] the report of Qulan Qadun, Cinggis Qahan was pleased to love Qulan Qadun. Finding [it] to be like [unto] the words of Naya'a, approving, saying, "He is [a man] which hath true words," he favoured [him], saying, "I shall commit great matters [unto him]."
Chapter VIII

§198 [1r] Spoiling the Merkid people, from both Tügei and Döregene, qadund of Qudu, the eldest son of Toyo’o Beki, [Činggis Qahan] then gave Döregene unto Ögüei Qahan. Half the people of the Merkid [1v] revolted and fortified a fortress on the top of a mountain. Then, when Činggis Qahan made a decree, he sent Ćimbai, son of Sorqan Şira, to be chief, making [him] to attack by [means of] the troops of the left hand the Merkid which had fortified. Činggis Qahan pursuing [2r] Toyo’a, which, together with his sons Qudu and Ćila’un, few [in number and with nothing other than their] bodies, was gone out, revolting, [Činggis Qahan] wintering at the front of the Altai, as, in the spring of the year of the ox [1205], he went, passing by the Arai, Gücüllüq Qan of the Naiman suffering [Činggis Qahan] to take his people, since, revolting, he was gone out—few [2v] persons [in number]—both [he and] Toyo’a of the Merkid, joining [forces], uniting themselves at the Buydurna Fountain of the Erdis, were setting their soldiers in order. As Činggis Qahan, arriving, stood in array, Toyo’a, being shot there by a stray arrow, is fallen. His sons, not being able to take his bones in hand, not being able [3r] to take his body away, cut off his head and, taking [it], departed. Then, when the Naiman and the Merkid, uniting themselves together, not being able to stand in array, removed, escaping, when they

---

1 Although the word taşqal is glossed "mountain-top" here and immediately below (8.4+8), it is, in both cases, rendered as a proper name in the continuous translation (YCP 8.8.6 and 5v3).

2 Although I transcribe this name as it appears in the text, it must be observed that, in his review, in the T’oung Pao 31 (1935).157-167, of Erich Hanisch’s "Die letzten Feldzüge Činggis Han’s und sein Tod nach der ostasiatischen Überlieferung,” in Asia Major 9 (1935).503-541, Paul Pelliot remarked (p. 159): “I shall show elsewhere that we must find here the name of the Alai, that which is not without interest for the itinerary of Gengis-khan.”

3 Erdis—Erdis below.

4 I.e., “not being able to bury him.”
crossed the Erdiš [River], sinking [therein], they suffered their more part to die in the water. The Naiman and [3v] the Merkid which were gone out few [in number], after passing over the Erdis, removed, separating themselves. Güčüüg Qan of the Naiman, passing the U‘urtai and the Qarlu’ud, went to join himself unto the Gür Qan of the Qara Kidad which were at the Çui River in the land of the Sarta‘ul. The Merkid [4v] having at their head Qudu, Qal, and Cila‘un, sons of Toyto’a of the Merkid, departed, passing [by] the Qanglin and the Kimča‘ud. Then Činggis Qahan, returning, passing by the Arai, pitched at the a‘uru‘ud. Čimbaí destroyed the Merkid which had fortified a fortress on the top of a mountain. Then, [as to] the Merkid, when Činggis Qahan made a decree, suffering one to kill [those] of them [4v] whom one should kill, he suffered [those] of them who were left to be spoiled by the soldiers. Again the Merkid which aforetime had submitted themselves, revolting, arose from the a‘uru‘ud. Our servants which were in the a‘uru‘ud overcame those [which had so revolted]. Then, [5r] when Činggis Qahan made a decree, saying, “[We] had said, ‘Let us suffer [them] to live as [an] entire [tribe].’ But the same [Merkid] have revolted,” he made one to part the Merkid, [distributing them] unto every quarter, to the point that he extinguished [them as an entire tribe].

§199 [6r] In the same year of the ox [1205], when Činggis Qahan made a decree, when he sent Sübe’etei—[him] with an iron cart* —making [him] to pursue the sons of Toyto’a having at their head Qudu, Qal, and Cila‘un, when Činggis Qahan, making a decree, caused [one] to bear [6v] a message unto Sübe’etei, he made a decree, saying, “The sons of Toyto’a having at their head Qudu, Qal, and Cila‘un, departing, being affrighted, returning, shooting, departed as [if] they were wild horses [each] having a pole with a noose [over his neck] or deer [each] having an arrow [in his body]. If those, becoming winged, flying, ascend unto Heaven, shalt thou,

*See also §177 above.
*The text has Qud. See, however, Qud in §199 below.
*See note 2 above.
*See note 1 above.
*See §236 below. See also note 21 below.
Sübe’etei, [7r] becoming a gerfalcon, flying, not seize them? If, becoming marmots, digging with their nails, they enter into the Earth, shalt thou, becoming an iron rod, boring, seeking [them], not overtake [them]? If, becoming fishes, they enter into the Tenggis Sea, shalt thou, Sübe’etei, becoming a net which is cast or a net which is dragged, catching and [7v] taking [them] up, not take [them]? Again, I have sent thee to pass high passes and to pass over broad rivers. Being mindful of the far [distances] of the land, spare [ye them], at the moment when the horses of the army are not yet wasted away. Husband [ye them], at the moment when [ye] have not yet finished your provision. If a gelding be [already] wholly wasted away, if [ye] spare [him], it will [8r] not do. If [ye] have [already] wholly finished the provision, if [ye] husband [him], it will not do. The wild beasts on your way are many. At the moment when ye go, mindful of that which is beyond, suffer [ye] not the men of the army to gallop unto the wild beasts. Hunt [ye] not without limit. If [ye] hunt, saying, [8v] ‘Let there be increase and addition in provision for the men of the army,’ hunt [ye], limiting [the hunting]. Suffer [thou one] not to crupper the crupper of the saddle of a man of the army apart from limited 11 huntings. Let one, not putting on the bridle, go [forward], leaving the bit out of the mouth. 12 If, so ordering themselves, they go [forward], how will the men of the army be able to gallop? 13 [9r] Thus making it a matter of ordinance, then, let one seize and beat [those] who shall have transgressed the ordinance. Come [ye], giving unto Us those who shall have transgressed Our decree—the ones which are such as to be known by

11 I. e., “it is useless, one can not mount it any more.” Cf. Antoine Montaret, op. cit., p. [107].
12 I. e., limited by order of the commanding general.
13 I. e., leaving it so that it hangs under the chin.
14 In a letter dated 5 October 1904 the Reverend Antoine Montaret remarked:
“Činggis means that in this manner the soldiers will not be able to gallop their horses, because, if they gallop their horses without having shackled the mouth with the bit, the horses cannot be directed or mastered, and if they gallop their horses without having put on the crupper, they will not be able to go down a slope on the gallop, because the saddle being no longer held at the back will slip forward and the rider will fall from his mount. The aim of Činggis is to render all galloping impossible while the soldiers are en route, in order that they do not uselessly fatigue their mounts.”
Chapter VIII

Us. Cause [ye], then, [one] to behead even there [in the field] the many [ones] which are not [such as] to be known by Us.

Beyond the rivers
Ye will separate yourselves.
Go [ye, then,] [9v] in the same manner.

Beyond the mountains
Ye will divide yourselves.
Think [ye, then,] not of [aught] apart [from]
and other [than your task].

If, might and power being increased by Everlasting Heaven, [ye] make to enter into your hands the sons of Toyto'a, [to go] so far as to bring [them], what is it? Forsake ye [them] there.”

Again when Cinggis Qahan spake [10r] unto Sübe'etei, saying, “When I make thee [now] to go a warfare, [I do so because] in my childhood by the Uduyd of the Three Merkid which made [me] thrice to go round about Burqan Qaldun I was made to be afraid. Such hating people—now again, loosing mouth and tongue [not to submit themselves unto me], they are departed—may [thou] meet at the extremity of [that which is][10v] long and at the bottom of [that which is] deep,” making [him] to pursue [them], making [him] to go to the extremity, beating out an iron cart, he made him to go a warfare in the year of the ox [1206].

He made a decree, saying, “If [ye] go, thinking that, even if We be out of [your] sight, [it will be] as if [We were] visible and, even

14 “Cinggis means: ‘If in the course of the expedition it happens that you are obliged to march in several columns, let each corps of troops observe the same prescriptions which I have just given for the whole army and think only of faithfully fulfilling the mission with which it is charged.’” Cf. Antoine Montauret, op. cit., p. [125], n. 118.
15 I.e., “What reason would there be to bring them?” Cf. Antoine Montauret, op. cit., p. [125].
16 I.e., “kill them.”
17 See §105.
18 I.e., “which have hate for me.”
19 I.e., “making a solemn promise,” “swearing an oath.”
20 See §168 above.
21 Cf. Joshua XVII §18: “for thou shalt drive out the Canaanites, though they have iron chariots, and though they be strong.”
if [We] be far, [it will be] as if [We were] near, ye [11r] shall also be protected by Heaven above.”

§200 [12r] When [Činggis Qahan] had made an end of destroying the Naiman and the Merkid, when Jamuyu was with the Naiman, as his people was taken there, the same becoming a robber having five companions, ascending on [Mount] Tanglu, killing a moufflon, roasting [it], when they ate [it], then Jamuyu spake unto his companions. He said, “The sons of whom, [12v] killing this day a moufflon, eat thus [as ye]? ” ²² Whilst they were eating the flesh of that moufflon, his five companions, laying hand upon Jamuyu, seized and brought [him] unto Činggis Qahan. As Jamuyu, being come unto and seized by his companions, spake, saying, “Say unto [mine] anda, the Qahan,

‘Black crows
Are come [18r] to take a qarambait duck,
Commoners and slaves
Are come to lay hand
Upon their qan.
Why would mine anda, the Qahan, err? ’

Brown buzzards
Are come to take a borin sono."
Slaves and servants,
Compassing [him] and conspiring [against him],
are come to take
Their proper lord.
Why would my holy anda err?’, "

at that word [18v] of Jamuyu, when Činggis Qahan made a decree, he made a decree, saying, “How shall one suffer to live persons

²² “Jamuyu means: ‘Esteem yourselves happy to be able to eat moufflon meat, whereas so many people must content themselves with a food less exquisites.’” Cf. Antoine Mostaert, op. cit., p. 126.

²² This term, not elsewhere attested, is glossed: “name of a [kind of] black duck.”

²² “Jamuyu means: ‘I am sure that my anda, the Qahan, will not be mistaken on the nature of the crime which my ‘companions’ have just committed in betraying me, me, their legitimate lord, and that he will punish them promptly.’” Cf. Antoine Mostaert, op. cit., p. 127.

²² This term is glossed: “name of a [kind of] duck.”
which have laid hand upon their proper qan? Such persons shall be companions unto whom? Make [ye one] to behead unto their seed the people which did lay hand upon their proper qan!" In the presence of [14r] the same Jamuña he made [one] to behead for [him] the people which had laid hand upon him. When Činggis Qahan spake, saying, "Speak unto Jamuña," as he spake, saying, "Now we twain have united ourselves. Let us be companions. As we are together becoming [each of us] one of two shafts of a cart, thou thinkest of severing thyself and [14v] separating thyself [from me]. Now, being together in one [and the same place],

Let us be the one and the other making to remember our [one] which shall have forgotten
And [let us be] the one and the other making to awake our [one] which shall be fallen asleep."

Though [thou] wert gone elsewhere apart,
[Thou] wast my fortunate and happy anda.
Verily the day when [in the field] the one died with the other
Thou [15r] wast pained as to thy bosom and heart.

Though [thou] wert gone apart elsewhere,
The day when [in the field] the one killed the other
Thou wast pained as to thy lungs and heart.

If [thou] say, ‘When?,’ [the answer is,] at the moment when I was fighting with the Kereyid people at the Qalaqaljid Sands, second [15v] having sent [unto me], making [me] to be aware of thy words which [thou] hadst spoken unto Father Ong Qan, was thy service [which thou didst for me]. Again thy having sent [unto me] a message, [reporting] that thou hadst made the Naiman people to be afraid,

Making [them] to die
By [thy] words,
Killing [them]
By [thy] mouth 

---

** See §§255 and 272 below.
* See §170 above.
** See §190 above.
saying, 'May thou regard [it] as such'—was a service [which thou didst for me]."

§201 [18v] when Jamuya spake, as he spake, saying, "[At] an early day, at the time [when we were] little," when [I] declared myself anda [17r] with [mine] anda, the Qan, at Qorqonay Valley,31

Together eating food which one digesteth not,
Speaking unto each other words which one forgetteth not,
we were [at night] in our covering, dividing [it] with each other.

Being stirred up
By [persons] which were in the way,
Being pricked
By [persons] which were at the side,42
We wholly separated ourselves.
Saying [unto myself], 'We have spoken weighty words
unto each other,'
From the fact that my black face
Had been flayed [from shame],
Not being able " to approach,
I am gone not being able [again] to see the warm " face
Of mine anda, the Qan.
Saying [unto myself], 'We have spoken unto each other
words which one forgetteth not,'
From the fact that my red face
Had been peeled [from shame], [18r]
I am gone, not being able [again] to see the true face
Of mine anda with a long memory.

Now mine anda, the Qan, hath favoured [me] and hath said [unto me], 'Let us be companions.' At the time in which I should have been [his] companion, I was not together a companion. Now, [mine] anda,

---
31 I.e., "in our childhood."
33 I.e., "no longer daring."
34 I.e., "sympathetic."
[Thou] hast pacified
All the nations,
Thou hast united
Every foreign realm.

The throne of qan hath betaken itself unto thee. Inasmuch as the world is now become ready [for thee], were I a companion, [of] what service would I be [for thee]? Yet, of [thee, mine] anda,

I shall enter into thy dreams of the black night;
I shall trouble thy thoughts of the bright day.\[16\]

I shall become
A louse of thy collar,
A thorn of thine inner lapel.

I have had many paternal grandmothers.\[17\] Beginning to think of [attaining unto] that which is beyond [mine] anda, I committed an error. Now, in this life—that of the twain, [mine] anda and us—my name hath reached from the sun which riseth unto the sun which setteth.\[18\] [Mine] anda hath a wise mother. Being born a küülüg by birth, he hath skilful younger brethren. As he was at the side of his valiant companions and with his seventy and three geldings,\[19\] I have been excelled by [mine] anda. As for me, being bereaved, whilst yet little, of mother and father, I was without younger brethren.\[20\] My wife is a babbler. I had companions [which were] unworthy of confidence. Because of that,\[21\]

---

\[16\] See Chapter IX, §119.

\[17\] In his letter of 5 October 1864 the Reverend Antoine Montalet remarked:

"... Jamuña had lost his father and his mother when he was still quite young (ele cheko-cheko ičičen qotwira) and he must have been reared by the wives of his grand-father, his paternal grandmothers."

\[18\] I.e., me.

\[19\] See also §260 below.

\[20\] This allusion is obscure. There is no reference to these geldings elsewhere in the Secret History.

\[21\] This seems to be contradicted, however, by §128 (and §129), where we read: "when Tašar, the younger brother of Jamuña, was at Oğei Spring, etc." Fellner and Hammar, op. cit., p. 50, have proposed a solution of the difficulty: "As to the quality of 'younger brother' of Jamuña indicated for Tašar by the §§128 and 129 of the Secret History, whereas in the §201 the same Jamuña says not to have had any 'younger brothers,' it must not be forgotten that in this latter passage Jamuña speaks of 'brothers' in the strict sense, instead of which in the other two it can be a
[I] have been excelled by [mine] anda having [his] destiny from Heaven. If [thou, mine] anda, favour me, if [thou] make me to pass away swiftly, anda, thou wilt be at peace as to thy heart. When [thou, mine] anda, favouring [me], shalt make [one] to kill [me], make [one] to kill [me], not shedding [my] blood.  

When I shall die and shall lie [in my grave], my dead bones—in a high place  

for ever and ever [I] shall offer protection unto the seed of [30v] thy seed—I shall become a prayer. [By] origin I have a nature other [than that of mine anda]. I have been crushed by the majesty of [mine] anda with a nature more than plenteous [in excellence]. Not forgetting my words which [I] have [now] spoken, remembering [them] evening and morning, ye will speak [them] unto one another. Now let [mine anda] dispatch [31r] me,  

at these his words, when Čingis Qahan spake, having said, "Though mine anda be gone apart [from me], (while he hath been) talking in mouthfuls against Us, it hath not yet been heard that he thinketh of harm for [Our] life. [He] is a man from which [something] might be learned. [However, as for him,] it will not do, [because he is not willing]. If I say, 'Let us cause [him] to die,' it would not come into the divination." If I do harm to [his] life without reason, it would not be [32r] fit. [He] is a man having a grave way. Ye might speak [unto him] this his reason. May ye speak, saying, 'Formerly, because both Čoji Darmala and Tačar had robbed their herds of horses from one another," Anda [22r] Jamuya, thou, contrariwise,  

coming, plotting rebellion, joining battle at Dalan Baljud, making me to flee for refuge unto the Jerene  

question, following the Mongolian practice, of cousins even rather distant, and even of people to whom one gives by affection the name of 'younger brother' even when they are not of your relatives."  

22 Because of his noble origin.  
23 See Chapter V, note 44.  
24 I.e., "make me promptly to die." Cf. Antoine Montaerne, op. cit., p. 344, n. 223.  
25 I.e., "plotting."  
26 I.e., "a sign to do so would not manifest itself in the course of the divinatory operation."  
27 I.e., "he is an important man."  
28 See §188 above.  
29 I.e., "contrary to our expectations."  
30 Although Jerene is glossed, in this instance, as if it were a dative-locative in -s of Jerene, it is clear from §189 above, where the name occurs twice, once as Jerene
didst thou not cause me to be afraid there? Now if I say, “Let us be companions,” it will not do, [because thou art not willing]. When I assayed to spare thy life, thou didst not permit [it].” [22v]

Now speak [unto him], saying, ‘Let one now, according to thine [own] words, cause [thee] to pass away, not shedding [thy] blood,’ ” he made a decree, saying, “Causing [him] to pass on, not shedding [his] blood, abandon [ye] not openly his bones. Take [ye them] decently in hand.” Causing Jamuya to pass away there, he caused [one] to take his bones in hand.”

§202 [24r] And so

Making straight **

The people having skirts of felt [which cover their tents as outward walls]

and, in the year of the tiger [1206], assembling themselves at the head of the Onan [River], having made [one] to set up a white standard having nine feet,” then they gave unto Činggis Qahan the title qan. Then also [24v] he gave unto Muqali the title gui ong.” Making Jebe to pursue Gücüüg Qan of the Naiman, then also he made him to go a warfare. When he had made an end of setting in order the Mong-yoljin people, when Činggis Qahan made a decree, he made [25r] a decree, saying, “For [those] who are gone with [me], together setting up a nation, I shall, making bands of thousands and appointing captains of the thousands, speak words of favour.” When, appointing the captains of the thousands, he named [them], Father Müngliq, Bo’orqü, Muqali Gui Ong, Qorqii, Ilijqi, Jürçedei, Tunan, Qobilai, Jelme, Tüge, Degei, Tolon, Önggür, Çülgetei, Borogul, Śigi Qutuq, Güçü, Kököqi, Qorqosun, Hüsun, Quyildar, Šilügei, Jetei, Tayai, [25v]

(YCPS 4.4v8) and once as Čeren-də (“unto Čeren”) (YCPS 4.4v4), that the absolute form of the name is Čeren.

** See §190 above.

I. e., “bury him decently.”

I. e., “bury him.”

I. e., subduing.

I. e., tails.

I. e., the Chinese title of Kuo-wang 王 (“Prince of the Realm”).
$\S 208$ When, together with the sons in law—when again Činggis Qahan [27v] made a decree—he had [thus] appointed [over] a thousand [each of] these captains of the ninety five thousands which he had named, when, [concerning the men which were] within that [number], Činggis Qahan made a decree, saying, “I shall grant favours unto those who have [done] service,” at the moment when he was saying that the captains having at their head Bo’orču and Muqali should come, Šigi Qutoqu was within the tent. As he spake unto Šigi Qutoqu, saying, “Go [28r] for to call [them],” when Šigi Qutoqu spake, he said, “Bo’orču, Muqali, and others have done more service than who? They have given more might than who?” In [respect of] being given favours, [as to] what[soever], I did not service which was too little. [As to] what[soever], I gave not might which was too little.

From [the time when I] was [28v] in the cradle,
At thy high threshold,
Growing,
Until there grew

\*\* Cf. the catalogue of the captains of the ships in the second book of the \textit{Iliad}.
\*\* I. e., “They have devoted themselves to thee more than who?”
So much beard [as thou now seest]
On [my] chin,
I have not thought otherwise.**
From [the time when I had] the urinal at [my] crotch,**
Being at thy golden threshold,
Growing,
Until the beard at the mouth
Grew so much [as thou now seest],
I have not trodden in error. [38r]
Making me to lie at her feet,
[She] hath made me to grow as a son [of her].
Making me to lie at her side,
[She] hath made me to grow as a younger brother
[of thee].***

Now what favour givest [thou] unto me?” At that word, [29v]
when Chinggis Qahan spake unto Šigi Qutuq, he made a decree,
saying, “Art thou not the sixth younger brother? For thee, Our late-born] younger brother, [let one] part 41 favours according to
the part of younger brethren. Again, because of thy services, let
one not punish [thee] unto nine transgressions.” He made a de-
cree, saying, “At the moment when [I am] being protected by
Everlasting Heaven and [30r] am rectifying** the entire people,
becoming

[Mine] eyes for seeing,
[Mine] ears for hearing,**

the entire people part thou and give [as] parts unto [Our] Mother,
unto Us, unto [Our] younger brethren, and unto [Our] sons, ac-
cording to the names of the people,

**I.e., “I have not been unfaithful to thee.”

***For a picture of a child in a cradle with a tube from which drops of urine are
trickling, cf. P. G. Fallas, Sammlungen historischer Nachrichten über die Mongolischen
Völkerkunde, Erster Band, St. Petersburg 1778, “Tab. III.”

***See §193 above, where it is told how Mother Hō’ulū reared Šikikin Qutuq.

41 The form qubiladu, as it stands, is the imperative of the second person singular.
From the context, however, it is almost certain that this is an error for qubiladuquray
“let one part.” See aldaturay (“let one punish”) immediately below (3.29v4).

***I.e., “conquering.”

**See §193 above and §252 below.
Dividing
Those who have skirts of felt [which cover their
tents as outward walls],
Making to separate themselves
Those who have doors of boards [on their tents]. [29v]

Let not anyone violate thy word.” Again saying that Šigi Qutuqu,
of the entire people,

Making thieves to beware,
Making lies to be vain,

should make to die [those] for whom holdeth the custom that
they should be made to die and should make to punish [those]
for whom holdeth the custom that they should be made to be
punished, he committed [unto him] the judgments of over all [the
people]. Again he made a decree, saying, “Let him, writing
writing [in] the blue register, make into registers the fact that, of
the entire people,

He shall have parted parts
and the fact that
He shall have judged judgments

and, unto the seed of the seed, let one not alter the blue writing
which Šigi Qutuqu, [after] taking counsel with me, shall, [after]
deciding [it], have made into registers on white paper. Let the
people which shall alter [aught] be [31v] guilty.” When Šigi
Qutuqu spake, he petitioned, saying, “How shall a late[-born]
younger brother like me, take a part alike and equally? If he
favour me, let the favour of the Qahan know [how] he may give
[unto me] from the cities having walls of earth.” [32r] At this
word, [Činggis Qahan] said, “Thine own person, thou hast deter-
mined [thy part]. Know thou [what it shall be].” Šigi Qutuqu,
making an end of causing [him] so to favour himself, going out,
calling the chiefs Bo’orçu, Muqali and others, made [them] to enter.

§204 [33r] Then when Činggis Qahan, making a decree, spake
unto Father Münglig, he made a decree, saying, “Thou, for-
tunate and happy,
Which wast born together with [my] being born,
Which didst grow together with [my] growing."

[33v] thy services and protection, how many were they [not in number]? Among those, at the moment when the twain, Father Ong Qan and Anda Sengüm, beguiling, called me, when I drew nigh, as, on the way, I passed the night at the tent of Father Mümilig, if thou, Father Mümilig, hadst not stayed [me]," [I] fear that [I] would be entered

Into water that was whirling, [34r]
Into fire that was red.

Only being mindful of that service, how could it be forgotten unto the seed of the seed? Being mindful of that service, now causing [thee] to sit [on] a seat at the base of this corner, consulting [thee] in [each] year or in [each] moon, I shall give gifts and favours unto thee. I shall be serving [thee]. Unto the seed [34v] of the seed!"

§205 Again, when Činggis Qahan spake unto Bo’or củ, he made a decree, saying, "[35r] At the time when [I was] little, the eight horses—the isabella geldings—being stolen, at the moment when, on the way, passing three nights, pursuing [them], I was drawing nigh, we encountered each other. Then, when thou didst speak, saying, 'I shall together be a companion unto a companion which, being in distress,' draweth nigh, without a message even unto thy father in the tent, when thou wast milking thy mares, concealing thy [35v] leathern bucket and leathern milkpail in the steppe, making [me] to loose my straw yellow "[horse] with the hairless tail, causing a grayish white horse with a black stripe along the backbone "to be ridden by me, thou, riding [thine] own swift pale-yellow [horse], loosing without a lord thy herd of

"See §211 below.
"See §166 above for this episode.
"The word bengelenij, not glossed, is almost certainly an alteration of the word mungtanij which occurs in §90 (YCPS 2.30v3), §92 (YCPS 2.33v3), and §93 (YCPS 2.34v6). Such an alteration is possible in the Uighur script in which the text was written.
"See Chapter I, note 13, and Chapter II, note 35.
"See Chapter I, note 13.
horses, hasting, from the steppe, then, being a companion with me, again, pursuing [for] three days and nights, when we arrived at the giure’en which had stolen [the eight horses]—[36r] the isabella geldings—, stealing [them] as they were standing at the edge of the giure’en, driving [them] out, fleeing away, we twain brought [them] back.¹⁰ Thy father is Naqu Bayan. Thou, his only son,¹⁰ knowing what [in respect of me], [36v] art become a companion unto me? Thou art become a companion by the courage of [thy] heart. After that, when, continually thinking [on thee], I sent Belgütei and said, ‘Let us be companions,’ when thou,

Riding a strawyellow [horse] with a curved back,
Tying behind the saddle thy gray mantle of felt,
art come as a companion,¹¹ the Three Merkid coming against Us, at the moment when they made [me] thrice to go round about [37r] [Mount] Burqan, thou wentest round about with [me].¹² Again, after that, when, [being so close to them that we were as] propped over against the Tatar people at Dalan Nemirges, we passed the night, at the moment when, day and night, the rain continually fell, saying that I should be asleep at night, [37v] having continued to cover [me with] thy [rain] covering, not suffering the rain to fall upon me, standing [there] until the night was spent, thou wast only once shifting one of thy two feet.¹³ It was a sign of the courage of thee. What [signs of] courage of thee other than that could I finish telling? Both Bo’orču and Muqali,

Drawing my [38r] right so that it went forward,
Staying my wrong so that it halted,¹⁴

have [thus] made [me] to attain unto this throne.¹⁵ Now, [let

¹⁰ See §§30-32 above for this episode.
¹¹ See Chapter III, note 47.
¹² See §35 above for this episode.
¹³ See §168 above for this episode, where, however, there is no mention of the fact that Bo’orču went around Burqan Qaldun with Tömür’in. See also §148 above, where Činggis Qahan says that Jelme once saved his life on the same occasion.
¹⁴ See §158 above for this episode, where, however, there is no mention of the fact that Bo’orču rendered this service.
¹⁵ I.e., “encouraging me to do what was right and dissuading me from doing what was wrong.”
¹⁶ See §230 below.
them] sit [on] seats over all and let one not punish [them] unto nine transgressions. Let Bo'ořeču govern the ten thousand of [those] of the right hand which take the Altai as [their] pillow."**

§206 [39r] Again, when Činggis Qahan spake unto Muqali, he made a decree, saying, "When we pitched at the Branching Tree of [39v] Qorqonay Valley, under which Qutula Qan danced," because of [the fact that] the words which the foretoken of Heaven had [fore]told unto Muqali [were] clear, I, then thinking on [his father] Gii'ın Qo'a,"** did pledge [my] word unto Muqali. According to that, saying, 'Let one sit on a seat and, [40r] unto the seed of the seed of Muqali, let one be gui' ong of all the people,' [I] have given [unto him] the title gui' ong. Let Muqali Gui Ong govern the ten thousand of [those] of the left hand who take Qara'un Jidun as [their] pillow."***

§207 [40v] When Činggis Qahan spake unto Qorči, he made a decree, saying, "[Thou] didst [once] prophesy [unto me]”** and, from [the time when] I was little until now, for a long time,

Suffering the wet with [me],
Suffering the cold with [me]."****

thou [41r] hast been conducting thyself as a god which bringeth happiness. When, at that time, Qorči, [thou] didst speak, thou didst say, 'If the prophecy be fulfilled and if, by Heaven, it be made to come to pass [according] to [thy] desires, suffer me to have thirty women.' Now, because [it hath been] fulfilled, I shall favour [thee]. [41v] See [for thyself which are] the best women and the best maidens of these peoples which have submitted and choose thirty women." Again he made a decree, saying, "Over [and above the fact] that Qorči [hath] three thousand Ba'arin, with both Tayai and Ašir, there being the Činos, Töölös, and

**I.e., "which live in front of the Altai Mountain."

***See §§97 and 117 above.

See §137, where the name is written Gii'ın U'ın.

***I.e., "which live in front of the Qara'un Jidun Mountain."

****See §121 above.

See §§19 below.
Telenggûd of the Adarkin, the ten thousand being [thus] full, Qorči governing [them], encamping as a freeman [in] an encampment [42r] unto the People of the Forest along the Erdi [River], and, making [them] to hold in subjection the People of the Forest, let Qorči govern the ten thousand." He made a decree, saying, "Let the People of the Forest not act on this manner or on that manner without leave from Qorči. Why [on the part of Qorči] should there be any doubt as to [the manner on which he should deal with one] who acteth without [his] leave?"  

§208 [43r] Again, when Činggis Qahan spake unto Jürçedei, [he made a decree, saying], "[As for] thy weighty service, at the moment when [we were] fighting at the Qalaqaljîd Sands with the Kereyid and when I was anxious [concerning the outcome of the battle], Anda Quyildar [then] sware an oath." [Howbeit], his work, Jürçedei, thou didst perform. When thou didst perform [it], Jürçedei, because, thou, rushing against [them], overcoming the Jirgin, [43v] the Tûbegen, the Dongqayid, the Quri Şilemûn, the thousand dayguards, the weighty troops—all [of them]—arriving at the great middle, didst shoot the red cheek of Senggüm with an uçûmay [arrow], by Everlasting Heaven ' the door and the reins were opened.' If Senggûm had not been wounded, [44r] how, indeed, might we have been? As for Jürçedei, the weighty, great service was that. When that [one] separated himself [from me], journeying down along the Qalqa [River], I was continually thinking on Jürçedei as [if he were] the shelter of a high mountain. When that [one] was departed, we arrived for to water [our beasts at] Lake Baljûna. Moreover, when we set forth from [44v] Lake Baljûna, sending Jürçedei as a spy, setting forth against the Kereyid, [our] might being increased by Heaven and Earth, we destroyed and spoiled the Kereyid people. The weighty peoples being cut off, [as to] the Naiman and the Merkid, their look being

---

I.e., "Why should he hesitate to kill anyone who may act without his permission?"

See §§171-172 for this episode.

From this we see that Činggis Qahan considered that his fortune dated from this very moment.

See §182 above.

See §182 above.
CHAPTER VIII

[quite] broken,⁷ they were not able to set themselves in array and were dispersed. In the strife in which [45v] the Merkid and the Naim disperse themselves, Ḫaqā Gambu of the Kereyid, by reason of his two daughters,⁸⁸ had been with his own subject peoples as [an] entire tribe. Ḫūrčedī, enticing [him] who had separated himself [from us], becoming an enemy a second time, by a device [45v] laying hand upon [him], seized and made an end of Ḫaqā Gambu which had wholly separated himself [from us]. Destroying a second time the people of that Ḫaqā Gambu, we spoiled it. This was the second service of Ḫūrčedī."⁸⁹

The day when [in the field] the one killed the other,
Because he [could have] cast away his life;
The day when [in the field] the one died with the other,
Because he [could have] fought unto death,

when Činggis Qahan, favouring [him], gave Ibaq Beki unto [46r] Ḫūrčedī, when he spake unto Ibaq, saying, "I have not said [unto myself] that thou [art] without thine ʾilige and bosom"⁹⁰ and that [thou art] had [as to thy] beauty and appearance. When I present unto Ḫūrčedī thee who art 'entered into [my] breast and into [my] legs,"⁹¹ and who art 'descended,' taking place in the row,"⁹² being mindful of the great principle," I have given thee [unto him], being mindful of the principle [of recompense] of his services whereby [46v] Ḫūrčedī

---

⁷ I.e. they no longer have the appearance of daring to fight. Cf. the words of Ḫāmeyn in §194: "These do not have the countenance of daring to set face against (thee)." Cf. also the words in §346: "as to the Qemgutan, the confident countenance diminished." Cf. also the words in §277: "Breaking asunder the countenance, thou wentest."

⁸⁸ See §186 above.

⁹⁰ This seems to contradict what is related in §186 where it is specifically stated that Ḫaqā Gambu was spared by Činggis Qahan.

⁹¹ In the expression ʾilige ʾstĕjī, the first element is not glossed. The second means "bosom." In the continuous translation (VCPS 8.49v6) we find 無性行 (wu xing-xing) "without character."

⁹² I.e. "who art my wife." Cf. Antoine MONTGOMERY, op. cit., p. [74].

⁹³ I.e. "who the day when thou art become my wife hast taken place among the imperial wives." Cf. Antoine MONTGOMERY, op. cit., p. [74].

⁹⁴ I.e. the great principle of recompense of good deeds.
Became a shield [for Us]
The day of battle;

Became a shelter [for Us]
Against the enemy people;

United [for Us]
The people which had separated themselves [from Us];

Gathered [for Us]
The people which had dispersed themselves.**

Long [here]after, when my seed shall sit on Our [47v] throne, being mindful of the principle [of recompense unto him who] did service like this, not violating my words, let them not abolish the place ** of Ibaqa unto the seed of the seed.” Again, when Čingenis Qahan spake unto Ibaqa, having taken [her], saying, “Thy father Jaqa Gambu gave unto thee two hundred ingjes ** and [gave] unto thee both the cook [47v] Ašı’ Temür and the cook Alçiyy. Now when thou goest unto the Uru’ud people, go, giving unto me [as] remembrance of thee one hundred from thine ingjes, [together with] thy cook Ašı’ Temür,” again, when Čingenis Qahan spake unto Jür-çecci, favouring [him], he made a decree, saying, “I have given mine Ibaqa [48r] unto thee. Shalt thou not be governing, thou, thy four thousand Uru’ud?”

** See §§ 96 and 104 above.
** I.e., the place which she had formerly occupied among the imperial wives and at the head of her renas.
** I.e., slaves (male or female) presented as dowry by the bride to the groom. See §48 above.
§209 [1r] Again, when Činggis Qahan spake unto Qubilai, favouring [him], he made a decree, saying, "Thou hast pressed for me
The necks
Of the mighty ones,
The buttocks
Of the strong men.

These, Qubilai, Čelme, Čebe, and Sūbegetei, when [I] sent you, my 'four dogs,' making [you] to betake yourselves unto that which [I] had thought,¹ ye were
Shattering the stones,
At the moment when [I] said, [1v] 'Arrive';
Smashing the cliffs,
At the moment when [I] said, 'Assault';
Breaking the bright stones,
Cutting asunder the deep waters."²

Sending Qubilai, Čelme, Čebe, and Sūbegetei, you, my 'four dogs,' unto the place which [I] had pointed out, if Bo'orču, Muqali, Boroyul, and Čila'un Ba'atur, these my 'four [2r] küli'ūd,' were at my side, if it was a day of battle, if [I] made both Čürđedei and Quyildar to stand in front of me with their Uru'ud and Magyud, I was at ease as to all my thoughts.³ [2v] Wilt thou, Qubilai, not have charge of the affairs of the army—all [of them]?" Again he said, "Because of the stubbornness⁴ of Bedři'lin, I have been displeased [with him] and have not given

¹ I.e., "toward that which I had in view." Cf. Antoine MONTAUBET, op. cit., p. 189.
² See also §78.
³ I.e., "I had no more worries."
⁴ The word meňeqeq, not glossed, is not elsewhere attested. Cf., however, the continuous translation (YOPS 9:35): 性拗 (xing we) "stubborn by nature."
[unto him] a thousand. Thou wilt be right for him. Let him, commanding a thousand with thee, take counsel [with thee]." Again he said, "[Here]after [3r] We shall observe [how] Bedüün [doeth]."

§210 [3v] Again, when Chinggis Qahan spake unto Gunan of the Geniges—he made a decree, saying, "For you, the chiefs having at their head Bo'orū and Muqali, and for [you,] the stewards Dedai, Doqolqu and others—this Gunan, being a male wolf in the black night and a black crow in the bright day,

Tarried not, at the moment when we were journeying,
Journeyed not, [4r] at the moment when we were tarrying,
Put not on another face With bosu people,
Put not on a separate face With hating people—

perform [ye] not without leave from both Gunan and Kökö Čos. Perform [ye, only after] taking counsel with both Gunan and Kökö Čos"—[4v] he made a decree, saying, "The eldest of my sons is Joči. Let Gunan be at the head of his Geniges and be a captain of ten thousand under Joči." Gunan, Kökö Čos, Degei, and Old Man Üsün—these four—

Were not hiding what they had seen,
Were not concealing what they had heard.10

[5r] These are the four.

9 I.e., "He will listen to thee."
10 There is no further reference to Bedüün in the Secret History.
11 Regarded by the Mongols as the most cunning of animals.
* This allusion is not clear. On 10 October 1959, Professor Serge Elisséeff suggested that it might be a reference to the "crow in the sun." Cf., e.g., Marcel Granet, Danse et légendes de la Chine ancienne, Tome premier, Paris, 1924, p. 579, n. 9: "Le corbeau est un animal solaire."
12 This word, not glossed, is not elsewhere attested. It is probably a synonym of ēkšā ("hating") immediately below.
13 See §216 below.
§211 [5v] Again, when Činggis Qahan spake unto Jelme, he made a decree, saying, “When Old Man Jarči’udai, carrying his bellows on his back—from [the moment when] Jelme was [yet] in the cradle—came, descending from Burqan Qaldun, he was giving swaddling clothes of sable at the moment when I was born at Deli’in Hill of the Onan [River].” From the fact of becoming a companion, he is become

A slave
Of [my] threshold,
A private slave [6r]
Of [my] door.

The services of Jelme are many. He

Who was together born with [my] being born,
Who together grew with [my] growing.

had as origin [of brotherhood] the swaddling clothes of sable.
[6v] Let the fortunate and happy Jelme, if he transgress [but] nine transgressions, not be subject to punishment.”

§212 [7r] Again, when Činggis Qahan spake unto Tolun, he made a decree, saying, “How [is it that ye,] father and son, are to command [each] a separate thousand? Because, [aforetime] together assembling the people, being one of the two wings of [thy] father, [thou] didst together draw and didst together assemble the people, I have given [unto thee] the title of čerbi.” Now, with [all the people] which thou hast [7v] found and gathered of thyself, becoming [captain of thine] own thousand, shalt thou not take counsel with Turuqan.”

§213 [8r] Again, when Činggis Qahan spake unto the cook Önggür, as he said, “The three Tovyra’ud, the five Taryud, thou, Önggür,

---

13 See §97. This is an allusion to the first time that Jarči’udai came.
14 I.e., Jelme.
15 I.e., “made efforts.”
16 I.e., “steward.”
17 In the continuous translation (YCPS 9.7v6) this name is transcribed Turuqan.
son of Mönggetü Kiyun, with the Čangši'ud and the Baya’ud, ye becoming one giis-een for me, thou, Önggür,

Thou didst not go astray in the mist.
Thou didst not separate thyself in the revolt. [8v]
Thou wast,
Suffering the wet with [me],
Suffering the cold with [me].

Now what favour wilt thou take?,” when Önggür spake, as he said, “If [Činggis Qahan] suffer me to choose a favour, [it is this:] my Baya’ud brethren are scattered and dispersed in each of the divers tribes. If [Činggis Qahan] favour [me], I would collect my Baya’ud [9r] brethren,” [Činggis Qahan] made a decree, saying, “Yea! So collecting thy Baya’ud brethren, command thou a thousand!” Again, when Činggis Qahan made a decree, he made a decree, saying, “Both Önggür and Boro’ul, when ye two cooks distribute food [on] the right and the left sides, [9v]

Not suffering [it] to be wanting unto [those]
who have stood or have sat
[On] the right side,
Not suffering [it] to be wanting unto [those] who have
taken their places in the row or have not
[On] the left side,

if ye twain so distribute, my gullet not choking, [my] mind will be at ease. Now [10r], both Önggür and Boro’ul, departing, go [ye] and distribute food unto many persons.” Saying, “When [ye] sit [on] the seat, sit [ye], overseeing the food [on] the right and the left sides of the great wine table. May ye sit with Tolum and others, setting your faces toward the North,” he pointed out the seat for [them].

§214 [11r] Again, when Činggis Qahan spake unto Boroyul, he made a decree, saying, “My mother getting you four, Šigi Qutuqu, Boroyul, Gücchi, and Kököčü, from the encampments of [other] people, from the ground,

18 See §§207.
When, placing [you] in her legs, she nourished [you], saying [unto herself] that, in pulling [you] by your necks, causing [you] to be equal in stature with a man, in pulling [you] by your shoulders, causing [you] to be equal in stature with a male, she would cause [you] to be companions for us her sons, she nourished [you]. As benefit for having nourished you, who knowest how many benefits and services ye have returned unto my mother? Boroyul, being a companion unto me,

In [127] the swift warfare
Thou didst not suffer [me] to spend the night
empty in a night of rain. In the face of the enemy over against
which we were propped
Thou didst not suffer [me] to spend the night
without broth.

Again bringing down the hating and vengeful Tatar people which had made an end of [our] grandfathers and fathers,

Avenging
The avengement,
Requiting
The requital,

at the moment when [we] were destroying and slaying the Tatar people, by comparing them unto a linchpin when they were being killed, Qargil Sin of the Tatar becoming a robber, going out, moreover, being in a strait, hungering, coming in, entering into the tent, saying unto the mother, 'I am one that

---

20 i.e., "between."
21 i.e., "in order to wash you, dress you, comb your hair, etc."
22 See §824.
23 i.e., "Although one cannot make a fire when it rains, in spite of that, thou didst not let me go hungry."
24 See §116.
seeketh good things,” being told, [13r] ‘If [thou] be one that seeketh good things, sit there,’ at the moment when [he] was sitting at the extremity—at the back of the door—of the bench on the west side [of the tent], Tolui—which [was] five years old—entered [coming] from the outside, and, at the moment when, in running, he was going out and was departing, Qargil Şira, being arisen, [took and] pressed the child in his armpit, and when, going out, he went forward, at the moment when he was feeling and drawing [13v] his knife, Altani, the wife of Boroyul, was sitting on the east side in the tent of [my] mother. With [my] mother’s crying out and saying, ‘[He] hath made an end of the child!’, Altani, following [her], going out with [her], overtaking Qargil Şira, seizing his [14r] braids [of hair 28 with one hand] and seizing with her other hand his hand which was drawing the knife, with [her] pulling [it from him], he lost his knife. At the moment when both Jetei and Jelme were slaughtering a hornless, black ox north of the tent for food, at the cry of Altani, [14v] both Jetei and Jelme, taking [each] an axe in hand, their fists being red [from blood], came, running, and by axe and by knife slew even there Qargil Şira of the Tatar. As Altani, Jetei, and Jelme—all three—disputed with one another the desert for having saved the life of the child, when both Jetei and Jelme spake, they said, [15r] ‘If we had been absent, if, quickly running and arriving, we had not slain [him], what would Altani, a woman, have done? [He] would have done harm unto the life of the child. The desert is ours.’ When Altani spake, she said, ‘If ye had not heard my cry, how [15v] would ye be come? If, when I ran, overtook [him], seized his braids [of hair], and pulled his hand which had drawn the knife, the knife were not fallen, would he not have done harm unto the life of the child, whilst both Jetei and Jelme were arriving?’ When she had made an end of speaking, [16r] [it was agreed that] the desert was [that] of Altani. The wife of Boroyul, becoming a second shaft for Boroyul, was a help unto the life of Tolui. Again, Boroyul, at the moment when [we] were fighting with the Kereyid [at] Qalqaljid Eled, as Ögödei had been shot

29 See Chapter I, note 38.
in his neck vein by an arrow, [16v] as he was fallen [from his horse], Boroyul, lighting off [his horse] over [him], sucking by his mouth his blood which had clotted, at night spending the night with [him], on the morrow causing [him] to ride on a horse, by making [him] which was not able to sit [alone] to ride double, embracing Ögödei from behind, sucking and sucking the blood which had blocked [the wound], being red along the corners of [his] mouth, is come, bringing the life of [17r] Ögödei secure. The benefit for the fact that my mother, in rearing [him], hath suffered, hath been a service unto the lives of my two sons. Boroyul being a companion unto me did not remain behind

From beck and call,
From shout and echo.

[17v] [Even] if Boroyul transgress nine transgressions, let him not be subject to punishment.” Again, he said, “Our daughter seed, [We] shall recompense.”

§215 [19r] Again, he said, “Our daughter seed, [We] shall recompense.”

§216 Again, when Činggis Qahan spake unto Old Man Üsün, he made a decree, saying, “Üsün, lünan, Kökö Čos, and Degei—these four—not hiding and concealing, have been wont to declare what they have seen and [19v] what they have heard.” They have been wont to tell what they have perceived and what they have thought. [After] the principles of the Mongol, [as to] the way of chief, there is a custom whereby one may become a beki. [Üsün] is the seed of the Ba’arın Elder Brother.” [As to] the way

28 This line, identical with that which constitutes §215, seems to be a scribal inadvertence which should be suppressed.

29 In the Altan toböi (novel), however, we read: basa ołimin uruyn [19]-lavan sayurgal öggii-e kenebe. “Again, he said, ‘[We] shall grant favours unto Our daughter seed’.”

Cf. Altan Toböi, Scripta Mongolica I, Vol. I, p. 145, ll. 11-12. By the words ołimin uruyn “daughter seed” Činggis Qahan meant the female members of his family of which the first and the principal ones, of course, were his own daughters.


29 In a letter dated 1 November 1934 the Reverend Antoine Montagny remarked:
“T understand that ‘the Ba’arín elder brother’ is Ba’aridai of §43, who was, as the
of bekī, from among and above Us, let [20r] Old Man Üsün become a bekī. Having raised [him] up as a bekī, [with one's] causing [him], wearing white raiment, to ride [upon] a white gelding,\(^{29}\) causing [him] to sit upon a seat, and serving [him], and, again [with his] considering the year and the month,\(^{30}\) let it so be."

§217 [20v] Again, when Činggis Qahan spake, he made a decree, saying, "Because of the service of the Anda Quyūljar which, in battle, exposing his life, first opened [his] mouth,\(^{31}\) let one receive the 'grant of orphans'\(^{32}\) [21r] unto the seed of the seed.

§218 Again, when Činggis Qahan spake [21v] unto Narin To'oril, son of Čayan Qo'a, [the same] being told, "Thy father, Čayan Qo'a, being zealous, beginning to fight in behalf of me, at the moment when [we] were fighting at Dalan Baljud, was killed by Jamūya. Now let To'oril for his father's sake take the 'grant of orphans,'" when [22r] To'oril spake, as he said, "If [Činggis Qahan] favour [me]—my Negi̇s brethren are scattered and dispersed in every tribe—if [Činggis Qahan] favour [me], [I] would gather my Negi̇s brethren," when Činggis Qahan made a decree, he made a decree, saying, "If it be so, shalt [22v] thou not gather thy Negi̇s brethren and govern [them] unto the seed of the seed?"

Secr. Hist. says, the eponymous ancestor of the Ba'arin (Ba'arin-u ebi̇qe). This Ba'aridai was son of Bodoncar, founder of the family from which Činggis issued, but born of the wife whom Bodoncar had carried off, whereas Činggis descended from Bodoncar by Qabići Ba'satur, son of the principal wife of Bodoncar. Ba'aridai must have been born before Qabići Ba'satur; hence the name of aqa 'elder brother' by which he is designated. That is the way in which I understand the appellation Ba'arin aqa.\(^{33}\)

\(^{29}\) For a parallel case of this "particular privilege" in the Boyda Negi̇i Topi̇n Dalai Manfuri̇i̇i̇n donoy-i tordorqai-a gevğiülçüü Čindanummi erike homeydekeñ oroviba ([The Book] Which is Called the Rosary of Wishing-Stones, Which Clearly Elucidates the Tradition of the Holy Negi̇i̇ Topi̇n Dalai Manfuri̇i̇ Has Taken Its Place [Herein]) cf. Walther Hasenau, op. cit., p. 312, where he states: "The bögä teğiñj rides a white stallion. . . ."

\(^{30}\) To determine what action it might be appropriate to take.

\(^{31}\) See §171. See also §175 for the death of Quyūljar

\(^{32}\) See §§171 and 188 above.
§219 [25r] Again, when Činggis Qahan spake unto Sorqan Šira, he said, "At the time when I [was] little, when Taryutai Kiruluy of the Tayiči'ud, [because I] was envied by [his] brethren, seized [me], then ye, Sorqan Šira, with your sons Čila'un and Čimbai, saying, 'He is envied by his [Tayiči'ud] brethren,"" causing your daughter, Qada'an, to care for [me] [25v], hid [me] and releasing [me], sent me [from thence],"" Being mindful of that your service and goodness, I went, being mindful of [them]

In [my] dreams in the black night,
In [my] bosom in the bright day.""

Ye are come lately unto me from the Tayiči'ud. Now, if I favour you, what favour would [24r] ye love?"" When Sorqan Šira, being with his sons Čila'un and Čimbai, spake, [he said], "If [Činggis Qahan] favour [me], I would that I freely choose an encampment. I would that I freely choose [it], counting the country of the Merkid, [the region of] the Selengge [River], as an encampment. Again, [as to] other favours, let Činggis Qahan know [what they might be]."" When Činggis Qahan spake, he made a decree, saying, "Counting [24v] the country of the Merkid, [the region of] the Selengge [River], as an encampment, choose [ye] even freely an encampment and be [ye], unto the seed of the seed, freemen, causing [your seed] to be quiverbearers and to drink the ötög. Let them not be subject to punishment unto nine transgressions." Again, when Činggis Qahan favoured both Čila'un and Čimbai, he made a decree, saying, "Being mindful of the words which were spoken aforetime of [25r] both Čila'un and Čimbai, how could I forget[70] [them]? Ye, Čila'un and Čimbai, ye twain,

---

" See §§85 above.
" See, however, §§94-97, where (§89) it is specifically stated that it was the sons of Sorqan Šira, Čimbai and Čila'un who, "not loving the word [25v] of their father . . . made their younger sister named Qada'an to care for [him]. . . . ."
" See §201 above.
" The word qanda' (ʔ qanda') is the nommen futuri in ʔ yu of an unattested verb qanda- (ʔ yanda-). Although glossed by the seemingly unintelligible words 準立 的 (men-ni-in) (ʔ "that which stands full"), it would appear from the continuous translation (VCPS §271): 如何命得 (ju-ho wung-te) ("How could I forget?") that qanda- (ʔ yanda-) somehow implies the meaning of "to forget."
If [ye] would speak your thoughts,
If [ye] would request your wants,
tell [ye them] not unto a person [which is] between. By your own bodies and by [your own] mouths

Tell [ye] unto me what [ye] yourselves shall have thought.

Again [26r] he made a decree, saying, "Sorqan Šira, Badai, and Kišiliy, ye freemen, again, when ye are freemen,

Rushing at the many enemies,
If [we] get spoil,
Take [ye] as much as ye can take.
If [we] hunt wild beasts,
Take [ye] as many as ye can kill."

As to Sorqan Šira, he was a bondman of Tödege of the Tayči'ud. As to both Badai and Kišiliy, they were the keepers of horses of [Yeke] Čeren. Now, [with my] causing [you], [by] my support, to be quiverbearers and to drink the ötög, rejoice [ye] as freemen."

§220 [27r] Again, when Činggis Qahan spake unto Naya’a he made a decree, saying, "When Old Man Širgötü " drew nigh unto us with you, his sons Alay and Naya’a, holding Taryutai [27v] Kiriltuy, on the way arriving at Qutuqul Nu’u, then, when Naya’a spake, saying, ‘How shall we go, forsaking and holding our proper qan?,’ not being able to forsake [him], releasing [him] and sending [him away], Old Man Širgötü, coming with his sons, Alay and Naya’a, then, when [28r] Naya’a Bilji’ur " spake, as he said, ‘When laying hand upon our proper qan, Taryutai Kiriltuy, we drew nigh, yet not being able to forsake [him], releasing [him], sending [him away], we came to give [our] might."

"I.e., "in person."
"See §197.
"Širgötü — Širgötu.
"I.e., Naya’a “The Lark.” For the word Bilji’ur, not glossed, see bÜjü’ur, also not glossed, in §77 above and the variant form bÜdu’ur, glossed “lark,” in §180 above.
"I.e., devotion."
unto Činggis Qa’an. As we came, laying hand upon our qan, we said [unto ourselves], §28v ‘We shall be said [to deserve the words]: ‘People which have laid hand upon their proper qan, [here]after how shall they be trusted, these?’’’ [Therefore.] [we] were not able to forsake our qan, then, [when I heard these words,] saying [unto myself], ‘[As to] the reason for which he hath not been able to forsake his proper qan, [it is that] he hath been mindful of the great principle,’ approving his words, [I] said, ‘[I] shall assign [him] unto one affair.’” Now, for Bo’orču, let him govern the ten thousand of the right hand. Giving unto Muqali the title gui ong, [I] have made [him] to govern the ten thousand §29v of the left hand. Now let Naya’s govern the ten thousand of the middle.”

§221 §29v] Again he said, “Let the twain, Jebe and Sübe’etei, command as captains of thousands as many [of those] of theirs as they have gotten and gathered themselves.”

§222 Again, causing to assemble by the shepherd Degei the concealed people,“ he caused [him] to govern a thousand.

§223 [30r] Again he said, “As [subject] people are wanting unto the carpenter Güčügüür, levying* [them] from hence and from thence—from “ the Jadaran, Mulqalqu hath been a ‘companion’ in an upright manner—both Güčügüür and Mulqalqu, together commanding the thousand, take [ye] counsel with each other.”

§224 [30v] Causing to be captains of thousands [those] who had set up the nation with [him] and who had suffered with [him], dividing [the people] into thousands, so as to form thousands, appointing [over them] captains of thousands, of hundreds, and of tens, dividing [the people] into ten thousands, §31r appointing [over them] captains of ten thousands, to the captains of ten thousands and of thousands, unto those unto whom it seemed to be fit that they be given favour, giving favour, unto those for whom it was fit that he make [for them] decrees of favour, making [decrees

*See §149 above.  
* I. e., “let one levy.”

* I. e., unregistered households.  
* I. e., “among.”
of favour], when Činggis Qahan made a decree, he made a decree, saying, "Aforetime [I was wont to have eighty nightguards and seventy guards [which were] dayguards. Now, in the might of Everlasting Heaven, [31v] [my] might and power being increased by Heaven and Earth, at the moment when I have made straight the whole nation and have caused [it] to enter into mine only reins, now for me choose [ye] from the divers thousands dayguards [which are] guards and make [them] to enroll. When [ye] shall make [them] to enroll, when [ye] shall make nightguards, quiverbearers, and dayguards to enroll, make [ye them] to enroll, filling ten thousand." [32r] Again, when Činggis Qahan proclaimed unto the divers thousands a decree that one should choose and enroll the guards, he made a decree, saying, "When one shall enroll guards for Us, when the sons of the captains of ten thousands, of thousands, and of hundreds or the sons of ordinary persons shall enter [into Our service], let one enroll those who have ability and [are] good of appearance—who apparently are apt for serving in Our presence. When one shall enroll the sons of captains [33v] of thousands, let them come [each] with ten companions and bringing with them a younger brother. When one shall enroll the sons of captains of hundreds, let them come [each] with five companions and bringing with them a younger brother. When one shall enroll the sons of captains of tens or when one shall enroll the sons of ordinary persons, let them come [each] with three [33r] companions and also bringing with them a younger brother, and, from [their company of] origin, making ready "horses [to ride on]. When one shall strengthen [on this wise the number of] those whom one shall make to serve in [Our] presence for Us, let one give the ten companions unto the sons of captains of thousands, levying [them] from the thousands and the hundreds from which they originally come. If there be "a part and portion [of goods] given by their fathers, or whatever be the quantity of men and geldings which by [their own] persons [33v] they have gotten and have established [as their own], let one, apart from

" See §202 above.
" I. e., "providing themselves with."
" I. e., "if they have."
their personal part [of goods], levy [beasts to ride and men] according to the measure measured of Us, and let one, so levying [men] and making ready [beasts to ride], give [them unto them]. And let one, after the very same manner, apart [84r] from their personal part of goods, and even so levying, give five companions unto the sons of captains of hundreds and unto the sons of captains of tens as well as three companions unto the sons of ordinary persons.” [Again,] he made a decree, saying, “The captains of thousands, of hundreds, and of tens, and the many [ordinary] persons having suffered [one] to bring this Our decree [unto them] or having heard [it], let the people which shall transgress [it] be subject to punishment. [As to those] people which shall have been made to enter [into] their turn [of service] for Us, if [among them] people which, avoiding [their turn of service], are [84v] not fit look upon their service in Our presence as [too] difficult, enrolling others, we shall punish those persons and shall send [them] unto a distant place out of eye[sight].” He said, “[35r] Let one not stay people which shall say that they would learn to serve inside in Our presence and [for this purpose] come unto Us.”

§225 [35v] According to the fact that Činggis Qa’an had made a; decree, [36r] choosing [them] from the thousands, according to the very same decree, choosing the sons of the captains of hundreds and of tens, bringing [them] forth—aforetme there were eighty nightguards—[one caused there to be eight hundred [nightguards]. He said, “[Over and] above the eight hundred let one fill [the band so that there be] a thousand.” He made a decree, saying, “Let one not stay those who shall enroll themselves in the nightguards.” [36v] He made a decree, saying, “Let Yeke Ne’tūrin be captain of the nightguards and let him command a thousand.” Aforetme he had chosen four hundred quiver-bearers. Choosing [them], he said, “Let Yesūn Te’e, son of Jelme, be a captain of quiverbearers and let him take counsel with Bugidai, son of Tūge.” He made a decree, saying, “When, with the dayguards, [37r] the quiverbearers enroll themselves with

---

**See §§191 and 192 above.**

**This fact has not been previously mentioned in the text.**
[others] within the divers companies, let Yesün Te’e enroll himself, being a captain of one company of quiverbearers. Let Bugidai enroll himself, being a captain of one company of quiverbearers. Let Horquday enroll himself, being a captain of one company of quiverbearers. Let Lablaqa enroll himself, being a captain of one company of quiverbearers. Let [these four], enrolling for to carry quivers [their] divers companies [37v] of dayguards and their quiverbearers, so be [their] captains. Let Yesün Te’e, filling [a band of] the quiverbearers [so that there be] a thousand, be a captain.”

§226 [38r] [Over and] above the dayguards which aforetime had enrolled themselves with Ögele Čerbi,\textsuperscript{1} filling [a band so that there were] a thousand, he said, “From the family of Bo’orču let [38v] Ögele Čerbi command [them].” He said, “One thousand dayguards, from the family of Muqali let Buqa command one thousand dayguards.” He said, “From the family of Ilügei let Alkidai command one thousand dayguards.” He said, “Let Dodič Čerbi command one thousand dayguards. Let Doqolqu [39r] Čerbi command one thousand dayguards.” He made a decree, saying, “From the family of Jürčedei let Čanai command one thousand dayguards. From the family of Alći let Aqųą command one thousand dayguards. Let Arqai Qasar command one thousand dayguards, one thousand chosen ba’atud, and [39v] let them be dayguards on the many\textsuperscript{2} days. On the day of battle let them stand in front and be ba’atud.” There were eight thousand dayguards which came, being chosen from the thousands and thousands. There were two thousand with nightguards and quiverbearers. There were [in all] ten thousand guards. When Činggis Qahan made [40r] a decree, he made a decree, saying, “Let one strengthen the ten thousand guards [which remain] in the presence of Us and let them become the great middle [of the army].”

§227 [40v] Again, when Činggis Qahan, making a decree, appointed those who should be the elders of the four companies of the dayguards, saying, “Let Buqa, commanding one company [41r] of guards, dispose the guards and enter [into] service in the

\textsuperscript{1} See §191 above.  
\textsuperscript{2} I. e., “ordinary.” See Chapter VII, note 30.
guard]. Let Alcidai, commanding one company of guards, dispose the guards and enter into service in the guard. Let Dodačerbi, commanding one company of guards, dispose the guards and enter into service in the guard. Let Doqolqučerbi, commanding one company of guards, dispose \[41v\] the guards and enter into service in the guard," he appointed the elders of the four companies.** When he proclaimed a decree whereby one should enter into his turn of service, he made a decree, saying, "When one entereth into his turn of service, let the chief of the company, mustering the guards which shall have served [their] turn of service with himself, entering into his turn of service, passing three nights, change places with [the company of relief]. \[42r\] If a man of the company neglect [his] turn of service, let one instruct by three strokes of the rod that [man] of the company which shall have neglected [his] turn of service. If the same guard again, a second time, neglect [his] turn of service, let one instruct [him] by seven strokes of the rod. If again the same man, without that [his] body be sick and without consultation [beforetime] with the chiefs of the company, again, if the same guard thrice neglect [his] turn of service, having instructed [him] by \[42v\] thirty seven strokes of the rod—he looketh upon his service at the side of Us as too difficult—[We] shall send [him] out of sight unto a distant place."** He made a decree, saying, "Elders of the companies, cause ye this decree to be heard by the guards at every third turn of service. If they cause it not to be heard, \[43r\] let the elders of the companies be subject to punishment. When they shall have heard the decree, if they transgress [it], if, after the principle of the decree, they neglect [their] turn of service, let the guards be subject to punishment." He said, "Elders of the companies, saying [unto yourselves], 'They have been excelled by us in captaincy,' rebuke [ye] not, without leave from me, my guards which have enrolled themselves [in my guard] equal [unto you]. \[43v\] If one disannul the ordinance, declare [ye it] unto me. If there be those for whom holdeth the rule that they are fit to be beheaded, We shall behead [them]. If there be those

** I.e., Buqa, Alcidai, Dodačerbi, and Doqolqučerbi.

** See also §278 below.
for whom holdeth the rule that they are fit to be beaten, making
[them] to lie down, [we] shall beat [them]. Saying [unto your-
selves], 'We excell [them] in captaincy,' if, laying hand [upon
them], ye smite with the rod my guards equal [unto you], let
one repay strokes of the rod as repayment of strokes of the rod
and [44r] fists as repayment of fists."""

§228 [44v] Again, when Činggis Qahan made a decree, he made
a decree, saying, "My guards are higher than the outward captains [45r] of
thousands. The companions of my guards are higher than the outward captains of hundreds and of tens. If outward captains of thousands, making themselves equal unto my guards and equalizing themselves unto [them], quarrel with [one of]
my guard[s], we shall punish the persons which are captains of
thousands."

§229 [45v] Again, when Činggis Qahan made a decree, when he
proclaimed a decree unto the captains of the divers companies, he
made a decree, saying, "Let the quiverbearers, the dayguards,
[and the cooks], [46r] entering [into their] turn [of service], severally
each in his [own] way, walking the walk of the day," yielding unto
the nightguards at the moment of the sun's having fire," going
out, pass the night. Let the nightguards at night pass the night
at [the side of] Us. Let the quiverbearers depart, rendering unto
the nightguards quivers, and the cooks bowls and vessels. [On
the morrow, in the morning] let the quiverbearers, the dayguards,
and the cooks which shall have passed the night outside, until
We eat [Our] broth, [46v] sitting at the kirū'e "" and telling [it]
unto the nightguards, when [We] finish eating [Our] broth, return,
the quiverbearers unto the quivers, the dayguards unto their
seats and the cooks unto their bowls and vessels. Let those who
shall enter [into] divers turns [of service], in the same and same

"" Cf., e.g., Leviticus XXIV §20: "Breach for breach, eye for eye, tooth for
tooth: . . . ."
"" i.e., outside of the imperial guard.
"" I.e., performing the duties of the day as opposed to those of the night which
are performed by the nightguards.
"" I.e., when the sun is at the point to set, the moment when it appears on the
horizon as if it were on fire.
"" This word is glossed: "place where one assembles the horses." See also Chapter
IV, note 5.
manner, so do according to this regulation.” [47r] He said, “After
that the sun hath set, seizing [whatsoever] person shall go
athwart at the back side or at the front side of the ordo, the
nightguards seizing [him], passing the night, on the morrow, let
the nightguards ask his words. When the company shall change
[places] with [the company of relief], let the nightguards [of the
company of relief] remit their tablets and come in. Let the night-
guards which shall change [places with the relief] and [47v] shall
go out also remit [them], go out, and depart.” He said, “The
nightguards lying round about the ordo at night, [ye] night-
guards which shall have stood, stopping the door, cleaving
the people which shall enter at night in such a way that their
heads are sundered and [cleaving them] so that their shoulders
fall, cast [them] away. [48r] If at night there come people
which have an urgent message, let them tell [it] unto the night-
guards. Let one let [them] tell [the message] north of [my] tent,
while standing together with the nightguards.” He made a
decree, saying, “Let not any one sit [upon] a seat above the
nightguards. Let not any one enter without word from the
nightguards. Let not any one walk at the upper side of the
nightguards.” [48v] Let one not walk between the nightguards.
Let one not ask the number of nightguards. Let the nightguards
seize the people which shall walk at the upper side of the night-
guards. Let the nightguards seize the people which shall walk
between. The person which shall have asked the number, the
nightguards, let the nightguards seize that person, the gelding
which he shall have ridden that very day—[together] with the
saddle and [together] with the bridle—[49r] together with the
garment which he shall have worn.” Eljigedeci, although he was
worthy of confidence, at eventide, adventuring to walk at the
upper side of the nightguards, how was he seized by the night-
guards? 

**I.e., on the outside. For another example see §446 below.

**I.e., “saying that they have an urgent message unto me, Činggis Qahan.”

**Even though Činggis Qahan be inside his tent, he can hear perfectly what is
said outside. See also §169 above.

**I.e., at a place which is between the nightguards and the tent.

**I.e., between the nightguards and the tent.

**See §273 below.

**See §273 below.
§230 [1v] When Cinggis Qahan spake, he made a decree, saying,

"Mine elder nightguards
Which, [in] the cloudy night,
Lying round about
My tent with a hole at the top,
Making [me] to sleep [in] peace and quiet,
Have [thus] made [me] to attain unto this throne.\(^1\) [1v]

My happy nightguards
Which, [in] the starry night,
Lying round about
My palace tent
Have not made [me] to be affrighted within the coverings
Have [thus] made [me] to attain unto the high throne.

My sincere-hearted nightguards
Which, in the snowstorm which is moving,
In the cold which is making [one] to shiver,
In the rain which is pouring [down],
Standing, not taking [their] rest,
Round about my tent with [a frame of] lattice,
Have caused [my] heart to be at peace
Have [thus] made [me] to attain unto the throne of joy.

My trusty nightguards
Which, in the midst of enemies which are making trouble,
Round about [2r] my tent with a band of felt \(^2\)
Have, not winking an eye,
Stood, staying [their] assault.

---

\(^1\) See §205 above.

\(^2\) "In effect, the word íps designates the broad band of felt which protects on the outside the bottom of the tent by encompassing it." Cf. Antoine Mounier, op. cit., p. [187].
My vigilant nightguards
Which, at the moment when the quivers of
birch-bark [of the enemy]
Hardly moved,*
Stood without delay!

My nightguards of swift gait,
Which, at the moment when the quivers of willow-wood
[of the enemy]
Hardly moved,
Stood not too late! [2v]

My happy nightguards,
[Henceforth] call [ye yourselves] the ‘elder nightguards.’

Call [ye] the seventy dayguards which are entered with Ügöle Çerbi the ‘great dayguards.’ Call [ye] the ba'atud of Arqai the ‘elder ba’atud.’ Call [ye] the quiverbearers such as Yesëin Te’e and Bugidai the ‘great quiverbearers.’”

§ 281 [3v] He said, “Of my ten thousand guards [which are] private servants [which remain] in the presence [of] my person, which are come, being chosen as private servants from the ninety five thousands, [ye, my] sons which long [here]after shall have sat on my throne, unto the seed of my seed, [of] these guards, being mindful [even] as of a remembrance bequeathed [by me] and, not causing [them] to murmur, excellently take [ye] care of [them]. Will these ten thousand guards not be called [4r] my gods which bring happiness?”

§ 282 Again, when Činggis Qahan spake, he said, “Let the nightguards look to [4v] the maids [which are] stewards of the ordo, the ‘sons of the tent,’* the keepers of camels, and the keepers of oxen and let them take care of the tent-carts of the ordo. Let the nightguards collect the spears at the foot of* the standards and

* See §105.
* See §105.
* I. e., menservants.
* This interpretation of doro as a postposition was suggested by the Reverend Antoine Montaivet in an oral communication of 8 September 1953.
drums. Let the nightguards also collect the bowls and vessels. Let the nightguards oversee our drink and food. And let the nightguards oversee and cook the thick flesh and food. If drink and food be wanting, [We] shall seek [them] from the nightguards which shall have been made to oversee [them]."

He said, "When the quiverbearers distribute drink and food, let them not distribute [them] without leave from the nightguards which shall have been made to oversee [them]. When they distribute food, let them first distribute [it], beginning from the nightguards." He said, "Let the nightguards order the going in and the coming out at the palace tent. At the door let the doorkeepers of the nightguards stand [in] the tent at hand. Let two from [among] the nightguards enter and hold in hand the great wine table." He said, "Let the keepers of the encampment from [among] the nightguards go and pitch the palace tent." He said, "At the moment when We are falconing or hunting, let the nightguards go, together falconing and hunting with Us. Let them, measuring their half, place [it] at the carts."[10]

§288 [3v] Again, when Činggis Qahan spake, he said, "If the person of Us do not go [to] war, let the nightguards not go to war apart from Us." He made a decree, saying, "Having let themselves be told thus [by Us], let the stewards which command soldiers, which, transgressing the decree, [7r] being jealous of the nightguards, make [them] to go [to] war, be subject to punishment." He said, "Ye say, 'How is it that the soldiers of the nightguard are not made to go [to war]?' The nightguards watch over my 'golden life.' At the moment when [I] go falconing and hunting, they labour with [me]. Being made to oversee the ordo, [7v] at the moment when it journeyeth or at the moment when [it is] at rest, they take care of the carts. Is it easy to pass the night watching over my person? Is it easy to take care of the tent-carts

[10] By this is meant that half of the total number of the nightguards must stay near the carts, whereas the other half must accompany Činggis Qahan. See also §278 below.
at the moment when the 'great a'uruk' journeyeth or at the moment when it sitteth? Saying [unto Ourselves], 'The nightguards so have double and quite distinct tasks,' such [9r] is [the reason for which We] say, 'Let them, apart from Us and separately, not go to war.'"

§234 Again, when he made a decree, he said, "Let [some] from [among] [8v] the nightguards together hear judgments, judgments with Sigi Qutuqu." He said, "Let [some] from [among] the nightguards take care of the quivers, bows, breast-plates, and weapons and distribute them [unto the others]. Let them, collecting [some] from [among] the geldings, go, lading the nets [for taking prey]." He said, "Let [some] from [among] the nightguards, with the stewards, distribute the satin." He said, "When the quiverbearers and [9r] the dayguards proclaim the encampment, let the quiverbearers such as Yesün Te'e and Bukidai and the dayguards such as Alčidai, Ögele, and Aqtai go [on] the right side of the ordo." He said, "Let the dayguards such as Buqa, Dodai Čerbi, Doqolqu Čerbi, and Čanai go [on] the left side of the ordo." He said, "Let the ba'atud of Arqai go in front [9v] of the ordo." He said, "Let the nightguards, having taken care of the ordo tent-carts, go in the neighbourhood of the ordo, [on] the left side." He appointed [him], saying, "Let [10r] Dodai Čerbi constantly watch over all the dayguards which are guards, round about the ordo, the 'sons of the tent' of the ordo, the keepers of horses, the shepherds, the keepers of camels, and the keepers of oxen, and the ordo." He made a decree, saying, "Let Dodai Čerbi, being constantly [there], behind the ordo, go,

Eating remnants [of blades] of grass [for food],
 Burning dried dung [for fuel]."


See note 8 above.
§236 Sübe'etei Ba'atur—[he] with an iron cart—going a warfare, pursuing the sons such as [11r] Qutn and Čila'un of Toyo'ta of the Merkid, overtaking [them] at the Čui River, destroyed [them] and came [back].

§237 Jebe, pursuing Güčüllüg Qan of the Naiman, overtaking [him] at the Sarı-g Qun, destroyed Güčüllüg and came [back].

§238 [12r] The idu'ud 14 of the Ul'ud sent ambassadors unto Činggis Qahan. When he came, petitioning by the two ambassadors, Adkiray and Darbai, he came, petitioning, saying,

"[Even] as having seen Mother Sun, 15
When the clouds become clear;
[Even] as having found the water of the river,
When the ice becometh clear,

I greatly rejoiced, when I heard [13v] the name and the fame of Činggis Qa'an. If [thou], Činggis Qahan, favour [me], if I get [were it but one]

From the rings of [thy] golden girdle;

[were it but one]

From the shreds of [thy] crimson garment, 16

I will become thy fifth son and give [my] might [unto thee]."
At that word, [13r] when Činggis Qahan, favouring [him], sent, speaking in answer, when he sent, saying, "I shall also give [unto him] my daughter. Let him become my fifth son. Let the idu'ud come, having taken gold, silver, [little] pearls, [big] pearls, brocades, damasks, and silks," the idu'ud rejoiced, saying, "[I] have been favoured," and [13v] having taken gold, silver, [little] pearls, [big] pearls, silks, brocades, damasks, and satins, the idu'ud came and presented himself unto Činggis Qahan. Činggis Qahan favoured the idu'ud and gave [unto him] Al Altun.

14 See §199 above.  
15 I.e., "Yellow Cliff."  
16 Although glossed as the name of a person, idu'ud, in reality, is the Turkish title idaq qut "Holy Luck."  
17 See Chapter II, note 8.  
18 Cf. St. Mark VI §56: "and besought him that they might touch if it were but the border of his garment."
§239 [14r] In the year of the hare [1207] Činggis Qahan made Joči to set forth with the soldiers of the right hand unto the People of the Forest. Buqa went, guiding [him]. Quduqa Beki of the Oyirad, before the ten thousand Oyirad, submitting himself, came in [unto Joči]. Coming, [14v] leading Joči, guiding [him] unto his ten thousand Oyirad, he made [them] to submit themselves at Siyżid. Joči, having brought into subjection the Oyirad, Buriyad, Baryun, Ursud, Qabqanas, Qangqas, and Tubas, when he arrived at the ten thousand Kirgisud, the chiefs of the Kirgisud, Yedi Iñal, Al Di'er, and [15r] Öre Beg Digin, chiefs of the Kirgisud, coming in to submit themselves, coming, having taken white gerfalcons, white geldings,17 and black sables, presented themselves unto Joči. From the Sibir,18 Kesdiyim,19 Bayid, Tuqas, Tenleg,20 Tö'elles,21 Tas, and Bajigid22 hither, Joči, subjugating the People of the Forest, coming, having taken the captains of the ten thousands and of the thousands [15v] of the Kirgisud and the chiefs of the People of the Forest, suffered [them] to present themselves unto Činggis Qahan with the white gerfalcons, with the white geldings, and with the black sables. Going to meet Quduqa Beki of the Oyirad, saying, "He is come, aforetime submitting himself and [16r] leading [hither] his ten thousand Oyirad," he favoured [him] and gave Çeçeyigen unto his son, unto Inalci. He gave Huluiqan, daughter of Joči, unto Töröliči, elder brother of Inalci. He gave Alaqa Beki unto the Önggud. When Činggis Qahan, favouring Joči, spake, he made a decree, saying, "Eldest of my sons, being [16v] but issued from in the tent,23 thou hast been one of whom the way [is] good."24 Not wounding or not making to suffer men or geldings in the lands in which [thou]

17 See Chapter I, note 46.
23 I.e., "having but attained to manhood." See also §277: "issuing [but] once from in the tent."
24 I.e., "thou hast had good luck."
art gone, thou art come, having brought into subjection the fortunate as People of the Forest. I will give the people unto thee."

§240 [17v] Again he made Boroyul Noyan to go a warfare unto the Qori Tumad people. As Daiduqul Soqor, chief of the Tumad people had died, his wife Botoqui Taryun [18r] was governing the Tumad people. When Boroyul Noyan arrived, three men departing from the great army to go in front, at eventide, not perceiving, as they were going along a path in the difficult forest, being robbed in the rearward by their watchmen, stopping the path, [the watchmen] seized and killed Boroyul Noyan. Knowing that the Tumad [18v] had killed Boroyul, as Činggis Qahan, being exceeding wroth, was ready to set forth himself, both Bo'orçu and Muqali did advise so that Činggis Qa'an halted. Moreover, when he appointed Đörbei Doysin 1 as of the Đörbed, he made a decree, saying, "Setting the army in order with severity, praying Everlasting Heaven, [19r] assay to bring the Tumad people into subjection." When Đörbei set the army in order, first making [one] to spread abroad [something empty 2] at the ways, paths, and passes along which the army would [be expected to] go and over which the watchmen would [be expected to] keep watch along the ways on which the hula'an buqa 3 went—when he made an ordinance unto the soldiers, as for all the men of the army, if [their] hearts were to fail [them], in [respect of each] man, making [him] to carry ten rods on the back [19] to beat [him, if he refused to go forward], making [one] to prepare axes, bills, saws, chisels, and weapons of war for the men—along the way on which the hula'an buqa went, making [one], felling [them], to hew and to saw the trees which stood at the way, making a way, when he went out upon the mountain, [as one might say,] from on the hole at the top of the tents 4 of the Tumad [20r] people, at the moment when, unawares, they were sitting, feasting, he spoiled [them].

---

1 I.e., fortunate, because they now belong to the Mongols.
2 I.e., Đörbei "The Fierce."
3 I.e., false rumors.
4 The term hula'an buqa, glossed "name of a wild beast" appears literally to mean "red ox." Inasmuch as the term is only transcribed, not translated, in the continuous translation (YCP S 10.307v), I have preferred to leave it untranslated. It may designate a kind of elk.
5 For this figure see §§108 and 109 above.
§241 [20v] Beforetime both Qorći Noyan and Quduqa Beki, being
seized by the Tumad, were there at [the side of] Botoqui Taryun.
As for the manner in which Qorći [21r] had been seized, at the
moment when Činggis Qahan had made a decree, saying, "Let
him take thirty women which are beautiful maidens of the Tumad
people," as he was going, saying, "I shall take the maidens of
the Tumad," the peoples which formerly had submitted them-
selves, moreover, made a rebellion and seized Qorći Noyan." When
Činggis Qahan knew that Qorći [21b] had been seized by
the Tumad, when, saying, "Quduqa knoweth the ways of the
People of the Forest," he sent [him], Quduqa Beki also was
seized. When he had made an end of bringing the Tumad
people into subjection, because of the bones [22r] of Boroyul, he gave
[unto his sons] a hundred Tumad. Qorći took thirty maidens.
[22r] He gave Botoqui Taryun unto Quduqa Beki.

§242 [22v] Činggis Qahan making a decree, saying, "I shall part
and give the people unto the mother, unto the sons, and unto the
younger brethren," when he gave [them unto them], saying, "She
who, assembling the nation, hath suffered is the mother." The
eldest of my sons is Čorći. The youngest of my younger brethren
[23r] is Ođdinım, unto [his] mother, together with the part of
Ođdinım, he gave ten thousand people. The mother, [although]
considering the number too few, did not utter [her voice]. Unto
Čorći he gave nine thousand people. Unto Ča'adai he gave eight
thousand people. Unto Îgödei he gave five thousand people.
Unto Toluı he gave five thousand [23v] people. Unto Qasar he
gave four thousand people. Unto Alcidai he gave two thousand
people. Unto Belgütei he gave one thousand five hundred people.
Saying, "Da'aritai hath been together with the Gereyid," when
he said, "I shall destroy [him] out of the sight of the eyes," when
Bo'orçu, Muqali, and [24r] Sigi Qutuqu—[all] three—spake, being
told [by them],

**See §307.**
**This fact has not been previously related.**
**This fact has not been previously related.**
**I.e., death. See §460 above.**
**This is an allusion to the achievement of Hə'elun Əjin, related in §73 above.**
"[It is] like quenching one's own fire,
[It is] like destroying one's own tent.

As remembrance of thy good father there is left behind [for thee but] thine only paternal uncle. How shalt [thou] forsake "[him]? Inasmuch as he did not understand [what he was doing]," as he let him be. Let the youngest brother of thy good father together with [his kinsmen] let the smoke of the encampment whirl up," and being talked with

Clearly
So as to snatch
The smoke from his nose,"
saying, "Yeal That [sufficeth]," thinking on [his] good father, at the words of the three, Bo’orçu, Muqali, and Šigi Qutuqu, he appeased himself.

§243 [25v] "I, giving unto mother and unto Odêtin ten thousand people, [for them] have appointed from the chiefs Güçu, Kököçü, Jungsi, and Qorqasun—all four. [I] have appointed for Joći ğunan, Môngke’urr, and Kete—all three. I have appointed for Ça’adai Qaračar, Môngke, and İdöyudai—all three."

Again, when Činggis Qahan spake, he made a decree, saying, "Ça’adai is hard. He hath a fine nature." Let Köke Ės be at [his] side [26r] evening and morning and tell [unto him] what he hath thought. For Öğüdei he appointed both İlũge and Degei. For Tolui he appointed both Jadai and Bala. For Qasar he appointed Jebke. For Alćiidae he appointed Ça’urqai.

§244 [26v] The sons of Father Mündig of the Qongqotad were seven. The middlemost [27r] of the seven was Kököçü Teh Teng-

"I. e., kill.
"I. e., "inasmuch as he did that unintentionally."
"Cf. Psalm XVIII §8 "There went up smoke out of his nostrils, . . . ."
"I. e., a nature given to making fine distinctions. In other words, he is a man who busies himself with minutiae or minor details. Hence, he is "narrow-minded."
"See, e. g., §254 below, for an example of the eloquence of Köke Ės.
geri. Those seven Qongqotan made a league with one another and smote Qasar. When Qasar kneeled to Činggis Qa’an, saying, “[I] have been smitten by the seven Qongqotan which made a league with one another,” whilst Činggis Qahan was wroth in [respect of] other [things], as he spake, [27v] when Činggis Qahan, in his wrath, spake unto Qasar, being told, “Thou hast been [doing nothing other] than [saying] that [thou] wouldst not be overcome by [any] living thing. How hast thou been overcome?”44 Qasar, having shed tears, arose and departed. Qasar, being vexed, came not [unto Činggis Qahan] three days. Then when Tēb Tenggeri spake unto Činggis Qa’an, being told, “The decree [28r] of Everlasting Heaven, heavenly foretokens concerning the Qan do speak. Once they say, ‘Let Temüjin hold the nation.’ Once they say, ‘[Let] Qasar [hold the nation].’ If [Činggis Qahan] surprise not Qasar, there is no knowledge [as to what may come to pass],” Činggis Qahan, setting forth the [self]same night, when he went for to seize Qasar, both Gučü and Kököčü declared [it] unto the mother, saying, “He is gone [28v] for to seize Qasar.” The mother, having [thus] known [it], it having been [yet] night, straightway harnessing a white camel, departed in a black cart, travelling all the night. As, with the rising of the sun, she arrived, at the moment when Činggis Qahan, binding the sleeves of Qasar, taking his hat and girdle,45 was questioning [29r] his words, being come unto by the mother, Činggis Qahan was terrified and was afraid of the mother. The mother, being furious, arriving, being lighted from the cart, the mother herself having undone and loosed the sleeves of Qasar which had been bound [by Činggis Qahan], giving unto Qasar his hat and girdle, the mother being wroth, not being able [29v] to subdue her fury, sitting with legs crossed, bringing forth her two breasts, making [them] to spill over upon [her] two knees, when she spake, she said, “Have [ye] seen [them]? The breasts which ye have sucked are these. These qadalun da’un,46 they have bitten their afterbirth47 and have cut their navel.”48 What hath Qasar done? Temüjin [30r] was wont to empty this one

44 I. e., “How hast thou now been overcome by the seven Qongqotan?”
45 See Chapter II, note 47.
46 This expression, not glossed, is not elsewhere attested.
47 See §78.
48 I. e., have cut their umbilical cord.
breast of me. Qači’un and Odčigin, the twain together, were wont not to empty one breast. As for Qasar, emptying the two breasts each of me, causing [me] to be at ease so that my bosom became broad,” he was wont to cause [my] bosom to be broad.

Thereby the able
Temüjin of me
[Is] one having the ability of bosom.

Because Qasar of me
[Is] one having the ability [30v] of shooting
and of might,
Those who went out, shooting arrows with [him],
He was wont to shoot and to cause to submit themselves.

Those who went out, being affrighted,
He was wont to shoot with distant arrows and to cause
to submit themselves.

Now, saying, ‘[I] have destroyed the people [which are] enemies,’
ye are not able to see Qasar.” When, after letting the mother appease herself, [31r] Činggis Qahan spake, saying, “Suffering the fact that mother was wroth, and being afraid, [I] have been afraid.
And being ashamed, I have been ashamed,” and, saying, “We shall withdraw,” he withdrew. Not letting [it] be known by the mother, stealthily taking the people of Qasar, he gave unto Qasar [only] a thousand four hundred people. Such [was] the manner in which the mother, [thus] knowing [it], [31v] in that thought went straightway [unto old age]. Jēbke of the Jalayir then, going out in fright, fled away into Barγuγin.

§245 [33r] After that, the peoples of the nine tongues assembled themselves in [the service of] Teb Tenggeri and from the kirü’e

---

*I. e., they did not have so great an appetite as Temüjin.
*I. e., relaxed.
*I. e., “beth ability of intellect.”
*I. e., “with the people of Činggis Qan who pursued them in order to bring them back.”
*I. e., She died soon after.
*I. He belonged to Qasar. See §187: “They gave Jēbke unto Qasar.”
*I. e., peoples of the nine diverse languages.
of Činggis Qu’an many went so far as to assemble themselves in [the service of] Teb Tenggeri. At [their] so assembling, the peoples subject to Temüge Odčigin [also] went unto Teb Tenggeri. Odčigin Noyan sent his messenger named Soqor [33v] for to request his people which was gone. When Te[bc] Tenggeri spake unto the messenger Soqor, saying, “Odčigin and ye, [ye] twain, are [ones] having a benefit,” 25 smiting his messenger Soqor, made [him] to return on foot, making [him] to carry his saddle on [his] back. Odčigin, [forasmuch as] he had suffered the fact that his messenger Soqor, [after Teb Tenggeri] had smitten [him], was come [back] [34r] on foot, on the morrow when Odčigin himself, going unto Teb Tenggeri, spake, being told, “When I sent my messenger Soqor, smiting [him], ye did send [him back] on foot. Now I am come for to request my people,” the seven Qongqotan, compassing Odčigin from hence and from thence, saying, “Thy sending thy [34v] messenger Soqor is right,” when he was being [so] done unto, [apart] from seizing [him] and [apart] from smiting [him], being afraid, when Odčigin Noyan spake, he said, “My sending the messenger [was] wrong.” When the seven Qongyotan spake, saying, “If [it be] wrong, kneel, repenting,” they made [him] to 35r kneel behind Teb Tenggeri. And his people being not yet given [unto him], when Odčigin, on the morrow early, entering at the

25 The words Odčigin ta jirn ēlēten boljwu’i, as they stand, mean “Odčigin and ye, [ye] twain, are [ones] having messengers.” Such a statement, however, is not in consonance with the context of the rest of the passage.

In a letter dated 2 December 1964 the Reverend Antoine Mortier proposed the following solution:

“Ēlēten must be a textual error. The Altan tobō (nova) has the reading ēlētan instead of ēlēten. Cf. Altan Tobō, A Brief History of the Mongols, Vol. II, p. 40, II. 8-7. Ēlētan means ‘having a benefit (= conferring a benefit).’ There is a great chance that ēlētan is the original reading. Then it must be understood that Teb Tenggeri scoffs at Odčigin and at Soqor, just as he will the next day at Odčigin alone, when he will say in irony to the latter: Soqor ēlēten ēlpū ēmū jēb bus ‘Thou hast been right to send thy messenger Soqor.’ He confiscates the horse ridden by Soqor and, feigning to consider it as a gift or a present which Soqor had come to present to him, he said: Odčigin to jirn ēlēten boljwu’i. ‘Odčigin and ye, both of you, ye are benefactors’ (= Odčigin and thou, I thank you for the gift).

“Ēlēta kūmū is still what is said today for ‘benefactor.’

“I incline very much toward this solution, not only because it is the reading which the Altan tobō (nova) presents, but also because an error ēlēten for ēlētan is rather easily explained. Ēlētan and ēlēten resemble each other graphically.”
moment when Chinggis Qa’an was not yet risen up, at the moment when he was yet in bed, having wailed, kneeled and spake, and having said, “The people of the nine tongues having assembled themselves in [the service of] Teb Tenggeri, I did send a messenger named Soqor [35v] for to request from Teb Tenggeri my people subject to me. Suffering the fact that they had smitten my messenger Soqor, had made [him] to carry the saddle on [his] back, and had sent [him back] on foot, when I myself am gone for to request [my people], by the seven Qongqotan compassing [me] from hence and from thence and making [me] to repent, I was made to kneel behind Teb Tenggeri,” [36r] he wailed. At the moment when Chinggis Qa’an had not yet uttered [his voice], Börte Újin, rising up and sitting in the bed, covering her breast with the edge of the covering, see that Odčikin was wailing, having shed tears, when she spake, having said, “[They are] Qongqotan which have done what, those?” Laterly they made league with one another and [36v] smote Qasar. Now, again, why make they this Odčikin to kneel behind them? What manner of behaviour is it? They thus secretly harm even these thy younger brethren [which are] like [unto] cypresses and pines. And verily, afterward,

When thy body like [unto] an old tree
Falleth down, [37r]
Thy peoples like [unto] entangled hemp 44

by whom will those let govern?

When thy body like [unto] the base of a pillar
Tumbleth down,
Thy peoples like [unto] a flock of birds 46

by whom will those let govern? Peoples which thus secretly harm thy younger brethren like [unto] cypresses and pines, [37v] how will [those] suffer that my three [or] four little ‘bad [ones]’ 57 govern whilst they grow up? Those are Qongqotan which have done what, those? 48 Letting it so be done unto thy younger brethren by those, how art thou seeing [that],” Börte Újin shed

44 I. e., “What have those Qongqotan done?”
47 See §254 below. 48 I. e., “what have those Qongqotan done?”
tears. At this word of Börte Üjin, when Činggis Qahan spake unto Odōgin, he said, "Teb Tenggeri cometh now. [38r] Howsoever thou may perform, so well as thou art able, decide thou [how thou shouldst perform]." At that, Odōgin being risen up, having wiped his tears, going out, stood [at hand], with three strong men in readiness. While it was [yet but] a moment, Father Münglig, coming with his seven sons, the seven each entering, with Teb Tenggeri sitting on the [38v] right side of the wine table, Odōgin seizing the collar of Teb Tenggeri, saying, "Thou wast making me to repent yesterday. Let us prove ourselves [at wrestling]," holding his collar, drew him toward the door. Teb Tenggeri, in the face of Odōkin, seizing the collar, wrestled with [him]. The hat [39r] of Teb Tenggeri, at the moment when he wrestled with [him], fell at the head of the firepan. Father Münglig, taking his hat, scenting [it], placed it in his bosom. When Činggis Qahan spake, he said, "Going out, dispute [ye] with each other the might of the strongman." When Odōgin, pulling Teb Tenggeri, went out, the three strongmen which beforetime had been ready between [39v] the threshold of the door having, in the face of [him], seized Teb Tenggeri, pulling [him], going out, breaking his back asunder, casting [him] unto the extremity [of the row] of carts of the left side, when, Odōgin entering, spake, as he said, "Teb Tenggeri was making me to repent. As I said, 'Let us prove ourselves [at wrestling],' not being willing, [40r] making a device, he lieth down. He was a companion which had a measure," Father Münglig understanding, having shed tears, when he spake, with [his] saying, "I have been a companion

From [the time when] the brown Earth was
[only] the size of a clod;
From [the time when] the sea and the rivers
were [only] the size of a stream,"

his six Qongqotan sons, [40v] stopping the door, standing round about the firepan, when their sleeves had been rolled up, Činggis Qahan being afraid, being pressed [by them], having said, "Withdraw! I shall go out," with [his] going out, quiverbearers and

**See §45.
** I.e., outside?
** I.e., "which was measurable." See Chapter VI, note 3.
dayguards stood round about Činggis Qa’an. Činggis Qahan seeing that, having broken [his] backbone, [41r] one had cast Teb Tengeri unto the extremity [of the row] of carts, making [one] to bring a gray tent from behind, making one to place [it] over Teb Tengeri, saying, “Harness the harnessings. We shall journey,” he journeyed from thence.

§246 [42v] When, having covered the hole at the top of the tent in which one had placed Teb and [43r] having stopped [its] door, one had caused people to watch over [it], the third night, at [the moment when the brightness of] day [was] yellow,42 he opened the hole at the top of the tent and came out together with [his] body. When one examined, it was established that verily [it was] Teb [at] its 66 [place] there.44 When Činggis Qahan spake, he said, “Because Teb Tengeri had laid hand upon my younger brethren and because [to sow discord among them] he had uttered among my younger brethren a slander without [43v] fundament, he was no more loved by Heaven, and his life, together with his body, was carried away.” When Činggis Qahan then reviled Father Mūnglig, saying, “Not staying the nature of your sons, as [ye and your sons] are begun to think to equal [me], [44r] ye have attained unto the head of Teb Tengeri.45 If [I] had perceived such a nature of you, ye would have been caused to be ones having the manner [of punishment] of Žamuya, Altan, Qučar, and others,” [so] reviling Father Mūnglig, making an end of reviling [him], furthermore, saying, “If one undo at eventide that which one hath said in the morning and [44v] if one undo in the morning that which one hath said at eventide, certainly one may be talked of to his shame. Aforetime [my] word was pledged. Yea! That [sufficeth]!,” he favoured [him] and, furthermore, [his] anger was abated. He said, “If [ye] had stayed your nature [which is] beyond [measure], who in the seed of Father Mūnglig would have equalled [me]?.” One having caused Teb Tengeri to vanish away, [45v] [as to] the Qongqotan, the confident countenance diminished.46

42 I.e., “at twilight.”
44 I.e., “the tent’s.”
46 I.e., “above the hole at the top of the tent.”
45 I.e., “Ye have paid for it with the head of Teb Tengeri.”
46 See §206 above.
§247 [1r] After that, Chinggis Qahan in the year of the sheep [1211] set forth against the Kitad people. Taking Wuju,1 passing by Hünegen Daba’an,2 taking Sündüwu,3 he sent the twain, Jebe and Güygüneg Ba’atur, as vanguards. [1v] Arriving [at] Čabčiyal,4 the Čabčiyal pass being defended, then when Jebe spake, saying, “When, enticing them and making [them] to remove, I shall make [them] to come, then I shall try [them],” he returned. It being returned [by him], the soldiers of the Kitad, saying, “Let us pursue [him],” draw nigh in pursuit till the valleys and the mountains become full [of them]. Arriving at the spur of Sündüwu [2r] Jebe turned about backward, rushed upon [them], and overcame the enemies which were drawing nigh in succession. Chinggis Qahan—[his] middle army following hard after [Jebe]—making the Kitad to remove, crushing the bold and courageous soldiers of the Jüyin of the Qara Kidač and of the Jürčed, slaying [them] until Čabčiyal, till they stood like rotten trees,5 Jebe, taking [2v] the gate of Čabčiyal, wrestling the passes, passing by [them], Chinggis Qahan pitched [at] śira Degtür.6 Assaulting Jungdu7 and, sending troops unto divers towns and [unto] cities, he made [them] to assault. He sent Jebe, making [him] to assault the city of Dungčang.8 Jebe, arriving at the city of Dungčang, [3r] assaulting [it], [but,] not being able to take [it], returning, arriving at a place [at a distance] of six days [of marching], causing [the enemy] to be unaware, moreover, turning about, [his soldiers]
having [each] a hand led horse, at night marching all night, arriving, at the moment when [the enemy] was unaware, he took the city of Dungčang.

§248 [4r] Jebe, taking the city of Dungčang, returning, coming [back], joined himself unto Činggis Qahan. When Jungdu was attacked, when Ongging Čingsang,* the great chief of the Altan Qan, recommended unto the Altan Qan, when he recommended, saying, "[It is] the destiny and the time of Heaven and Earth." Is the time when one shall exchange the great throne arrived? The Mongγol [4v] coming exceeding mightly, overcoming our bold and courageous weighty soldiers of the Jüyin of the Qara Kitad and of the Jürčed, have slain till they have destroyed [them]. And they have wrested and taken the trusty Cabčiyal. Now, if we, again setting [our] troops in order, send [them] forth and if again they be overcome by the Mongγol, they will certainly disperse themselves [5r] unto their divers cities, those. Moreover, if they suffer themselves to be gathered by us, not being willing, becoming enemies against us, they will not be companions, those. If the Altan Qan favour [us], we shall, in the present time, submitting ourselves, take counsel 11 with the qan of the Mongγol. If, entering into counsel, the Mongγol withdraw themselves, [5v] after that [we] have made [them] to withdraw themselves, again we shall then counsel other thoughts. And, it is said, 'The men and the geldings of the Mongγol, finding the country not fit [for themselves], are consumed by pestilence.' Let us give a maiden unto their qan. Let us heavily send out and give unto the men of [their] army gold, silver, satins, and goods. How may it be known whether they will [6r] not enter into this our counsel?' The Altan Qan, approving these words of Ongging Čingsang, saying, "Let it, then, be thus," submitting himself, sending out to Činggis Qa’an a daughter named Gungju,12 sending out from Jungdu for the men of the army gold, silver, satin, goods,

10 See §194: "It is the time and the destiny of the Mongγol."
11 I.e., "negotiate with."
12 I.e., Kung-chu 公主 which, in reality, is not a personal name, but the Chinese word for “Princess.”
and possessions, [6v] letting be decided by the might [of each of them how much] and as much as [their beasts] could carry, he came, sending Onggeng Čingsang unto Činggis Qahan. Being come unto [by them] to submit themselves, Činggis Qahan, entering into their counsel, made the soldiers which, assaulting, were descended unto the divers towns to return and he withdrew. Onggeng Čingsang, accompanying Činggis Qa'an until [7r] the spurs named Mojiu \(^{16}\) and Wuju, returned. Our soldiers lading [their beasts with] satins and goods as many as they could carry, tied their burdens with silks and went their way.

§249 [8r] By that fact of having set forth,\(^{14}\) he departed unto the Qašin people. As, betaking himself unto [them], he arrived, Burqan [Qan] of the Qašin people, saying, “Submitting myself, becoming thy right hand, [I] shall give [my] might \(^{18}\) unto thee,” brought forth and gave unto Činggis Qa’an his daughter named Čaqa. Again, when Burqan Qan spake, he petitioned, saying, [8v] “Hearing the name and the fame of Činggis Qa’an, we have been afraid. Now, thy majestic person arriving, being come unto [by thee], we have been afraid of [thy] majesty. Being afraid, we Tang’ud people, have said, ‘Becoming thy right hand, [we] shall give [our] might [unto thee].’ When [we] give [our] might,

[We] are ones which have a stable encampment;
[We] are ones which have pounded city walls.\(^{16}\)

Being companions, [9r]

At the moment when one campaigneth a swift campaign,
At the moment when one fighteth a sharp fight,
[We] shall not be able to haste unto the swift campaign.
We shall not be able to fight in the sharp fight.

If Činggis Qa’an favour [us], we Tang’ud people, raising [them] in the shelter of the tall deterstum,\(^{17}\) [9v] shall bring forth many

---

\(^{12}\) L. i.e., Mo-chou 莫州.
\(^{14}\) L. i.e., "On the occasion of that same expedition."
\(^{16}\) L. i.e., devotion.
\(^{18}\) See §203 below.
\(^{17}\) L. i.e., Lasiaerotics splendidis. Cf. Antoine Montalet, Dictionnaire ordos 1.141a.
camels and, causing [them] to become qa, shall give [them unto him]. Weaving woolen garments and making satins, [we] shall give [them unto him]. Teaching birds which one may cast [aloft], assembling [them], [we] shall cause [one] to send the best of them [unto him].” Speaking, keeping to his word, levying camels from his Tang’ud people, bringing [so many of them] that one was not able to drive [any more of them], he gave [them unto Činggis Qa’an].

§250 [10v] Činggis Qahan, at that fact of having set forth, making the Altan Qa’an of the Kitad people to submit himself, took many satins; making Burqan of the Qaśin people to submit himself, he took many camels; Činggis Qahan, at that fact of having set forth, in the year of the sheep [1211], making [11r] the Altan Qan of the Kitad people, named Aqutai, to submit himself and making Iłuqu Burqan of the Tang’ud people to submit himself, returning, pitched [on] the Sa’ari Steppe.

§251 [11v] Again, after that, his many ambassadors having Žubqan at their head, [ambassadors] which he had sent to make peace with Čau Gon, being hindered by the Altan Qa’an, [named] Aqutai, of the Kitad people, Činggis Qahan in the year of the dog [1214] again set forth against the Kitad people. When he set forth, saying, “After having submitted themselves, how [12r] may they hinder the ambassadors which [I] have sent unto Čau Gon?” Činggis Qahan, betaking himself [unto] the Tunggon Pass, made Jebe [to betake himself] by [the way of] Çabçiyal. The Altan Qan, knowing that Činggis Qa’an [was betaking himself] by [the way of] the Tunggon Pass, suffered [his] soldiers to be commanded by

---

18 I. e., government property.
20 I. e., falcons.
22 I. e., “on that expedition.”
23 I. e., Chaoyuan, the “Emperor Chaoyuan” or Ning-tsung 宋宗 (1125-1232) of the Southern Sung, 蠶 being an abbreviation of kuan-chia 官家 “government,” “emperor,” a colloquial epithet of the Sung period. The theory of the Chinese scholar Wang Kuo-wei 王國維 (1877-1927) that 蠶 (Kwaan) is a phonetic error for 擴 (K’uo), the personal name of Ning-tsung seems less plausible, although it appears to have been accepted by Paul Pelliot on page 150 of his article “L’édition collective des œuvres de Wang Kuo-wei” in Toung Pao 98 (1929), 113-182.
25 I. e., Tung-kuan 演闤.
Ile, Qada, and Höbölütür—all three—and, saying, "[Our] troops stopping [the passage], setting in order the Hula’an Degelen," putting [them] in the van, [18v] contesting the Tunggon Pass, suffer [ye them] not to pass the pass,"—the troops hasting—he sent Ile, Qada, and Höbölütür—all three. When Činggis Qahar arrived at the Tunggon Pass, the soldiers of the Kitad, saying, "[Let us defend our] soil," came to stay [his] passage. Činggis Qahar, joining battle with Ile, Qada, Höbölütür—all three,—made [18r] Ile and Qada to remove." Both Tolui and Čügü Gürgen, rushing upon [them] from athwart, making the Hula’an Degelen to withdraw themselves, arriving, making Ile and Qada to remove, overcoming [them], slew the Kitad till they stood [as] rotten trees." Altan Qan, knowing that his Kitad troops had suffered [their] slaying and making an end of [them], [18v] going out from Jungdu, fleeing, entered the city of Namging." When their soldiers which remained grew lean and died, among themselves they together ate the flesh of men. Saying, "Both Tolui and Čügü Gürgen have done well," Činggis Qahar exceedingly favoured both Tolui and Čügü Gürgen.

§259 [14v] Činggis Qahar being come down Qosiwu," pitched [on] the Sira Ke’er" of Jungdu. Jebe, breaking down the gate of Čabōyal, making the soldiers which were holding Čabōyal to remove, came and joined himself unto Činggis Qahar. When the Altan Qan went out from Jungdu, within Jungdu he appointed Qada, making [him] to be liušīs,"[15r] and departed. When

**The words Hula’an Degelen, glossed by the single word 種 (chung) (“sort”) and transcribed, but not translated in the continuous translation (YCPS, Heii 1.14r2), literally mean: “Red Garment.” That they designated a category of soldier is clear from the words 軍人 (chün-je’n) (“soldiers”) which immediately follow the transcribed words in the continuous translation. The term is comparable to that of “Red Coats” (= British soldiers) in American history.

**I. e., to give ground.

**See note 6 above.

**I. e., Nan-ching 南京 or “Southern Capital,” also known as Pien-liang 津梁 or K'ai-fang 開封.

**I. e., Ho-lui-wu 河西務.

**I. e., "Yellow Plain.”

**I. e., liu-chou 留守 (“[he who] stays behind to guard”).
Činggis Qahan made [one] to count the gold, silver, goods, satins, and goods and things of Jungdu, he sent the cook Önggür, Arqai Qasrar, and Sigi Qutuqu—all three. Saying that these three are drawing nigh, Qada, going to meet [them] face to face, having taken in hand satins having gold and having patterns, [15v] going out from within Jungdu, came face to face. When Sigi Qutuqu spake unto Qada, [16r] saying, "Beforetime the goods of this Jungdu and the [self]same Jungdu were [the possessions] of the Altan Qan. Now Jungdu is [the possession] of Činggis Qa'an. The goods and satins of Činggis Qa'an, behind [his] back, how, stealing and bringing [them], givest thou [them]? I shall not take [them]." Sigi Qutuqu took [them] not. Both the cook Önggür and Arqai took [them]. These three counted the goods and the things of Jungdu and came [back]. Then Činggis Qahan asked of Önggür, Arqai, and Qutuqu—all three—saying, "What hath Qada given?" When Sigi Qutuqu spake, he said, "He hath brought and given [16v] satins having gold and having patterns. When I spake, saying, 'Beforetime this Jungdu was [the possession] of the Altan Qan. Now it is become [the possession] of Činggis Qa'an. Thou, Qada, stealing the goods of Činggis Qa'an behind [his] back, how givest thou [them]?, I did not take [them]. Both Önggür and Arqai took the [goods] which [17r] he gave [unto them]." Činggis Qahan then exceedingly rebuked both Önggür and Arqai. Exceedingly favouring [him], saying, "Thou, Sigi Qutuqu, hast been mindful of the great principle,"  as he made a decree, saying, "Shalt thou not be

Mine eyes for seeing,
Mine ears for hearing?"  

§238 [18r] The Altan Qan, entering Namging, himself, submitting himself, making obeisance, sent his son named Tenggeri—[him] with a hundred companions—saying, "Let him be a dayguard unto Činggis Qahan." Being submitted unto by him, when Činggis Qahan, saying, "I shall withdraw," then withdrew by [the way

as I. e., the principle that everything belongs to the qan.

\[\text{See §238 and 205 above.}\]

\[\text{A euphemism for "hostage."}\]
of Čabćiya, when he sent Qasar along the Sea "with the troops of the left hand," he sent, saying, "Pitch [ye at] the city of [18v] Buiging.". Making the city of Buiging to submit itself, going yonder, passing Wuqanu of the Jürćed, if Wuqanu think rebellion, fall [ye] upon [him]. If he submit himself, passing their cities of the frontier, going along the Ula and Na'u rivers, passing over up along the Ta'ur River, come [ye], [19r] joining forces at the 'great a'uruy.' He sent with Qasar from the chiefs, Jürćedei, Alći, and Tolun Čerbi—all three. Qasar, bringing into subjection the city of Buiging, making Wuqanu of the Jürćed to submit himself, having brought into subjection the cities which were on the way, Qasar, coming up along the Ta'ur River, came to pitch at [19v] the "great a'uruy."

§254 [20r] After that, Činggis Qahan—his hundred ambassadors having Uquna at their head being hindered and being killed by the Sarta'ul people—when Činggis Qahan spake, saying, "How was my 'golden tether' broken by the Sarta'ul people," at the moment when he set forth, saying, "I shall set forth against the Sarta'ul [20v] people,

Avenging
The avengement,
Requiting
The requital

of my hundred ambassadors having Uquna at their head," then when Yesü Qadun, petitioned, recommending unto Činggis Qa'an, as she petitioned, saying, "The Qahan,

Passing high passes,
Passing over wide rivers,
Campaigning a long campaign,
Hath thought of setting in order his many peoples.

**I.e., the Gulf of Chih-li.**

**I.e., "the left wing."**

**I.e., Pei-ching 北京 or "Northern Capital" (in Manchuria), glossed Ta-sing 大事, the name by which it was known during the Yuan and Ming dynasties. Cf. Lucien Grousset, *Dictionnaire historique et géographique de la Mandchourie* (Hongkong, 1934), pp. 737 and 881-882.

**See also §256. "The 'golden tether' seems to be the bond of suzerainty which, besides commercial relations, the Mongolian envoys had had mission to establish between Činggis and the sovereign of Hwârem." Cf. Antoine Montagné, *op. cit.*, p. [209].
[Howbeit.] for the living things which have been but born [in the world], there is no eternity.

When thy body like [unto] 21r a great tree
Falleth down,
To whom wilt thou bequeath thy peoples
like [unto] stalks of hemp? 37

When thy body like [unto] the base of a pillar
Tumbleth down,
To whom wilt thou bequeath thy peoples like [unto]
a flock of birds? 38

Whom of thy four sons [which are] küülü'üd which are begotten [of thee] wilt thou name? [I] have recommended [unto thee] that of us which, at the moment when we considered [it], hath been comprehended by the sons, by the younger brethren, by the many common people and also by us, [21v] bad one. 39 Let the [imperial] decree decide [which of them it shall be]," when Činggis Qahan made a decree, having said, "And [even] if she be [but] a lady," the words of Yesüü [are] righter than right. Whosoever [ye be], younger brethren and sons, and ye, Bo'orču, Muqali and others, [22r] [ye] have not thus recommended [unto me]. I also was forgetting [it] as if [I] would not follow the forefathers. [I] was sleeping as if [I] would not be seized upon by death," he said, "The eldest of my sons is Joči. What sayest thou? Tell [it]." Before that Joči had uttered [his voice], when Ča'adai spake, with [his] saying, "When [thou] sayest that Joči [22v] should tell [it], speakest [thou thereby], charging Joči [with the succession]? How shall we let ourselves be governed by this čul (?čül) uļja'ar 41 of the Merkid?" Joči being arisen, when, holding to the

37 See §245 above.
38 See §246 above.
39 I. e. "by myself." "Yesüü means that, if she dared to request of Činggis that he designate one of his sons who, in case of misfortune would have to succeed him, she did it only after the entourage of the sovereign, all the people and she herself had deeply reflected whether there was cause or not to submit such a request and they had understood that it concerned a matter which would suffer no delay." Cf. Antoine Montalet, op. cit., p. [188].
40 I. e., a woman.
41 For a discussion of these obviously abusive words, not glossed and not elsewhere
collar of Ča'adai, he spake, he said, "[I] have not [ever] been said [to be] other [than my brethren] by the father the Qan. How distinguishest thou me? By what ability [art] thou more [able than I]? [23r] Only by thy hardness " [art] thou, perhaps, more [able than I]. If, in striving to shoot farther, I am excelled by thee, I shall cut off and cast away my thumb. If, in wrestling, I am defeated by thee, I shall not arise from the ground where [I] shall be fallen. Let the decree of the father the Qan decide [which of us it shall be]." At the moment when both Joči and Ča'adai are standing, holding each other by the collar and at the moment when Bo'orę is pulling Joči by the arm and Muqali is pulling Ča'adai by the arm, Činggis Qahan is listening and is sitting speechless. Then, when Kökō Čos, standing [on] the left side, spake," he said, "Ča'adai why makest thou haste? Thy father the Qan, among the sons, had hoped for thee." [24r] Before that ye were born,

The Heaven with stars
Was turning round about.
The many peoples were at strife."
Not entering into their beds,
They were spoiling one another.

The earth with crust
Was turning backward and forward.
The whole nation was at strife.
Not lying down in his covering,

attested, cf. Antoine Mostaert, op. cit., pp. [185]-[187], n. 167. That they probably mean "bastard, son of the Merkid" (cf. Antoine Mostaert, op. cit., p. [186]) is suggested by the vigorous defense of the honor of Börte by Kökō Čos (see below) in reply to Ča'adai who, in calling Joči a šul (?šul) udja'ur, not only evidenced disbelief of his elder brother's legitimacy, but also indirectly insulted his own mother, Börte.

44 I.e., a bad, not a good quality.
45 Kökō Čos, it will be recalled, had been ordered by Činggis Qahan to be near Ča'adai evening and morning in the capacity of an advisor. See §243 above.
46 I.e., "Among the sons it was of thee that thy father the Qan had conceived hopes." Cf. Antoine Mostaert, op. cit., p. [206].
47 Cf. II. Samuel XIX §9: "And all the people were at strife throughout all the tribes of Israel, . . . ."
The one was assaulting the other."
At such a time," 
She "did not desire [it].
It was come to pass at the moment when [24v] the one 
encountered the other [with weapons in hand].
She did not steal away, [fleeing away from 
home].
It was come to pass at the moment when 
the one was fighting the other.
She was not in love [with another man].
It was come to pass at the moment when the 
one was killing the other.

Thou speakest so as to harden the 'butter affection' " and so as 
to sour the 'milk heart' " of thy mother, the holy Qadun.

From the warm [womb] 
Suddenly [issuing] were [25r] ye [—thou and 
Joči—] not born from the [self]same belly?

From the hot [womb] 
Suddenly [springing] are ye [—thou and Joči—] 
not issued from an only womb?

If [thou] cause to rebuke [thee] 
Thy mother which hath borne [thee] from her heart, 
Her affection [for thee] 
Waxing cold, 
[Even] if [thou] appease [her], it will not do.

"Such was the anarchy which had preceded the birth of the sons of Šingis Qahan. 
In this connection, Antoine Moustier, op. cit., p. [108], remarked: "By the words 
Kudai tengen kerdija bülse; Kuri paqen kerdija bülse 'the starry heaven was 
turning on itself', 'the earth with epidermis was turning and returning.' Kökö-toos 
means that the country was full of troubles and that, even the most stable of every-
thing, heaven and earth, was in movement, that is to say, that all was upside down 
and that there were no longer government nor laws."

" "When thy mother was abducted by the Medjid." Cf. Antoine Moustier, op. cit., 
p. [207].
"I. e., "soft (= warm) affection."
"I. e., "Börte.
"I. e., "sweet (= kindly) heart."
CHAPTER XI

If [thou] cause to murmur [against thee]
Thy mother which hath borne [thee] from [her] belly,
Her murmuring [against thee],
[Even] if [thou] make [it] to cease, it will not do.
When your father the Qan
Established the whole nation,

at the time when,

Tying his black head to [his] saddle,
Pouring his black blood into a great leathern bucket,\textsuperscript{a}
Not winking his black eyes,
Not putting his flat ear at a pillow,
Making a pillow of his sleeve,
Spreading the skirt of his garment [for a mattress],
Quenching his thirst with his spittle,
Eating the flesh betwixt his teeth for supper,

he was pressing forward till the sweat of [his] forehead attained
unto the soles [of his feet] and till the sweat of [26r] the soles [of
his feet] ascended unto [his] forehead and was diligently applying
himself, when your mother, together [with him], toiled and when,

\begin{itemize}
  \item Putting [her] \textit{boyta} [on her head] so as to
    make [it] fast,
  \item Girding herself so as to tuck up her skirt,\textsuperscript{b}
  \item Putting [her] \textit{boyta} [on her head] so as to make
    [it] firm,
  \item Girding herself so as to tighten her waist,
  \item She raised you up, hers,
  \item While she swallowed [her food],
  \item Giving [unto you] her half [of it],
  \item And, as [having compassion] she was obstructed
    as to the gullet,\textsuperscript{b}
\end{itemize}

\textsuperscript{a} "Koö-töa means that, in founding the empire, Chinggis lived continually in
danger of death: 'His head was no longer found on his neck, but he had attached it
to his saddle as he did with his baggage, and he could lose it at any instant; his
blood no longer flowed in his veins, but he had poured it into a bucket, and it
risked being shed at any moment.' Antoine MONTART, op. cit., p. [300].
\textsuperscript{b} See §74 above.
\textsuperscript{b} See §213 above.
She gave [unto you] [26v] her all
And she [herself] went empty.
Pulling you by the shoulders,
[Saying unto herself,] 'How shall I make [them]
  to be equal [in stature] with males?';
Pulling you by the neck,
Saying [unto herself], 'How shall I make [them] to
  be equal [in] stature with men?';""
Cleansing your buyi,""
Making you to lift up your heels [whilst teaching
  you how to walk],

she made [you] to attain

Unto the shoulders of the males,
Unto the cruppers of the geldings,

[27r] and [yet] now thinketh she not [unto herself], saying, 'I
shall see the happiness of you, mine'? The holy Qadun of us [in
raising you up] had a heart

  Bright like the sun,
  Wide like a lake.""

§255 [28r] Then, when Činggis Qan spake, he made a decree,
my sons, is it not Jöči? [Here]after say [ye] not so." At this word,
when Ĉa'adai, smiling, spake, he said, "Not speaking [concerning]
Jöči's [being] mighty nor the answer [to give in respect] of [his
supposed] ability [I shall but say]:

That [prey] which one hath killed
[But] with [his] mouth,
If one [wish to] lay it [on his beast], it
  will not do.
That [prey] which one hath made to die
[But] with [his] words,

** See §214 above.
** This word, not glossed, is not elsewhere attested.
The eldest [29r] of the sons are the twain, Joči and we. "We shall, associating ourselves, give [our] might to the father the Qan. We shall cleave asunder the one of us which shall have avoided [his duty]. We shall cleave in twain our heels of the one of us which shall be fallen behind. Ögödei is honest. Let us say Ögödei. Ögödei being at the side of the father the Qan, if [the latter] make [him] to recognize the precepts of the hat [of which] the appearance [is] great, it will do." At this word, when Činggis Qahan spake, he said, "Joči, what sayest thou. Speak!" When Joči spake, [30r] he said, "Ča'adai hath spoken it. The twain, Ča'adai and we, shall together give [our] might [unto him]. Let us say Ögödei." When Činggis Qahan made a decree, having said, "[To go] so far as to associate yourselves, what is it?" Mother Earth is broad. The rivers and waters are many. Making broad the encampments [which are] like [such as easily] separate themselves and making [you each] to rule over a realm, we shall separate you," having said, "Both Joči and Ča'adai, keep to your word.

Suffer yourselves not to be derided
By people.
Suffer yourselves not to be laughed
[to scorn] [30v]
By men.

---

"See §199 above. In quoting this saying, Ča'adai answers the boastful words of Joči in §264 above: "If, in striving to shoot farther, I am excelled by thee, I shall cut off and cast away my thumb. If, in wrestling, I am defeated by thee, I shall not arise from the ground where I shall be fallen." Ča'adai means that Joči's boasting is in vain so long as Joči has not vanquished him in reality, just as to be able to load game on a beast or to skin it, it is not adequate merely to say that one has killed, for one must have killed it in reality. Cf. also Antoine Montenar, op. cit. p. [128]."

"I.e., "I."

"I.e., devotion."

"I.e., the sign of imperial authority. See Chapter II, note 67."

"As seen from afar."

"I.e., "If our father teach him the duties of the station of qan, it will do."

"I.e., "I."

"I.e., "What reason would there be for you to cooperate, by staying here to govern the people?"
Formerly both Altan and Qučar pledged [their] word like this,\textsuperscript{44} but, because they did not keep to their word, how were they done unto? How were they made to be?\textsuperscript{45} Now, [some] from [among] the seed of both Altan and Qučar, together with you, we shall separate. [31v] Seeing those, how will ye be negligent?\textsuperscript{46} he said, "Ögödei, what sayest [thou]? Tell!" When Ögödei spake, he said, "If, the father the Qahan favouring [me], I am told, 'Speak,' I shall speak my what? How shall [I] speak, saying, 'I cannot.' I shall say, 'I shall be diligent according to [mine] ability.' Long [here]after [31v], indeed, if, among my seed, there be born [those so void of valour that],

If one wrap [them] in green grass,
They will not be eaten by an ox;
If one wrap [them] in fat,
They will not be eaten by a dog,\textsuperscript{47}

will they [not] miss an elk [which appeareth] breadthwise [as well as] a rat [which appeareth] lengthwise?\textsuperscript{48} I say so much as this of mine. What else shall I speak?\textsuperscript{49} [32r] At this word, when Činggis Qahan made a decree, he said, "If Ögödei would speak such words, it will do." Again he said, "Tolui, what sayest [thou]? Tell!" When Tolui spake, as he spake, saying, "I, being in the presence of mine elder brother which the father the Qahan hath named,

Making [him] to remember that which he shall have forgotten, [32v]
Making to awake [him] which shall be fallen asleep,\textsuperscript{50}

\textsuperscript{44} See §188 above.
\textsuperscript{45} See §188 above.
\textsuperscript{46} I. e., "The very sight of those peoples who belonged to Altan and Qučar will remind you that you cannot do as those two did."
\textsuperscript{47} See note 73 below.
\textsuperscript{48} In a letter dated 30 December 1956 the Reverend Antoine Maspéon remarked that: "The figure is taken from a hunter so unskilled that he misses beasts easy to shoot as well as those which one shoots only with difficulty."
\textsuperscript{49} See §300 above.
Becoming

A ‘companion of the [word] “yea,”’ 
A ‘whip of the chestnut [coloured] horse,’ 
Falling not behind from the ‘ yea,’ 
Missing not from the rank,

[I] shall for [him]

Campaign a long campaign,
Fight a short fight,”

when Činggis Qahan, approving, made a decree, having made a decree, saying, “Seed of Qasar, make one of you to govern. [33r] Seed of Alčidai, make one of you to govern. Seed of Odčiγiγi, make one of you to govern. Seed of Belgüitei, make one of you to govern. So thinking, making one of my seed to govern, not violating my decree, if ye destroy [it] not, ye will not err and ye will not miss. If the seed of Ögödei be born [so void of valour that],

[33v]
If one wrap [it] in green grass,
It be not eaten by an ox;
If one wrap [it] in fat,
It be not eaten by a dog,”

will there not be born among my seed [even] one [which may be] good?”

§256 [33r] When Činggis Qahan set forth and when he sent ambassadors unto Burqan of the Tang’ud people, as he sent, saying,

“*I.e., “a companion of the word by which one expresses his consent.” In other words, “I shall keep to the promise which I promised.” See Chapter III, note 16.
“*I.e., “I shall be the whip by which the chestnut-colored horse will be made to advance.” See Chapter III, note 17.
“*I.e., “Once I shall have said, ‘Yes,’ I shall keep to my word.”
“*As remarked by Antoine Montaer, op. cit. p. [168], n. 154: “This saying quoted by Činggis still lives in the dialects. The Ülemiški ügen-i ügedese, a collection of sayings and proverbs collected by Oyumbiliq of the Çaqar in collaboration with Naundalai of the Jaarq banner of the Ordos and published in 1948 in Nanking, gives it on page 9 under the following form: Ebenin-dü boyobați über singelikü üge, ügekei-dü boyobați noqazi singelikü üge. ‘One envelopes it in grass in vain, an ox does not [even] scent it; one envelopes it in fat in vain, a dog does not [even] scent it.””
"Thou hast said, 'I shall be [thy] right hand.' My 'golden tether' being broken by the Sarta'ul people," "I have set forth to take account of [him]. Set [thou] forth, being [my] right hand," [35v] before that Burqan had uttered [his voice], first, when Aṣa Gambu spake, saying, "Since [his] might is not able [to overcome others], why [go] so far as to become qan?," not adding troops [unto those of Činggis Qahan], speaking great words, he sent [back the ambassadors]. Then, when Činggis Qahan spake, saying, "How could [we] have been thus spoken [unto] by Aṣa Gambu?," saying, "[As for the best] of the [divers] devices [considered], [36r] if [we] sent unto them, then betaking ourselves circuitously, [we] would have what difficulty? [But,] at the moment, indeed, when we betake ourselves unto other people, yea, that [sufficeth]! If I be protected by Everlasting Heaven, if I come [back], strongly pulling [in] the 'golden reins,'" "then, indeed, let that be [done]."

§87 [36v] In the year of the hare [1219], when, passing by Arai," he set forth against the Sarta'ul people, when Činggis Qahan, taking Qulan Qatun "from the qatun, [37r] went a warfare, from the younger brethren he assigned Odčin Noyan unto the "great d'uruy" and set forth. He sent Jebe as vanguard. He sent Sūbe'-eeti as succourer of Jebe. He sent Toqčar as succourer of Sūbe'-eeti. When he sent these three, he sent, saying, "Go outside. Go out to the yonder side of the Sultan," and, [37v] waiting until We arrive, assault [him] from your side." Jebe—that [one]—going out, passing the cities of Qan Melig," not touching [them], passed by outside. Behind him, Sūbe'-eeti after the same manner, not touching [them], passed by. Behind him, Toqčar robbed the frontier cities of Qan Melig and [38r] spoiled his husbandmen. Qan Melig, saying, "My cities have been robbed," removing in revolt, joined himself unto Jalalding Soltan." Both Jalalding Soltan and Qan

** See §85 above. See also §86 below.
" See §87 below.
** See Chapter VIII, note 2.
" I.e., the daughter of Dayir Usun of the Qo'as Merkid. See §107 above.
" I.e., Jalalding Soltan mentioned below.
" I.e., M(a)l(i)k Xan or Amin al-M(u)lk.
** I.e., J(a)l(a)l al-Din S(u)l(a)k.
Melig set forth against Ćinggis Qa’an. In front of Ćinggis Qa’an, Šigi Qutuq went as vanguard. [38v] Standing in array with Šigi Qutuq, both Jalalding Soltan and Qan Melig overcame Šigi Qutuq and, at the moment when, overcoming [him] until they arrived at Ćinggis Qahan, they were going forward, Jebe, Sübe’etei, and Toçuqar—all three—entering behind both Jalalding Soltan and Qan Melig, moreover, overcoming [them], having slain [them], overcoming them, not suffering [them] to join forces in the cities of Buqar, Semisgab, and [39r] Udarar, when, pursuing [them], they suffered the fact that they went unto the Šin River, as they began to enter, hurling themselves into the Šin River, their many Sarta’ul perished there in the Šin River. Both Jalalding Soltan and Qan Melig, saving their lives, fled away [39v] up along the Šin River. Ćinggis Qahan departing up along the Šin River, going, spoiling Badkesen, reaching the Eke Stream and the Ge’ün Stream, pitched [on] the Baru’an Plain. Sending Bala the Jaliyar, making [him] to pursue both Jalalding Soltan and Qan Melig, exceedingly favouring both Jebe and Sübe’etei, saying, “Jebe, thou [40r] hadst the name Jiryo’adai. Coming from the Tayi’iud, thou art become Jebe.” Toçuqar, by his own will, robbing the frontier cities of Qan Melig, made Qan Melig to revolt. Making [this a matter of] ordinance, [we] shall behead [him],” making an end of [so] saying, moreover, not beheading [him], exceedingly rebuking [him], punishing [him], made [him] to descend from his [40v] commanding an army.

81 I. e., B(u)ñakā. 82 Although I transcribe this name as it appears in the text, it is an obvious error for Semisgan attested in 80v4 below. On page 159 of his review of Erich HAENSCHE’S “Die letzten Feldzüge . . .” (see Chapter VIII, n. 2) Paul PELLiot remarked: “The transcription supposes simply ‘Semisgan’; I shall show elsewhere how Sănigšag must have been, by graphic alteration, from Sănigšag = Sànīg-kståw, Samarkand.” The name Sànīg-kståw is Turkic and means “Fat City.” 83 I. e., Utrár (-Ôtrâk). 84 I. e., the Sindh or Indus. 85 I. e., B(a)ñāzān. 86 I. e., “Mother Stream.” 87 I. e., “Mare Stream.” 88 I. e., “P(a)rwan Plain.” 89 Jalaytai is a variant of Jalaytai. See §340 below. 90 See §147 above.
§258 [41r] And so Činggis Qahan returning from the Barula Plain, sent the three sons, Joči, Ça'adai, and Ögödei, saying, "Passing over the Amui River with the soldiers of the right hand, pitch [ye at] the city of Ürümgeči." He sent Tolui, saying, "Pitch [ye at] the many cities having Iru and Isebūr at their head." Činggis Qahan himself pitched [at] the city of Udirar. When the three sons, Joči, Ça'adai, and Ögödei, sent petitioning, as they sent petitioning, saying, "Our armies are completely assembled. We have reached the city of Ürümgeči. According to the words of whom of us shall we act?" when Činggis Qahan made a decree, he sent, saying, "Act [ye] according to the words of your [brother] Ögödei."

§259 [42r] And so Činggis Qahan, bringing into subjection the City of Udirar, removing from the city of Udirar, pitched [at] the city of Semisagab. Removing from the city of Semisagab, he pitched at the city of Buqar. Then Činggis Qahan, awaiting Bala, the ridge of Altan Torqan, summering [at] the summer house of the Sultan, sent messengers unto Tolui. As he sent, saying, "The year is become hot. The other armies are pitching. Join thou thyself unto Us," Tolui taking cities such as Iru and Isebūr, breaking the city of Sisten, at the moment when he was breaking the city of Çüğêren, returning, being come, pitching, joined himself unto Činggis Qahan.

---

ii Barula is an obvious error for Baru'an found in §257 above. See note 81 above.
iii I.e., the Amu Darya or Oxus.
iv I.e., wing.
v I.e., G (u) rgân.
 vii This unquestionably is an error for *Nisêbûr, i.e., Nîṣâpur.
 vii Udirar - Udirar in §257 above.
ix Udirar - Udirar (§257) - Udirar (§258).
 x The text has Uduber, an obvious error for Udurar which occurs immediately above.
 xi See note 75 above.
 xii This is glossed "place-name."
 xiii I.e., "the weather."
 xiv I.e., Sistân.
§260 [44r] The three sons, Johi, Ca’adai, and Ögödei, bringing into subjection the city of Örünggeći, parting the one unto the other the peoples of the cities all three, did not bring forth a part for Činggis Qa’an. When these three [44v] sons came to pitch, Činggis Qahan, rebuking the three sons, Johi, Ca’adai, and Ögödei, for three days did not suffer [them] to present themselves. Then, when Bo’orçu, Muqali, and Šigi Qutuqu—all three—petitioned, as they petitioned, saying, “Making the sultan of the Sarta’ul people which had not submitted themselves to stoop down, we have taken their cities and [45r] people. The city of Örünggeći which, being parted, is taken and the sons which part and take [it] all are [possessions] of Činggis Qa’an. Our might being increased by Heaven and Earth, at the moment when we have made the Sarta’ul people to stoop down so much as this, we, thy many men and geldings, [45v] are rejoicing and . . .105 Why is the Qahan thus wroth? The sons, perceiving their wrong, have been afraid. Let them learn their after[math]. [We] fear lest the princes become negligent [as to] their nature.106 If [thou] favour [them] and if [thou] suffer [them] to present themselves, will it [not] do?,” Činggis Qahan being pacified, suffering the three [46r] sons, Johi, Ca’adai, and Ögödei, to present themselves, when he rebuked them,

Quoting
Old words,
Citing
Ancient words,107

chiding [them]

Till they almost sank into the earth [at the place] where they were standing:

105 The word maqalju, not glossed, is the converbum imperfecti in -ju of a verb maqal-; not elsewhere attested.
106 In his letter of 30 December 1954 the Reverend Antoine Montazem remarked: “The sense is: ‘We fear that, if you treat them so harshly, the princes may be discouraged and lose the seal to fulfill their duty of which they have given evidence up to the present.’”
107 See §78 above.
Till they were not able to wipe the sweat of their foreheads,\textsuperscript{108}
at the moment when he was proclaiming by rebuke and by admonition, when Qorgai Qorqi, Qortayar Qorqi, and Cormaqtan Qorqi—these [46v] three quiverbearers—petitioned unto Chinggis Qa'an, when they petitioned, saying, "At the moment when, even as gray falcons but enter into training, the sons are learning to go a warfare but so much as this, breaking the spirit of the sons, why rebuke [thou] thus as if in heapes?\textsuperscript{109} We fear lest the princes, being afraid, become negligent [as to] their thoughts. From [the place] where the sun setteth unto [the place] where the sun riseth, there are enemy peoples. [47r] When, provoking [us], [thou] sendest us, thy 'Tbodid dogs,'\textsuperscript{110} enemy people, we—[our] might being increased by Heaven and Earth—gold, silver, satins, possessions, [subject] people and folk shall bring for thee. If [thou] say, 'Which people?' [47v] [one] saith, '[In] this west there is he who calleth himself the Qaliqa Soltan\textsuperscript{111} of the Baytad\textsuperscript{112} people.' [We] shall go a warfare against him," the Qahan, abating [as to his anger], being pacified at these words, when Chinggis Qa'an, approving, made a decree, favouring the three quiverbearers, Qorgai, Qortayar, and Cormaqtan, [he said],"Let both Qorgai of the Adargid and Qortayar of the Dolonggir be at [48r] my side." He made Cormaqtan of the Òteged to go a warfare against the Baytad people, against the Qaliqa Soltan.

§281 [49r] Again he made Dorbei Doy¿in of the Dorbed to campaign against Aru,\textsuperscript{113} Maru,\textsuperscript{114} and the city of Abtu\textsuperscript{115} of the Madasari\textsuperscript{116} people between both the Hindus people and the Baytad people.

\textsuperscript{108} Because there was so much of it.
\textsuperscript{109} I. e., "with volubility." See §41 above. The three quiver-bearers mean that Chinggis Qa'an uttered a continuous stream of maledictions.
\textsuperscript{110} I. e., "Tibetan dogs."
\textsuperscript{111} I. e., Nâṣir-i-Sultân, caliph of Baghdad.
\textsuperscript{112} I. e., Baghdad.
\textsuperscript{115} This place has not yet been identified.
\textsuperscript{116} These people have not yet been identified.
§262 Again he made Sübe’etey Ba’atur to go a warfare northward unto these eleven tribes of realms and peoples: Qanglin,117 Kibča’ud,118 [46v] Bajigud,119 Orysud,120 Majarad,121 Assud,122 Sasud,123 Serkesud,124 Keshmir,125 Bolar,126 and Kerel127 and, making [him] to cross the Idil128 and the Jaye129 rivers full of water, [he made] Sübe’etey Ba’atur [to go a warfare] unto the city of Kiwa Men-kermen.130

§263 [50r] Again, when, making an end of taking the Sarta’ul people, Činggis Qahan had made a decree, appointing daruyacsin in cities and cities, there coming from the city of Ürunggeci two [50v] Sarta’ul of the Quruensis131 clan, father and son, whose names were Yalawaci132 and Masqud,133 speaking unto Činggis Qahan the customs and laws of the city, [the latter] being told so as to know [the custom after which cities are governed] like unto [that

118 This is the plural of Kipča (== Qipča). Cf. Pelliot, op. cit., p. 198.
119 This is the plural of *Bajigur (== Bajyrd—Bajyrd). Cf. Pelliot, op. cit., p. 199.
120 This is the plural of Ores. Cf. Pelliot, op. cit., p. 199.
121 This is the plural of Majar. Cf. Pelliot, op. cit., p. 199.
122 This is the plural of As. Cf. Pelliot, op. cit., p. 199.
123 This is the plural of *Sas or *Sasun. Cf. Pelliot, op. cit., p. 199. In §270 below, however, the name is transcribed Serid.
124 This is the plural of Serkes (== Čerkes). Cf. Pelliot, op. cit., p. 199.
125 This constitutes a problem. Cf. Pelliot, op. cit., p. 193.
126 This is erroneously transcribed Zuger in §270 below.
127 The text has Haral, an obvious error for Kerel. Cf. Pelliot, op. cit., p. 181, n. 2, and p. 199, n. 3.
130 This is a compound city-name. Although the text has Kismen Kermen, it is clear from Kiwa in §274 below as well as Makadem Kermen Keybe (itself an error for Maked Menkermen Keybe) in §270 below that the final syllable —men of Kismen is, in reality, the initial syllable of Kermen. Kiwa (§§292 and 274) — Keybe (§270) is the Russian Kiev. Cf. Pelliot, op. cit., p. 129, n. 4. Menkermen was the Turkish name of Kiev. Cf. Pelliot, op. cit., p. 114, n. 1, and p. 195, n. 4.
131 Quruensis is a metathetic form of *Qurumisi, i.e., *Xwdr(t)šwi, the ethnic of Xwdr (§ 292). Cf. Paul Pelliot, “Le nom du xwárism dans les textes chinois,” Toung Pao 34 (1928–1929) 146–188 (p. 180).
133 I. e., Maş’ud.
which] the custom [truly is], appointing his son—the Qurumši Masqud—, making [him] to govern with our daruyas cities having at their head Buqar, Semisgen, Ürünggeşi, Udun, Kisjar, Uriyang, and Güsen Daril and bringing his father, Yalawaci, he brought [him], making [him] to govern the city of Jungdu of the Kitad. Because among the Sartaytai people both Yalawaci and Masqud are skilful in the laws and customs of cities, he appointed [them], with [our] daruyas, making [them] to govern the Kitad people.

§204 [51v] Činggis Qahan going seven years in [the countries of] the Sarta'ul people, then at the moment when he was awaiting Bala the Jalayir, Bala [52r] passing over the Sin River, pursuing both Jalalding Soltan and Qan Melig unto the country of the Hindus, losing both Jalalding Soltan and Qan Melig, seeking [them] unto the middle of the Hindus, not being able [to find them], returning, having spoiled the people of the frontier of the Hindus, having taken many camels and many gelded he goats, he came [back]. [52v] Then Činggis Qahan, returning, summering on the way at the Erdiš, in the autumn of the year of the cock [1225], the seventh year [of the campaign], pitched at the ordos in the Black Forest of the Tula [River].
§265 [1r] Wintering that winter, saying, “I shall set forth against the Tang’ud people,” newly numbering the number,1 in the autumn of the year of the dog [1228] Činggis Qahan set forth against the Tang’ud people. From the qadund, taking [with him] Yesūi Qadun, he departed. As, on the way, in the winter, he hunted the many wild horses of [1v] Arbuqa, Činggis Qahan was riding Josoṭu Boro.2 When the wild horses came, passing by, Josoṭu Boro being terrified, when Činggis Qahan fell from the horse, his flesh paining exceedingly, he pitched [at] Čo’orqad. As he passed that night, when, on the morrow, [2r] Yesūi Qadun spake, she said, “Princes and chiefs, talk [ye] unto one another. The Qahan, at night, hath passed the night, [his] flesh [being] hot.” Then when the princes and chiefs assembled themselves, when Tolun Čerbi of the Qong-qotad spake, advising [them], as he said, “The Tang’ud people are

Ones which have pounded city walls;
Ones which have a stable encampment.
They [2v] will not depart, carrying their pounded city walls, those.
They will not depart, forsaking their stable encampment, those.

We, withdrawing, when the flesh of the Qahan becometh cool, again, moreover, we shall set forth,” all the princes and chiefs approving this word, when they petitioned unto Činggis Qahan, when Činggis Qahan spake, saying, “The Tang’ud people will say that we, [our] hearts [3r] failing [us], are returned. If then, sending ambassadors, [while] trying the sickness 1 at this [self]same Čo’or-

1 See §191 above.
2 This is the name of a horse, signifying “Red-Earth Gray.”
3 See §§465 above.
4 I.e., “while seeing what turn the sickness will take.” For the reading obočin-i . . . sobāšu (“trying . . . the sickness”) instead of the reading odin-i . . . sobāšu (“trying . . . the ambassadors”) cf. Antoine Mowarav, op. cit., pp. [217]-[220].
qad, we shall withdraw ourselves [after] considering their word; it will do,"; then when he sent, letting [his] voice be carried by the ambassadors, as he sent, saying, "When, beforetime, Burqan, thou didst speak, [thou] didst say, 'We Tang'ud people shall be thy right hand.'9 Being so told [3v] by thee, when I sent, requesting, saying, '[Forasmuch] as it was not entered into agreement by the Sarta'ul people, I shall set forth [against them],' thou, Burqan, not keeping to thy word and not giving troops, art come, deriding [me] by [thy] word.10 At the moment when I betook myself elsewhere, saying, 'I shall verify [this here]after,' setting forth against [4r] the Sarta'ul people, being protected by Everlasting Heaven, making the Sarta'ul people to submit themselves unto uprightness,11 I draw nigh, saying, 'Now, to [the face of] Burqan, I shall verify the word,''' when Burqan spake, he said, "I spake not [unto thee] words of derision." When Aña Gambu spake, he sent, saying, "I spake words [4v] of derision. And, as to now, if ye, Mongol, being accustomed to battle, say, 'Let us join battle,'—as for me, I have an Alašai encampment, termé12 tents, and camels' burden—betaking yourselves [unto] Alašai, come [ye] unto me. Let us there join battle. If [ye] [5r] need gold, silver, satins, and possessions, betake [ye] yourselves to Eriyaya or Erije'ü." When they brought this word unto Činggis Qahan, when Činggis Qahan—when [his] flesh was [yet] hot—spake, he said, "Yea! That [sufficeth]! Suffering [him] to speak such great words, how can [we] withdraw ourselves? When [we] die,14 let us go,

1 I.e., of the Tang'ud.
2 I.e., reply.
3 "Činggis means: 'We shall not return now, for fear that the Tang'ud may say that we are cowards. We shall send messengers to them and meanwhile we shall stay here and shall see what turn my malady will take. If it is aggravated, we shall always be able to take the road back, after we shall have taken cognizance of the reply that our envoys will have brought back to us.'" Antoine Montebert, op. cit., p. 318.
4 I.e., message.
5 See §§240 and 256 above.
6 This is an allusion to the words of Aña Gambu in §§56 above.
7 For a similar figure, see, for example, the words "making straight" in §§58 above.
8 A type of tent glossed "spread tent."
9 Cf. II. Kings §9: "So Hazael went to meet him, and took a present with him, even of every good thing of Damascus, forty camels' burden, . . . ."
10 I.e., "although we may die."
relying upon the great words,” and, saying, “Everlasting [5v] Heaven, decide thou [which of us is right],” Činggis Qahan, be-taking himself [unto] Alašai, arriving [there], joining battle with Aša Gambu, overcoming Aša Gambu, causing [him] to fortress himself on Alašai, taking Aša Gambu, caused [one] to spoil his people which had terme tents and which had camels’ burden, till they blew away after the manner of the ashes [of the hearth]. He made a decree, saying, “Slaying the bold and the courageous, the male and the good Tang’udud, take [ye] for the men of the armies such and such Tang’udud as many as ye can hold in hand and as many as ye can get.”

§366 [7v] Činggis Qahan, summering on [Mount] Časutu, sent soldiers and caused [them] to spoil till they wholly 18 destroyed the Tang’udud having terme tents and having camels’ burden, [7v] which with Aša Gambū 19 had gotten them to the mountain and had rebelled. Then, when he shewed favour unto the twain, Bo’orču and Muqali, he made a decree, saying, “Let them take till they know by [their] might [how much of it they shall take]. Again, when Činggis Qahan made a decree, when he gave favours unto the twain, [8r] Bo’orču and Muqali, he made a decree, saying, “Saying [unto myself], ‘[I] have not given [unto you a part] from the Kitad people,’ ye twain, equally parting [them], take the Jūyin of the Kitad people. Making their good sons to hold your falcons in hand, go [ye], making [them] to follow [you]. Raising up their good daughters, [8v] make [ye them] to order the skirts [of the garments] of your wives. The trusty favourites of the Altan Qan 1 of the Kitad people are the Qara Kitad Jūyin people which made an end of the grandfathers and fathers of the Mongol. Now my trusty favourites are ye twain, Bo’orču and Muqali.”

§367 [9r] Činggis Qahan, removing from [Mount] Časutu, [9v]

18 In an oral communication of 10 September 1958, confirmed by a written communication of 17 September 1958, the Reverend Antoine Mostaker interpreted the word emevo 3ar “according to the fact of having counted” to signify “totally” or “entirely.”

19 To judge by the comitative suffix -iš (“with”), the name transcribed Gambu elsewhere in the Secret History was here read Gambū.
pitching [at] the city of Uraqai, removing from the city of Uraqai, at the moment when he was breaking the city of Dörmegei, Burqan came for to present himself unto Činggis Qahan. Then, when Burqan presented himself, at the moment when he presented himself with [gifts consisting] first [in] golden images of Buddha,¹⁷ [and, besides those, in] bowls and [other] vessels of gold and of silver, nine and nine, [in] boys and girls, nine and nine, [in] geldings and camels, nine and nine, and [in yet] every kind of [other] things, having distributed [them] after their colours and forms, nine and nine, Činggis Qahan made Burqan to present himself [at the outside of the tent] in [a manner in which] the door [was] closed. At that presenting himself, within Činggis Qahan the heart revolted. On the third day, when Činggis Qahan made a decree—giving unto Iluqu Burqan the name Šiduryu ¹⁸ and [10v] suffering the fact that Iluqu Burqan Šiduryu was come—then Činggis Qahan, saying, "Cause [ye] Iluqu to pass away," made a decree, saying, "Let Tolun Čerbi lay hand [upon him] and cause [him] to pass away." Then, as Tolun Čerbi made [one] to report, saying, "[I] have laid hand upon Iluqu and have accomplished [the deed]," when Činggis Qahan made a decree, he made a decree, saying, "At the moment when I was drawing nigh unto the Tang'ud people to verify the words [of Iluqu Burqan], he who, when, [11r] on the way, I had hunted the wild horses of Arbuqa, dealing sparingly with my life and body advised [me] words [of advice], saying [concerning] my flesh which ached, 'Let it heal,' was Tolun. At the word of poison of a "companion," ²⁰ coming, [Our] might being increased by Everlasting Heaven, making [him] to enter into Our hands, We have taken Our vengeance. Let Tolun take [11v] this journeying palace which Iluqu hath brought, together with the bowls and the vessels."

§268 [19r] Spoiling the Tang'ud people, making Iluqu Burqan to be Šiduryu, accomplishing ²⁰ him, causing the mothers and the

¹⁷ The word some is glossed 布多 (Po-mei) "Buddhas," but the meaning, as indicated by Antoine Mostaert, op. cit., p. 225, is "figures."

¹⁸ I.e., "Upright."


²² I.e., killing.
fathers of the Tang'ud people, unto the seed of the seed, to vanish musquli musquli,22 he made a decree, saying, “While [I] eat [12v] food, saying, ‘[They are] vanished musquli musquli,’ making [them] to die and destroying [them], be [ye], saying [this].” Because the Tang'ud people, [after] speaking a word, kept not to the word, Činggis Qahan going a warfare a second time against the Tang'ud people, destroying the Tang'ud people, [13r] coming [back], in the year of the pig [1227] Činggis Qahan is ascended to Heaven. After that he was ascended, one gave exceedingly unto Yesiü Qadun from the Tang'ud people.

§269 [13v] In the year of the rat [1228] the princes of the right hand 22 having at their head Ča'adai and Batu, the princes of the left hand having at their head Odögin Noyan, Yegü, and Yesüngge, the princes of the middle having at their head Tolui, the daughters, the sons in law, the captains of ten thousand and [those] of a thousand, being a multitude, [14r] wholly assembling at Köde’ü Aral of the Kelüren [River], according to the same decree by which Činggis Qahan had named [him],23 raised up Ögödei Qahan as qan. Elder Brother Ča'adai, raising up his younger brother Ögödei Qahan as qan, both Elder Brother Ča'adai and Tolui delivered unto Ögödei Qahan the nightguards, the quiverbearers, and the eight thousand dayguards which had been guarding the “golden life” of their father Činggis Qahan and the private slaves and the ten thousand guards which had been walking in the presence of the person of [14v] his 24 father the Qan. After the same manner they delivered the people of the middle.

§270 [15r] Ögödei Qahan suffering himself to be raised up as qan, after suffering [one] to cause the ten thousand guards which walk within and the people of the middle to be for himself, first [of all] taking counsel with Elder Brother Ča'adai, made to go a warfare

22 These two words (here and immediately below), not glossed, are not elsewhere attested, but they obviously are descriptive of the manner in which the Tang'ud people were annihilated.
23 I.e., wing.
24 See §265 above.
24 The word 米証 (miu) “my” unquestionably is an error for 試証 (miu) “his.”
both Ogotur and Müngetü, succourers of Čormaqań Qorći \textsuperscript{28} which was gone a warfare against the Qalibai Soltan of the [15v] Beytad people of the peoples which his father Cinggis Qahan had left undone. Again, aforetime, Sübe'etci Ba'atur crossing the Adil \textsuperscript{26} and the Jayay rivers full of water [16r] unto the Kangiin, Kibča'ud, Bajigid, Orusud, Sesűd,\textsuperscript{27} Majar, Keşmir, Sergesüd,\textsuperscript{28} Bolar,\textsuperscript{29} and Kerel peoples, Sübe'etci Ba'atur which was gone a warfare against the cities having at their head Meked,\textsuperscript{30} Menkimen,\textsuperscript{31} and Keyibe,\textsuperscript{32} being exposed to difficulties by those peoples, he caused to set forth the many princes having at their head Batu, Bürü, Gıyūg, and Mıngge, succourers of Sübe'etci. He made a decree, saying, "Let Batu command all these princes [16v] which are gone a warfare." He made a decree, saying, "Let Gıyūg command those who are come out from the middle." Having made a decree, saying, "As to these who go a warfare, let the princes which govern peoples make to go a warfare the eldest sons of their sons. And let the princes which govern not peoples, the captains of ten thousands, of thousands, [17r] of hundreds, and of tens, [these] many persons whosoever they be,\textsuperscript{33} make the eldest of their sons to go a warfare. Let the daughters and the [imperial] sons in law, after the same manner, make the eldest of their sons to go a warfare," again, when Ögödei Qahan spake, [he said.] "And this manner in which one maketh

\textsuperscript{26} I.e., "Quiverbearer" Čormaqań.

\textsuperscript{27} See §260 above, where it is transcribed İdil.

\textsuperscript{28} See §262 above, where it is transcribed Sarud.

\textsuperscript{29} See §262 above, where it is transcribed Serkesüd.

\textsuperscript{28} The text has Bugur which, unquestionably, is an error for Bolar. Cf. PILLIPE, Notes sur l'Histoire de la Horde d'Or, p. 319, n. 5, and p. 325, n. 1.

\textsuperscript{29} Although the text has Meked'ıno, it is clear from the occurrence of Meged (Meked) in §§274 and 275 below that the syllable -men is, in reality, the initial syllable of the following name Kermen, i.e., Menkemen. For a discussion of the name Meked (Meged), cf. V. MINORSKI'S article, "Caucasus III: The Alani Capital Magas and the Mongol Campaigns," cited in Chapter II, note 66.

\textsuperscript{30} See also Chapter XI, note 150.

\textsuperscript{31} See also Chapter XI, note 150.

\textsuperscript{32} In a letter dated 13 February 1885, the Reverend Antoine MOSTENIS remarked: "... Or do the cen gů'un form another category of people of whom the eldest sons shall have to leave on campaign? In this case cen gů'un would be a synonym of düri-pis gů'un, and it would be necessary to translate by 'the people who form the great number, whosoever they be.'"
the eldest of the sons to go a warfare [17v] is from [the part of] Elder Brother Ča’adai. When Elder Brother Ča’adai came, speaking, he came, saying, ‘[I shall make Būri, the eldest of my sons, to go a warfare as] succourer of Sübe’etei. If the eldest of the sons go a warfare, the army [will be] vast.‘ If the soldiers which go out be many, they shall go in a manner whereby [their] appearance [is] high and mighty. The enemy peoples [which are] yonder are many realms [in number]. At that extremity, [they are] hard [18r] peoples—those. If they be wroth, [they are] peoples which would die at their own weapons—those. They are said [to be] ones of whom the weapons [are] sharp.’ When Ögödei Qahan spake, saying, ‘At that word, and by the prudent might of Our Elder Brother Ča’adai let us send out the eldest of the sons,’ proclaiming [it unto] every quarter, such was the manner in which he made to go a warfare the princes having at their head [18v] Batu, Būri, Güyüg, and Mōngge.

§271 [19r] Again when Ögödei Qahan sent, taking counsel with Elder Brother Ča’adai, as he sent, taking counsel, saying, ‘I have sat on the [throne made] ready of my father [19v] Činggis Qahan. Shall I [not] be spoken of [by others], saying, ‘By what ability hath he sat?’ If Elder Brother Ča’adai approve—our father the Qahan left undone the Altan Qan of the Kitad people—now I shall set forth against the Kitad people,” Elder Brother Ča’adai, approving, [20r] sent, saying, “What hindereth? Assigning good men unto the a’uruy, set ye forth. I from hence shall send out and shall send soldiers.” Assigning Oldaya’ Qorči 85 unto the great palaces,

§272 [20v] in the year of the hare [1231] Ögödei Qahan set forth against the Kitad people and sent Jebe as vanguard. And so, overcoming the soldiers of the Kitad and having slain [them] till they stood like rotten trees, 86 passing Čabçıyal, making [them] to assault their towns and cities [21r] in every quarter, making the soldiers to march, Ögödei Qahan pitched at Şira Değtür. There Ögödei Qahan was attained of sickness. When, losing mouth and

84 I. e., More so than that of others.
85 I. e., the “Quiverbearer” Oldaya’.
86 See §§106 and 107 above.
tongue," he was in distress, when one caused to divine by divers sorcerers and by diviners, [they said,] "The lords and qand 38 of the land and the waters of the Kitad people, [now] when their people and folk are spoiled and [now] when their [21v] cities and towns are destroyed, rage violently [against the Qahan]." When they divined by bowels, saying, "We shall give in [his] stead people and folk, gold and silver, cattle and food," [the sickness] not abating, [the lords and qand of the land and the waters] rage more violently. When they divined by bowels, saying, "Could [somebody] from the persons of the [imperial] family serve [in his stead]?," the Qahan, opening his eyes, requesting water, [22r] drinking it, when, being asked [by him], saying, "What hath befallen?," when the sorcerers reported [unto him], as they reported [unto him], saying, "The lords and qand of the land and the waters of the Kitad people, [now] when their land and waters are destroyed and [now] when their people and folk are spoiled, rage violently [against thee]. When we divine by bowels, saying, 'We shall give in [his] stead whatsoever other thing [they may request],,' [22v] they rage more violently. When we say, 'Would [somebody] from the persons of the [imperial] family serve [in his stead]?,,' [the sickness] abateth. Now the decree shall decide [how we shall do]," when [Ögödei] made a decree, as he said, "Who is there from the princes in [my] presence?," Prince Tolui was in [his] presence. When [Tolui] spake, saying, "Our fortunate father Činggis Qahan, while there were elder brethren above and younger brethren below, choosing thee, elder brother the Qahan, [even] as [one chooseth] a gelding, and feeling [thee, even] as [one feeleth] a wether," pointing out his great throne unto thy person and laying the many peoples upon thee as burden, 39 gave [them unto thee]. As for me, I was told, "Being in the presence of the elder brother the Qahan go,

37 I. e., speech.
38 This is a plural in -d of qan "sovereign."
39 In his letter dated 13 February 1866, the Reverend Antoine Montaup remarked: "'to feel' = 'to feel the castrated ram in order to assure oneself that it is fat enough to be slaughtered and eaten.'"
40 I. e., "charging thee with the governing of the numerous peoples."
CHAPTER XII

Making to remember him which shall have
gotten, [23v]
Making to awake him which shall be fallen
asleep.’

Now if I lose thee, mine elder brother the Qahan,

Of whom shall I make to remember him which
shall have forgotten?

Of whom shall I make to awake him which
shall be fallen asleep?

Verily, if mine elder brother the Qahan ‘become not right,’

The many Mongol
People would be orphans;
The Kitad people
Would rejoice.

I shall serve in the stead of mine elder brother the Qahan.

I have cleft
The back [24r] of the tulu [fish].
I have cut in twain
The back of the kileme [fish].
I have conquered
The visible.
I have pricked
The outside.
Fair of face,
Long of back

am I. Sorcerers, incant and conjure!,” when the sorcerers con-
jured, Prince Tolui drank the water of conjuration. [24v] When,
sitting [but] a moment, he spake, having said, “I am become
drunk. While I rouse [myself from] my drunkenness, let the elder-
brother the Qahan decide how he may care for his younger
brethren, orphans and young, and his younger sister in law,
Berüde, a widow, until they attain unto intelligence.” I have-

"See §§200 and 255 above.
"I.e., die. See also below.
"A kind of sturgeon.
"I.e., sufficiency. See Chapter V, note 8."
spoken my words whatsoever [I had to speak]. I am become drunk," he went out and departed. Such [is] the manner in which he "became not right."

§273 [25v] And so destroying the Altan Qan, giving [unto him] the name Se'ise, spoiling their [26r] gold and silver, satins having gold and having patterns, possessions, alābas, and little slaves, placing spies and tammācīn, placing daruvačın in the cities, in divers quarters [such as] Namging and Jungdu, peaceably returning, he pitched at Qaču Qorum.

§274 [26v] Čormaqan Qorči made the people of Baytd to submit themselves. Knowing that that land was said [to be] good and that its things [were said to be] good, when Ögödei Qahan made a decree, he said, "Čormaqan Qorči sitting even there [as] tammā, making [one] to bring [unto Us] in [each] year yellow gold, [27r] naqud, brocades, damasks having [all three] yellow gold, [little] pearls, [big] pearls, tobiča'ud, long of neck and high of leg, guiring ci'o'ud, da'usi, kicidud, mules of burden, and mules [to ride upon], be [ye], sending [them]." The many [27v] princes

44 I.e., "Little Slave," this being the Chinese Hsiao-ssu 小厮.
45 This word is glossed 满馬 (Hua'i ssa) "Huai horses," but, as asserted by Dr. William Hunn on 19 August 1855, the character 满 (Hua'i) is erroneous. As for alaba, it is a plural in -a of ala, a word of Turkish origin, meaning "horse" or "gelding." Cf. Nicholas Pown, "The Turkic Loan Words in Middle Mongolian," Central Asiatic Journal 1 (1910): 38-48 (p. 38).
46 The word tammā seems to be the equivalent of tammācīn.
47 This is "a kind of gold brocade." Cf. E. Bretschneider, M.D., Medieval Researchers from Eastern Asiatic Sources, Vol. II, London, 1910, p. 194. As demonstrated by Paul Pelliot in note 1 on pages 269-271 of his article "Une ville musulmane dans la Chine du Nord sous les Mongols" in the Journal asiatique 211 (1927): 261-279, naqud is a plural in -ud of *naq (< Persian aq(ā) x). This is "a silk stuff interwoven with gold." Cf. Bretschneider, op. cit., p. 194. See also §283 above.
48 This is "a stuff embroidered in gold." Cf. Bretschneider, op. cit., p. 194. See also §283 above.
49 This word is glossed "Western horses." Cf. also Bretschneider, op. cit., p. 195.
50 These words are glossed "name of a kind of camel."
51 This word is not glossed. It probably is a kind of camel.
52 This word, a plural in -ud of kicid, itself a plural in -d of (?)*kicir, is glossed "name of a [kind of] camel."
53 In his letter of 12 February 1935 the Reverend Antoine Montaret remarked in
having at their head Batu, Büri, Güyük, and Möngge which had
gone a warfare, the succoures of Sübe’etei Ba’atur, causing the
Qanglin, the Kibča’ud, and the Baqiqid to submit themselves,
[passing over] 44 the Ejil 45 and the Jayaγ 46 [rivers] and breaking
the city of Meged, slaying the Orusud, spoiled till they destroyed
[them]. Spoiling and making the people of the cities having at
their head Asud 47 Sesid, 48 Bolar, 49 Mankerman, 50 and Kiwa,
placing daruyacín and tammacin, they returned. [28r] He made to
go a warfare Yestüder Qoric, the succourer of Jalayirtai Qoric
which aforesaid had gone a warfare against the Jüröd and the
Solangyas. 51 He made a decree, saying, “Let him sit [there] as
tamma.”

§275 [28v] When Batu, from on the Kibčay warfare, petitioned,
by messengers, unto Ögödei Qahan, he sent, petitioning, saying
“In the might of Everlasting Heaven and [29r] in the fortune of
[mine] unde the Qahan, breaking the city of Meged, spoiling
the Orusud people, making to submit themselves in an upright
manner eleven realms of people, withdrawing ourselves, pulling
the ‘golden reins,’ saying unto one another, ‘Let us feast a feast
at which we shall separate ourselves from one another,’ pitching
a great tent, at the moment when we are feasting, I, saying, [29v]
‘As [I] am somewhat the eldest of all these princes, [I] have first
drunk one or two bowls of the ötöγ,’ both Büri and Güyük being

regard to čanacs-ud (a plural in -nd of čanac, itself a plural in -s of čanacs < ?Chinese lo-tun 獨子): “I think that by this word are indicated especially the mules destined
to be mounted.”

44 It is obvious that a word such as ketuljül (“passing over”) has been omitted
45 The gloss “city name” is an obvious error for “river name.”
46 The gloss “city name” is an obvious error for “river name.”
47 Asud, glossed “city name,” unquestionably is out of place in a list of city names.
Cf. also Palliser, op. cit., p. 130, n. 3.
48 Sesid, glossed “city name,” may also be out of place in a list of city names. Cf.
also Palliser, op. cit., p. 130, n. 2.
49 The text has Rokorman, but the syllable -man unquestionably is the initial syllable
of the following name.
50 Although the text has Korman, the syllable -man of the preceding name unques-
tionably is the initial syllable of this name, hence Mankerman.
51 This is a reference to the expedition of 1218, not previously mentioned in the
Secret History. Cf. the Yuan shí 元史 1 (to’s 1) 30r1-3.
displeased with me, [I] suffered the fact that, not feasting the feast, they set forth. When, setting forth, Büri spake, he said, 'As Batu, then, is equal [unto us], why should he have drunk first?

The women with beards, *4

Becoming equal [unto us], [30r]

Pushing [them] with [my] heels,

[I] shall tread on [them] with [my] feet.

When Güyük spake, he said, 'Those women with quivers, let us, thou and we, smite their bosoms with a stick of firewood—those!' When Haryasun, *5 son of Eljigidei, spake, he said, 'Let us join a wooden tail—unto those!' *6 As for us, [30v] being made to set forth unto a rebellious people with a different liver, *7 at the moment when [we] were saying, 'Is it become being right? fit?', *8 having been so told by both Büri and Güyük, we were separated without mutual agreement. Now let the decree of [our] uncle the Qahan decide [how we shall do].'

§276 [31v] When, at this word of Batu, the Qahan was exceeding wroth and, not suffering Güyük to present himself, spake, he said, "This inferior one, hearkening unto the words of whom, speaketh, the mouth full, [against] a person [which is his] elder brother? Let the only egg rot! *9 He is rebelling at the bosom of the same person [which is his] elder brother.

---

*4 i.e., Batu.

*5 The text has Qaryasun.

*6 I.e., to make sport of them. In an oral communication of 10 September 1938, the Reverend Antoine Mottaret remarked: "The tail of the wolf hangs like a piece of wood."

*7 I.e., "of a different race," as is clear from the continuous translation (YCPS, Hai 2.21r-4).

*8 That is, will the campaign end well? See also §§167 and 168 above.

*9 In the continuous translation (YCPS, Hai 2.23r-4) this is rendered: "To abandon thee is like casting away a bird’s egg." I am deeply indebted to Dr. William Hung for the excellent suggestion made on 31 December 1934 that the character 鳥 (niu) ("bird") is a graphic error for 臭 (chou) ("rotten"). With this emendation the passage would read: "To abandon thee is like casting away a rotten egg." With the aid of the interpretative continuous translation we may understand the words "Let the only egg rot!" to mean "Let the only Güyük rot as an egg!"
Placing [him as] a spy
Let us make [him] to climb into the walls of
cities like mountains
Till the nails of [his] ten fingers
Are worn away through rubbing.\textsuperscript{70}

Placing [him as] a tamma,
Let us make [him] to climb into pounded
hard walls of cities
Till the nails of [his] fingers
Disappear through wear.\textsuperscript{71}

Thou, \textit{beter},\textsuperscript{72} bad, inferior Haryasun,\textsuperscript{73} imitating whom, the
mouth full, hast spoken [92v] great words unto Our seed? Let us
send the twain, Gıyūg and Haryasun,\textsuperscript{74} together. [We] could have
made [one] to behead Haryasun.\textsuperscript{75} Ye would have said that [We]
had shewed partiality. If [ye] say, ‘As for Bürî, [what will ye do
with him]?’ Tell [my decision] unto Batu. Let him send [Bürî]
unto Elder Brother Ça’adai, telling [unto him that which is come
to pass]. Let Elder Brother Ça’adai decide [how he shall punish
Bürî].’’\textsuperscript{76}

§277 [38r] When from [among] the princes Menggei and from
[among] the chiefs, the chiefs [83v] having at their head Alçidai,
Qongqortai, and Janggi petitioned, advising [Çöder], as they
petitioned, saying, “A decree of thy father, Çinggis Qahan [saith],

\textsuperscript{70} See §83 above.
\textsuperscript{71} See §83 above.
\textsuperscript{72} This word, not glossed, is not elsewhere attested. Cf. \textit{qatar} in §111 above.
\textsuperscript{73} The text has \textit{Qaryusun}.
\textsuperscript{74} The text has \textit{Qaryusun}.
\textsuperscript{75} The text has \textit{Qaryusun}.
\textsuperscript{76} In his letter of 13 February 1948 the Reverend Antoine Mounier commented on
this passage as follows: “Here Çöder follows the yuuran. Gıyūg is his son; he can
then punish him as seems good to him. Haryasun is a simple subject; he could have
him decapitated, but he does not do it, because he could be accused of partiality. As
to Bürî, he does not take any decision, because Bürî is the grandson of Ça’adai aqa.
He says then that Batu must send Bürî to Ça’adai in order that the latter punish
Bürî. In §277 the chronicler recounts how Çöder takes another decision, after Meng-
gei, Alçidai and others have recalled to him the principle posed by Çinggis: \textit{ko’er-iin}
tydu ko’er-o gi nogalru bule’o, etc.”
'[If it be] a matter of the steppe, one shall decide [it] on the very steppe. [If it be] a matter of the tent, one shall decide [it] in the very tent.' If the Qahan favour [us]—the Qahan is wroth at Güyüg. It is a matter of the steppe—if, charging [him with it], we send [it] unto Batu, [34r] will it [not] do?," when the Qahan, approving this word, mollifying himself, suffering Güyüg to present himself, uttered words of admonishment, saying, ‘When [thou] goest, going a warfare, on the way," thou art said [to deserve the words]:

Of a person with buttocks,
       His buttocks were not suffered to remain [not touched]."

Thou art said [to deserve the words]:

Of the man of the army,
       Breaking asunder the look," thou wentest.

Art thou looking upon the Orusud people as having submitted themselves, fearing for [cause of] [34v] that thy fury and wrath? Thinking like as [thou] by [thyself] alone hadst brought the Orusud people into subjection, taking in hand [thine] heart of violence, goest thou forward, rebelling against the person [which is thine] elder brother? It was in the decree of Our father Činggis Qahan. Was he not wont [35r] to say,

   'A multitude causeth [one] to be afraid.
       A depth causeth [one] to die.'

Like as [thou] hadst accomplished [it] by [thyself] alone, going in

"I. e., between Mongolia and Russia.
88 In his letter of 13 February 1955 the Reverend Antoine Montagne remarked:
    "The sense is: 'of all the soldiers of Güyüg, there is none of them who has not received whiplashes on the backside.'"
89 See Chapter VIII, note 87. I. e., "By thy brutality thou brakest the spirit of the soldiers."
90 I. e., "giving thyself up to thy violent nature."
91 In the continuous translation these words which seem to constitute a proverb are interpretatively rendered (YCFS, Hsi 3.38v1):
    "[If] people (= enemies) [are] numerous, then people (= ye) will be afraid.
    [If] water [is] deep, then people (= ye) will die [by drowning]."
the shelter of both Sübe’etei and Büjeg, joining thyself by the multitude and by all, bringing into subjection the Orusud and the Kibča’ud, getting one or two Orusud and Kibča’ud, at the moment when [thou] hadst not yet gotten and gathered the lower leg of a kid,“ presuming on [thy] manliness, issuing [but] once from in the tent,“ like as [thou] hadst accomplished [S3v] even aught by [thyself] alone, provoking words, thou [art] coming. By Menggei, Alčidai, Qongqortai, Janggi and others,

Letting—[they] being companions [always] at hand—to restrain
[Our] heart which was risen;
Letting—[they] being broad spoons—to be caused to pacify
The kettle which boileth,

[We] have said, ‘Yea! That [sufficeth]! [It is] an affair of the steppe. [Ye] have said that Batu [should judge it].” Let Batu decide [concerning] [36r] the twain, Güyük and Haryasun,”“ he sent [them unto him]. He said, “Let Elder Brother Ča’adai decide [how he shall punish] Büri.”

§278 [36v] Again when Ögödei Qahan made a decree, he made a decree, saying, “When I proclaim a decree which newly proclaimeth the duties of [37r] all the guards—the nightguards, the quiverbearers, and the dayguards—which are gone at [the side of]“ my father, Činggis Qahan, when I make a decree, saying, ‘How aforetime were they wont to act by the edict of [my] father the Qahan? Let them now act in the same manner,’ let the quiverbearers and the dayguards after the former decree, at day, walking,[each] in his [own] way, [37v] yielding unto the nightguards at [the moment] when] there is [yet] sun, pass the night outside.”” Making a

"See Chapter VII, note 51.
"See also §§194 and 239 above for other references to “issuing from the tent.” See Chapter X, note 82.
"This is an allusion to the words: “if, charging [him with it], we send [it] unto Batu” above.
"The text has Qaryasun.
"I.e., “which have served at [the side of] my father.”
"See §239.
decree, saying, "At night let the nightguards pass the night, at [the side of] Us. Let the nightguards stand at the door and round about the tent. Let the nightguards go round about at the back side and the front side of the ordo. The people which shall walk at night, after that the sun shall be set, let the nightguards seize and [thus] pass the night. Let the nightguards which have seized the people which, mingling themselves [with them], shall enter inwardly, other than the nightguards, which shall have passed the night after that the multitude shall be scattered, cut asunder their heads and cast [them] away. If at night there come a person having an urgent message, let him tell [it] unto the nightguards and, north of [my] tent, while standing together with the nightguards, let him talk with [me of the message unto me]. Let the orderers Qongqortai, Siraqan, and others, together with the nightguards, order the coming in and the going out at the ordo [38v] tent. Saying [unto myself], 'Eljigidei, although he was worthy of confidence, at eventide, adventuring to walk at the upper side of the nightguards, was seized by the [same] nightguards and the nightguards which [even as those that aforetime took Eljigidei] violate not the decree are worthy of confidence,'" he made a decree, saying, "Let one not ask the number of [39r] nightguards. Let one not walk above the seat of the nightguards. Let one not walk in the midst of the nightguards. Let the nightguards seize the people which shall have walked above or shall have walked in the midst of the nightguards. Let the nightguards seize the gelding which the person which shall have asked the number of the nightguards shall have ridden that day—[together] with the saddle and [together] with the bridle—together with [39v] the garment which he shall have worn. Let not anyone sit above the seat of the nightguards. Let the nightguards collect, at the foot of the standards and drums, the spears, bowls and vessels. Let the nightguards oversee drink and food—the thick flesh." He made a decree, saying, "Let the nightguards take care of the ordo tent-carts. If [40r] the person of Us go not out [to] war, let the nightguards go not out [to]

---

**I.e.**, between the nightguards and the tent. See Chapter IX, note 64.

**See §389 above.**

**See Chapter X, note 8.**
war apart and separately from Us. At the moment when
We are falconing or hunting, [the nightguards] measuring and
setting their half at the ordo tent-carts, let the [other] half of
the nightguards go with Us. From the nightguards let the
keepers of the encampment go and pitch the ordo. Let the door-
keepers [which are] nightguards stand hard to the door. Let
the [captain of a] thousand, Qada'an, command all the night-
guards.” Again, when he appointed captains of the divers com-
panies of nightguards, he said, “Let the twain, Qada’an and Bula-
quadar, becoming one company, taking counsel, entering [into] one
[and the same] turn [of service], separately sitting on the right and
on the left side of the ordo, set [affairs] in order. Let the twain,
Amal and Čanar, taking counsel, becoming one company, entering
[into their] turn [of service], separately [sitting] on the right and
on the left side of the ordo, set [affairs] in order. Let the twain,
Qadai and Qori Qačar, taking counsel, entering [into] one [and
the same] turn [of service], separately sitting on the right and
on the left side of the ordo, set [affairs] in order. Let the twain, Yalbay
and Qara’udar, taking counsel, becoming one company, en-
tering [into their] turn [of service], separately sitting [on the
right] and on the left side of the ordo, set [affairs] in order.
Again let the company of Qada’an and Bulqadar and the com-
pany of Amal and Čanar—these two companies—enter [into their]
turn [of service], encamping on the left side of the ordo. Let the
company of both Qadai and Qori Qačar and the company of
both Yalbay and Qara’udar—these two companies—enter [into
their] turn [of service], encamping on the right side of the ordo.”
He made a decree, saying, “Let Qada’an command these four
companies of nightguards. Again let the nightguards stand round
about the ordo hard by my person and let them lie, stopping
the door. From the nightguards let two men enter into the ordo
and hold in hand the great wine table.” Again he made a decree,
saying, “[As to] the quiverbearers, let Yesūn Tö’e, Bukidai,

---

43 See §283 above.
44 The word brnuun seems to have been inadvertently omitted from the text.
45 Bulqadar—Bulqadar above.
46 I.e., oversee. See Chapter X, note 9.
Horqudaγ, and Labalqa," becoming four divers companies, setting in order their quiverbearers of [43r] the bodyguards, enter into the four divers companies of the dayguards for to carry quivers." Again, when he appointed elders of the companies of the dayguards from the seed of those who aforetime were commanding [them], [he said,] "Let the twain, Alcidai and Qongqortaqaï, who aforetime were commanding [them], taking counsel, setting a company of dayguards in order, enter [into service in the guard]. Let the twain, Temüder and Jegü, [43v] taking counsel, setting a company of dayguards in order, enter [into service in the guard]. Let Mangyutai, having commanded the succourers, setting a company of dayguards in order, enter [into service in the guard]."

Again, when the Qahan made a decree, having said, "Let all the chiefs, Eljigidei being chief, perform according to the word of Eljigidei," again, when he made a decree, he said, "If a man of the guard, at the moment when one entereth [into his] turn [of service], neglect [this service], let one, after the manner of the former decree," instruct [him by] three strokes of the rod. If the same man of the guard again, a second time, neglect [his] turn [of service], let one instruct [him by] seven strokes of the rod. If again the same man, without sickness or reason and without consultation [beforetime] with the elder of the company, a third time, neglect [his] turn [of service], [it is a sign that] he looketh upon his service [44v] at [the side of] Us as [too] difficult. Having instructed [him by] thirty seven strokes of the rod, [We] shall send [him] out of sight unto a distant place. Again, if the elders of the companies, not mustering the guards which shall have had [their] turn [of service], neglect [their] turn [of service], [We] shall punish the elders of the companies. Again let the elders of the companies, at the moment when one entereth [into] every third [45r] turn [of service] and at the moment when one changeth [place with the relief], make this decree to be heard by the guards. Having heard the decree, if the guards neglect [their] turn [of service], [We] shall punish [them] after the manner of the decree. If they do not make this decree to be heard by the guards, let the elders of the com-

---

**Labalqa - Labala in §285 above.**

**See §287 above.**
panies be subject to punishment. Again, let the elders of [45v] the companies, saying [unto themselves], 'They have been excelled [by us] in captaincy,' not punish, without leave from Us, my guards which shall be entered equal. If one disannul the ordinance, let one declare [it] unto Us. If there be one for whom holdeth the rule that he is fit to be made to die, We shall behead [him]. If there be one for whom holdeth the rule that he is fit to be punished, We shall instruct [him]. If, saying, 'He hath been excelled in captaincy,' not declaring [it] [46r] unto Us, one lay his own hand upon [him], let one repay fists as payment of fists and strokes of the rod as payment of strokes of the rod.' Again he made a decree, saying, 'My guards are higher than the outward 100 captains of thousands. The companions of my guards are [46v] higher than the outward captains of hundreds and of tens. If the outward captains of thousands quarrel with my guards, [We] shall punish the captains of thousands.'

§279 [46v] Again when Ögedei Qahan spake, when he sent, saying, "[We] shall not make to suffer the nation which my father Činggis Qahan established [47r] with labour. Making [them] to set:

Their feet
On the ground;
Their hands
On the earth,"

---

88 See Chapter IX, note 58.
89 See Chapter IX, note 87.
100 The continuous translation of this long section in which much of §279 is repeated consists of but a single statement (YOPS, Heit 2.46v): "Emperor Wo-kō-tai 魯孝 West (Ögedei), according to the old regulations, once again promulgated anew the several duties of the guards and the numerous officials of the time of Ch'eng-chi-šu 彭吉思 (Činggis)."
101 Cf. Deuteronomy XXVIII §88: "And among these nations shalt thou find no case, neither shall the sole of thy foot have rest: . . . ."
102 I.e., "to be at peace." See also §261 below. Other examples of this interesting figure of speech are encountered in Mongolian literature. Cf., e.g., the Altan Tobęi, A Brief History of the Mongols, Vol. I, p. 27, ll. 5-7: tere Činggis qayan . . . [8] qor [7] qorja qal kōšere amunkurjači Čakirvasti [sic] qorjan metiš ušvasti. "That Činggis Qayan . . . , making to repose [their] hands on the earth, [their] feet on the ground, became famous [even] as the Čakirvasti (Čakirvasti) Qayan." The same text is
[We] shall make [them] to rejoice. [As We are] sitting on the [throne made] ready of Our father the Qahan, not making the people to suffer, for broth, from these peoples, in year after year, let one give one sheep of two years old of [every] flock. Let them, bringing forth one sheep from a hundred sheep, give [it] unto the poor and the needy [47v] amongst the same. 104 Again, when the brethren, 108 the many men and the geldings, and the [many] guards assemble themselves, how could drink be leived each time from the people? Bringing forth mares from the divers thousands of the divers quarters, having milked [them], those who are [their] milkers having herded [them], those who are keepers of encampments continually bringing forth replacements, let them [in their turn] be [48v] keepers of the milch mares. Again, when the brethren assemble themselves, [We] shall give gifts and favours. Pouring [into storehouses] the satins, the axes [of silver], 108 the quivers, the bows, the breast-plates, the weapons, and the grains of the tax on the land, [We] shall make [one] to keep watch over the storehouses. Let one, choosing keepers of storehouses and keepers of grain from the divers quarters, make [them] to keep watch over [these storehouses]. Again, parting encampments and waters, [We] shall give [them] unto the people. If [We] choose keepers of encampments from the divers thousands for to make [them] [48v]

found in the Altun tobēi in the Činggis qayun-u čadīr, p. 21, l. 8, with the reading Čulruwerti. Cf. also the Qad-un uñdūm-ū erdeni-yin tobēi [Precious Button of the Origin of the Sovereign] by Sayragi Seten (1604-1677). In the edition of the text published by Isaac Jacob Schmidt under the title of Geschichte der Ost-Mongolen und ihrer Fürstenhauser, we read (p. 296, l. 18-19): . . . kámūn amītan . . . [18] yar gajarr-ū kūl kūser-e kūsīg-īyār jīrīyābī. . . . the living beings which are men (= men) . . . , [their] hands [set] on the earth, [their] feet [set] on the ground, according to [their] desires, have joyed.” A rather different version of the same text is found in 11, Ж. Жамцгай, Монголские летописи XVII века [C. Э. Демчарано, Mongolian Chronicles of the XVIIth Century] (Moscow-Leningrad, 1926), p. 23, l. 1-2: tegin hū efen qayun-u ači-bar hir yēke wūns. [8] yar gajarr-ū kūl kūser-e kūsīg-īyār jīrīyābī. “So by the grace of the Lord Emperor [of the Manchu Dynasty], the entire, great people, [its] hands [set] on the earth, [its] feet [set] on the ground, according to [its] desires, has joyed.”

104 In his letter of 15 February 1805 the Reverend Antoine Morin remarked: “The sense is ‘in the same unit,’ that is to say that one must give sheep to the poor belonging to the unit on which the owners of these sheep depend.”

108 I. e., of the imperial family.

108 I. e., “silver ingota.”
to encamp in the encampments, will it [not] do? Again, there is nothing other than wild beasts in the Čöl 198 country. For the people, somewhat widely, making both Čanai and Uī'urtai to head the keepers of encampments, making [them] to dig the wells of the Čöl, let them brick [them]. Again We, when the messengers haste, [49r] make them to haste, making [them] to go round about the people. And the going of the messengers which run is slow. And it is a suffering for the nation and the people. Now We, determining [the matter] once and for all, if, bringing forth keepers of post stations and keepers of post horses from the divers thousands of the divers quarters, establishing seats and seats of post stations, not making [them] to go round about the people without urgent matters, [We] make the messengers to haste along the post stations, [49v] will it [not] do? When the twain, Čanai and Bolqadar, comprehending these matters, recommended [them] unto Us, thinking, saying [unto Ourself], 'Are they right?,' [We said,] 'Let Elder Brother Ča'adai decide. If these matters which are spoken of [in Our message to him] are fit, if he approve [them], let [the decision] be from [the part of] Elder Brother Ča'adai,'” Elder Brother Ča'adai came [in the person of a messenger], saying, “[As] I approve [50r] these very matters concerning which [Ye] have sent, inquiring—all of them—let one, then, so do!” Again when Elder Brother Ča'adai came [in the person of a messenger], speaking, having said, “From hence I would cause post stations to join themselves over against [yours]. Again from hence I would send messengers unto Batu. And let Batu [50v] cause his post stations to join themselves over against [mine],” again, when he came [in the person of a messenger], speaking, he came, saying, “Of all [matters, it is] the matter of making [one] to establish post stations [which Čanai and Bolqadar] recommended [in a manner] more fitting than fit.”

§280 [51v] Then, when Öödei Qahan spake, as he said, “Brethren, princes of [52r] the right hand 199 which have Elder Brother Ča'adai and Batu at their head, all, brethren of the left hand

199 I.e., “wing.”
having Ödögin Noyan and Yegi at their head, all princes, daughters and sons in law of the middle, and captains of ten thousands, of thousands, of hundreds, and of tens have all together approved. When they approved, if for the broth of the Qahan of the Sea 108 in one year they bring forth one 53v wether of two years old of [every] herd, what is it? 119 To bring forth one [sheep] of one year old from a hundred sheep and to give [it] unto the poor and the needy is good. If, making [one] to establish post stations, [we] bring forth keepers of the post stations and keepers of the post horses, it is peaceful for the many people and convenient for the messengers to go, 107 all together, saying that they approved, the decree of the Qahan, [58r] [the Qahan] consulting with Elder Brother Ça'adai, being approved by Elder Brother Ça'adai, from all the people, from the divers thousands of the divers quarters, by the decree of the Qahan, [one] made to bring forth in year after year for broth one wether of two years old from [every] flock and one sheep of one year old from a hundred sheep. Making to bring forth mares, [one] made keepers of mares to sit [over them]. [One] made to bring forth keepers of mares, 53v keepers of storehouses, and keepers of grains. Making to bring forth keepers of post stations and keepers of post horses, making to measure [the distance of] the place of seat after seat, when [one] made to establish post stations, making both Arasen and Toqučar to set [them] in order, [one] caused there to be twenty keepers of post horses at the one seat of [every] post station. At every seat, [one] made there to be twenty keepers of post horses each. [The Qahan] made a decree, saying, “As for the geldings [performing the service] of post horses, the sheep 54r [brought forth for the purpose] of provisions, the milch mares, the oxen which one putteth to carts, and carts, from the limit limited from Us from hence,

If they make a short cord to be wanting,
Let them be condemned to [what is called]
`cleavage [following a straight

108 I. e., “Qahan of all within the Sea.”
119 I. e., “nothing at all.”
line passing] along the (?) hinder
part of the neck.
If they make a spoke of a wheel in the form
of a spoon to be wanting,
Let them be condemned to [what is called]
' cleavage [following a straight line
passing along] the nose.'” 113

§281 [54v] When Ögödei Qahan spake, he said, "[After] sitting
on the great throne of my father, [as to] that which I did after
my [55r] father the Qahan, going a warfare unto the people of
the Jaqut,112 I destroyed the Jaqut people. [As to] my second
deed, [I] made one to establish post stations for that Our
messengers, hasting on the way, make speed, and again for that [We]
make [them] to convey our needs and necessities. [As to] yet
another deed, making [one] to dig [55v] wells in places without
water, making [one] to bring [them] forth, [I] made [one] to bring
the nation and the people unto water and grass. Again placing
spies and tammačin unto the people of cities in the divers
quarters, of the nation and the people, causing [them] to set [them],
I caused

The feet to be
On the ground
The hands [to be]
On the earth.114

113 In his explanation of these difficult lines, Antoine Montalet, op. cit., p. [146], n. 144, remarked: “I consider the expressions ṭuqul-iqur gurus, ᴱqabergurus as manners of speaking fixed by usage, kinds of technical terms which designate a legal confiscation affecting the goods of an individual condemned for a misdemeanour, in virtue of which his goods having been parted into two equal parts, the one is assigned to the Treasury while the other rests in his possession. The figure seems to be drawn from a man of whom the body has been split down the middle following a vertical line passing, from behind, by the nape of the neck and, in front, by the nose.”

Ögödei means that no matter what negligence affecting the service of the postal relays, were it as trivial as that in consequence of which there would come to lack a piece of cord, or more grave, as that which would be cause that there lack a spoke for a wheel, will be punished in the same manner, namely by the confiscation of half of the goods of the culprit.” Antoine Montalet, op. cit., p. [146], n. 144.

118 l. c., the Chin. Pelliot, Histoire secrète des Mongols, p. 119 §281, transcribed this name “Ja[b]qut.”

119 See §279 above.
After my father the Qahan [I] added [these] four deeds [to all those done by him]. [58r] And, again, being made to sit [on] the great throne by my father the Qahan, being gone, carrying [as a burden] upon myself my many people, then, to be conquered by grape wine was my wrong. This was one of my wrongs. [As to] my second wrong, to hearken unto the word of a woman without principle and to cause [one] to bring the daughters of the [56v] ulus of Uncle Odögin were [mine] errors. Although I be the Qahan, Lord of the Nation, to deliver myself unto deeds [which were] errors without principle, this was one of my wrongs. Again secretly to harm Doqolqu [was] one wrong. If one say, 'How was it a wrong?,' [57r] secretly to harm Doqolqu which, in the service of his proper [lord], my father the Qan, pressed forward was a wrong and an error. Now, in the service of me, who will so press forward for [me]? I myself have declared as wrong the fact that, not comprehending, I secretly harmed a man which, in the service of my father the Qahan and [of] all, was prudent [in] principle. Again, being covetous, [57v] saying, 'I fear lest the wild beasts which were born having [their] destiny from Heaven and Earth will go toward [my] brethren,' making one to build in beaten earth fences and walls [to contain the prey], as I was [thus] staying [them], I heard words of murmuring from the brethren. It, also, was a wrong. After my father the Qahan, I added four [good] deeds [to all those done by him] and four deeds were wrongs." 114

§282 [58r] [We] finished writing at the moment when the Great Assembly was assembled and [when], in the year of the rat [1228], in the moon of the dam,115 the palaces were pitched at Dolo'an Bolday of Köde'e Aral of the Kelüren, between both Šilgin Çeg and... 116

114 Of the eight deeds enumerated in this public confession of Ögödei—four good and four bad—there is no mention elsewhere in the Secret History of the four which are enumerated as "wrongs."

115 I.e., the seventh moon. See also § 289 above.

INDEX NOMINUM

(N.B. The names in this index are given, insofar as is practicable, in the forms in which they occur in the original text, although the case suffixes, as a rule, are dropped. Inasmuch as names in the genitive case, however, constitute complements of nouns and postpositions, it has seemed preferable to register the complexes as such, thus retaining the names in their genitive form. The numbers after the names refer to the sections of the text in which they occur. The numbers in parentheses indicate the number of occurrences within a section. The English equivalents of accompanying titles, epithets, or terms designating natural features, whether used in the translation or not, are, for the most part, included in parentheses. Where possible, the names of persons are briefly identified. The following abbreviations are used: acc. = accusative, cl. = clan, ct. = city, des. = desert, is. = island, l. = lake, mt. = mountain, peop. = people, pers. = person, pl. = place, plur. = plural, riv. = river, and tr. = tribe.)

Abaya v. Odžigin Abaya
Abjić Ködeger (mt.) 187; v. Abjić Ködeger
Altna (a captain of a thousand) 202
Al Altun (a daughter of Cinggis Qahan) 238
Al Dîer (a chief of the Kirgisud) 239
Ala Quš Dîgid Quri (of the Önggûd) 190 (3); v. Önggûd-un Ala Quš Dîgid Quri, Önggûd-un Ala Quš Dîgid Quri Geregê
Alay (son of Sirgi Hetü of the Niči-gûd Ba’arin) 149 (4), 202, 290 (3)
Alay Yid (wife of Yeke Çeren) 169
Alai v. Arai
Alan Eko-yin tabun kö̱d ("the five sons of Mother Alan") 76; v. Alan G'o’a
Alan G'o’a (wife of Dobun Mergen) 7, 8, 9, 10, 17, 18, 20, 22 (3), 23
Alan G'o’a-yin éine ("out of the sight of Alan G'o’a") 18
Alaqa Reki (Mongolian princess) 239
Alakai (mt.) 265 (3)
Alakai nuntuṣtu ("having an Alâsai encampment") 235
Ali’ud (mt.) 129
Ali (a captain of a thousand) 202
Ali (a steward) 283

229
THE SECRET HISTORY OF THE MONGOLS

Alii Guregen ("Son-in-Law Alii") 202
Alii Tatar (tr.) 158 (2)
Alii Tatar-un Jalii Buqa v. Tatar-un Alii Tatar-un Jalii Buqa
Alii-yin uruy-se "from the family of Alii") 226
Alii-dai (of the family of Iligei) 226, 227, 234, 242, 243, 277 (2), 278
Alii-dai-yin ayta aduula'sulun ("the keepers of the geldings of Alii-dai")
i.e., Cigidei and Yadir 170
Alii-dai-yin uruy ("seed of Alii-dai") 235
Alii-y BaKo'ur'i ("Cook Alii-y") 408
Alqui v. Unggirad-un Dergeg Emel Alqui-tan
Alqui Bula'a ("at Alqui Spring") 141
Altai (mt.) 158 (2), 177, 194, 205; v. Eder Altai, Eter Altai
Altai-yin erbir ("in front of the Altai") 144
Altai-yin erbir-e ("at the front of the Altai") 198
Altai-yin 8ize-de ("at the front of the Altai") 196
Altai-yin 8ikes ("at the foot of the Altai") 194
Altan (third son of Qutula Qahan) 61, 123, 127 (5), 142 (3), 153, 166 (2), 174, 179 (5), 180, 181, 225 (6); v. Altan Odgiiin, Altan-yi de'ii, Jamuya Altan Qu€ar-tan-yi yosutan
Altan-yi de'ii ("the younger brother of Altan") 169
Altan Forqan (rv.) 239
Altan Odgiiin (third son of Qutula Qahan) 129; v. Altan
Altan Qahan (of the Kitad) 251; v. Kitad ireg-i Altan Qahan-i
Altan Qahan v. Kitad-un Altan Qahan
Altan Qan-yi Ongging Cingsang ("Ongging Cingsang of the Altan Qan") 188
Altan Qan-yai ("of the Altan Qan") 252
Alan Qu€ar-tan-yi yosutan v. Jamuya Altan Qu€ar-tan-yi yosutan
Altan Simum ("golden images of Buddha") 237
Altani (wife of Boro-yul) 214 (5)
Altani-yin ("that of Altani") 214
Altani-yin da€ow'un-tur ("at the cry of Altani") 214
Altun v. Al Altun
Altun A'suy (of the Kereyid) 156 (2)
Aluqai Tatar (tr.) 158 (2)
Amal (a captain of nightguards) 278; v. Amel
Amal Canan-un kesig ("the company of Amal and Canar") 278
Amcan Caya'an Ke'er ("The Bay with a Black Mane and Tail and with a White Muzzle") 160 (4)
Amzar v. Telegete Amzar, Tel€et Amzar, Tungeren Amzar
Ambayai (of the Mongol) (a son of Caraqai Lingqu; ruler of the Mongol) 47
Ambayai Qahan (ident) 58, 59 (3), 57, 71
Ambayai Qahan-nu o€il osun kisan kisan ("to avenge the avengement, to requite the requital of Ambayai Qahan") 68
Ambayai Qahan-nu qatud ("the qatud of Ambayai Qahan") 70
Amel (of the Unggirad) 176; v. Amal
Amui Muren ("Amui River") (= Orus) (rv.) 232
Anda v. Jamuya Anda, Quvildar Anda, Szeg€un Anda Tem€iin Anda
Aqa v. Ba'arun Aqa, Ca'adai Aqa, To'rul Qan Aqa, Yestii Aqa
Aquatai v. Kitad ireg-i Aqtaii Altan Qahan, Kitad ireg-i Aqtaii nometi
Altan Qan
INDEX NOMINUM

Aqutai (of the family of Alći) 226, 234
Arai [erratum pro Alai] (mt.) 198(2), 257
Arasen (pers.) 280
Arbuqqa-yin olun qulad-i (acc.) (“the many wild horses of Arbuqs”) 265
Arbuqqa-yin qulad (“the wild horses of Arbuqqa”) 267
Arir Usun (“Pure Water”) (rv.) 9
Arın Taşıi (younger brother of Ong Qan of the Kereyid) 152
Arqai (of the Jalayir) (a son of Sće Domoj) 181(2), 183, 185; v. Arqai Qasar
Arqai-yin ba’ätud-i (acc.) (“the ba’ätud of Arqai”) 230, 252(4)
Arqai Qasar (of the Jalayir) 120, 124, 127, 177, 181(2), 191, 192, 252; v. Arqai
Arqai Geği v. Kelüren-ü Arqai Geği-de
Arslan (of the Qurlu’ud) 265; v. Arslan Qan
Arslan Qan (ıdeem) 265; v. Qarlu’ud-un Arslan Qan
Aru (= Herat) (ct.) 261
Aralad (cl.) 47 (Arušd), 190
Assan Sartay-tai (“Assan, a Sartay”) (a Mohammedan trader) 132
Asud (peop.) 262, 270, 274
Aşa Gambu (of the Tangud) 266(2), 265(4); v. Aşa Gembü
Aşa Gembü (ıdeem) 266; v. Aşa Gambu
Aşi (of the Ba’arın) 207; v. Qurl Aşi Gürelgen
Aşi Temür Ba(ü)’urçi (“Cook Aşi Temür”) 208(2)
Aşi v. Altan Aşiş
A’ûcu Ba’atür (of the Mongol) 142
A’ûcu Ba’atür (of the Taţi’i’ud) 141, 144(2), 145; v. Taţi’i’ud-un A’ûcu Ba’atür, Taţi’i’ud-un A’ûcu Ba’atür-i
A’ûjam Boro’ul (son of Qorîçar Mergen) 2
A’ûjam Boro’ul-un kö’üm (“the son of A’ûjam Boro’ul”) 2
Aylı Qarayana v. Kimurya Turoqan-un
Aylı Qarayana, Kimurya Turoqan-un
Aylı Qarayana
Ayıır’ud Buirü’ud Tatar ıgen-e (“unto the Ayıır’ud Buirü’ud Tatar people”) (tr.) 53
Ba’adur v. Sübe’etei Ba’adur, Yesügei Ba’adur
Ba’aridai (a son of Bodonçar) 41
Ba’aridai-yin kö’üm (“the son of Ba’aridai”) 41
Ba’aridai Nayû Noyan (“Nayû Noyan of the Ba’arid”) 197
Ba’arin (cl.) v. Menen Ba’arin, Niçül-gül Ba’arin-un Sirgî’etü Eþügen
Ba’arin Aqa-yin ury (“the seed of the Ba’arin Eldor Brother”) 216
Ba’arin-un eþüge (“the ancestor of the Ba’arin”) 41
Ba’arin-un Qorîç Usîn Eþügen Kökô Ços (“Qorîç, Old Man Usîn, and Kökô Ços of the Ba’arin”) 120
Ba’atür v. A’ûcu Ba’atür, Bartan Ba’atür, Bülteçü Ba’atür, Cila’un Ba’atür, Çirgîdai Ba’atür, Gûyûgûneg Ba’atür, Naçin Ba’atür, Qabıî Ba’atür, Qadad Ba’atür, Qulan Ba’atür, Sübe’etei Ba’atür, Tayî Ba’atür, Übîyi’i’i Gürin Ba’atür, Yesügei Ba’atür
Badai (herdman of Yeke Çeren; free- man) 169(5), 170, 187, 202, 219
Badai Kišîîli qoyar daq quat-un noyan (“the chief of the two freemen, Badai and Kišîîli”) 51
Badai Kišîîli qoyar-un tusa-yin tula (“because of the service of both Badai and Kišîîli”) 187
Badkesen (= B(a)‘a’dîn (pl.) 227
Baytad (= Baghdad) (ct.) v. Baytad ıgen
Baytad ıgen v. Hindus ıgen Baytad ıgen qoyar-un Jâ’ura
THE SECRET HISTORY OF THE MONGOLS

Baytad ırgen-i (acc.) ("the people of Baytad") 274
Baytad ırgen-tür ("unto the Baytad people") 260
Baytad ırgen-i Qalbaı Sultan ("the Qalbaı Sultan of the Baytad people") 250
Baytad ırgen-i Qalbaı Sultan-tür ("against the Qalbaı Sultan of the Baytad people") 270
Bai Singgor Boydın (son of Qaidu) 47
Bai Singgor Boydın-ı kılı'n ("the son of Bai Singgor Boydın") 47
Bairdaray Belcir-e (pl.) ("at Bairdaray, Belcir") 177; v. Bairdaray, Belcir-e
Bajigid (peop.) 290, 292, 270, 274
Bala (a son of Sece Domoy of the Jalayir) 120, 202, 243, 250, 254; v. Jalayirtai Bala, Jalayirtai Bala
Bala Čerbi ("Steward Bala") 202
Balsayaşı (messenger of Ambayal Qaban) 52
Balaqanı̇ su v. Buqing Balaqanı̇ su, Buqar Balaqanı̇ su, Çügteren Balaqanı̇ su, Dömeqı̇ Balaqanı̇ su, Dungqang Balaqanı̇ su, İngı̇ Balaqanı̇ su, Nammadı̇ Balaqanı̇ su, Qı̇ nı̇gı̇ Balaqanı̇ su, Tä̇ nı̇n Balaqanı̇ su, Sı̇ teqı̇ Balaqanı̇ su, Uddar Balaqanı̇ su, Udaqı̇ Balaqanı̇ su, Qı̇ mı̇ Balaqanı̇ su
Balaqanı̇ su v. Abtu Balaqanı̇ su, Buqing Balaqanı̇ su, Dungqang Balaqanı̇ su, İngı̇ Balaqanı̇ su, Tä̇ nı̇n Balaqanı̇ su, Nammadı̇ Balaqanı̇ su, Uddar Balaqanı̇ su, Udaqı̇ Balaqanı̇ su, Qı̇ mı̇ Balaqanı̇ su
Balaqanı̇ su v. Abtu Balaqanı̇ su, Buqing Balaqanı̇ su, Dungqang Balaqanı̇ su, İngı̇ Balaqanı̇ su, Tä̇ nı̇n Balaqanı̇ su, Nammadı̇ Balaqanı̇ su, Uddar Balaqanı̇ su, Udaqı̇ Balaqanı̇ su, Qı̇ mı̇ Balaqanı̇ su
Balaqanı̇ su v. Abtu Balaqanı̇ su, Buqing Balaqanı̇ su, Dungqang Balaqanı̇ su, İngı̇ Balaqanı̇ su, Tä̇ nı̇n Balaqanı̇ su, Nammadı̇ Balaqanı̇ su, Uddar Balaqanı̇ su, Udaqı̇ Balaqanı̇ su, Qı̇ mı̇ Balaqanı̇ su
Bajjud v. Dalan Bailjud
Bajjun Aral ("Bajjun Isle") (is.) 24
Bajjun (lk.) 162, 163 (2)
Bajjun Na'ur ("Lake Bajjun") (lk.) 162, 163, 205 (2)
Baqaqi (of the Tayı̇ bi'-ud) 177
Baqa Corogi v. Qadagın-u Baqa Corogi

Baraqı̇ v. Tatar-un Kötön Baraqı̇ Jali Buqa
Baraqı̇ v. Ökin Baraqı̇
Baryudai Mergen-nü ökin ("daughter of Baryudai Mergen") 8
Baryujin (pl.) 100, 177, 244
Baryujin Po's (daughter of Baryudai Mergen) 8; v. Qorillartai Mergen-ı
Baryujin Po's-ı
Baryujin Tögün ("Baryujin Hollow") 177; v. Baryujin Tögün, Köl Baryujin Tögün-ı Ejen
Baryujin Tögün 157; v. Baryujin Tögün, Köl Baryujin Tögün-ı Ejen
Baryun (peop.) 239
Barim Sı̇ 'tartu Qabilı̇ (son of Bodon-čar) 48; v. Qabilı̇ Ba'atür
Barqay v. Ökin Barqay
Barqay-un omotan kö'd-tür ("unto the courageous sons of Barqay") 140
Bartan Ba'atür (second son of Qabul Qan) 48, 140
Bartan Ba'atür-un kö'ıd ("the sons of Bartan Ba'atür") 50
Bartan Ba'atür-un kö'ın ("sons of Bartan Ba'atür") 179
Bartan Ba'atür-un kö'ın-ece alus ("beyond the lineage of the son of Bartan Ba'atür") 140
Baru'an Ke'er ("Baru'an [= Parwan] Plain") 237; v. Barula Ke'er
Barula v. Erdemtő Barula, Tööden Barula, Yeke Barula, Uçügen Barula
Barula Ke'er [erratum pro Baru'an Ke'er] ("Barula Plain") 238; v. Baru'an Ke'er
Barulas (tr.) 46 (2), 120 (2)
Barulatai (son of Qasi'u) 46
Baš v. Kišıl Baš Na'ur
Baš v. Kišıl Buš Na'ur
Bataği̇qan (son of wolf and doe) 1
Bataği̇qan-nı̇ kö'ın ("the son of Bataği̇qan") 2
Batı̇ (son of Joči) 269, 270 (2), 274, 275 (2), 276, 277 (2), 279 (9), 280
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Batu-yin ene tuge-dür</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ba’u ur’u v. Aliy Ba’u ur’u, Aliy</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temür Ba’u ur’u, Onggür Ba’u ur’u</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bayan v. Naqu Qayan, Telequt</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bayan, Toruqojin Bayan</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baysa’ud (tr.) 120; v. Ma’alije Baysa’ud</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baysa’udai v. Ma’alije Baysa’udai</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bayid (peop.) 289</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bayidaraq Bel’er-e (pl.)</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(“at Bayidaraq Bel’er”)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bel’er-e</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beder Spur (lit., “Saout”) v. Beder Qo’l’un</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beder Qo’l’un v. Kimyur’a Toruqoj-un</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beder Qo’l’un-u Qorqibi</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bedi’n (of the Dörbed) 209; v. Mobi Bedi’n</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beg v. Òre Beg Digin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Begter (a half brother of Temüjin)</td>
<td>76(5), 77(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beki v. Alaqa Beki, Bilge Beki, Ça’ur Beki, Ibaka Beki, Qa’si’un Beki, Qo’jin Beki, Qu’Ca Beki, Quduqa Beki, Se’e Beki, Sørqaycan Beki, Toyo’a Beki, Tugus Beki</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bel’er v. Bayidaraq Bel’er</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belgünüte (cl.) 42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belgünüte (a son of Dobun Mergen) 10, 13, 19, 20, 25 (Belgünüte), 42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belgünüte (a half brother of Temüjin) 76(5), 77, 70, 90(5), 94, 95(5), 96, 99, 108, 104, 105(2), 107, 112(2), 124, 131(5), 132, 140(6), 154(6), 205, 248; v. Belgünüte Noyan</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belgünüte-yin eke-yi (acc.) (“the mother of Belgünüte”) 101, 112</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belgünüte-yin ene ige-tür (“at this word of Belgünüte”) 154</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belgünüte-yin mirü (“the shoulder of Belgünüte”) 50, 130</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belgünüte-yin uruy (“seed of Belgünüte”) 265</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belgünüte Noyan (idem) 112, 100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belgünüte Noyan-u ene ige-yi (acc.) (“this word of Belgünüte Noyan”) 191</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bo’orú-yin de’i (“the younger brother of Bo’orú”) 120</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berke Eléd (deza.) 168</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berke Sands v. Berke Edé</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berüde (wife of Tolui) 272</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Besüd (cl.) 47, 120</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Besüd-in nuntuy-sa (“from the encampment of the Besüd”) 188</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Besüd-in nuntuy-tur v. Tayfı’úd-un</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Besüd-in nuntuy-tur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Besüte (a son of Caraqai Lingqu) 47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Besüte (a Besüd person) 43</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilge v. İnanca Bilge Qan, Senggün Bilge</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilge Beki (a messenger of Ong Qan) 142, 181(8)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biljür v. Naya’a Biljür</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black Forest v. Qara Tun</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bodonçar (a son of Alan Póa) 83, 24, 28, 29(2), 28, 33, 34, 35, 37, 38, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44; v. Bodonçar Böödo, Bodonçar Müngquay</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bodonçar-un ablin eme-de’e (“of [lit., ‘from’] the wife which Bodonçar himself had taken”) 45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bodonçar-un qarčiyai (“the falcon of Bodonçar”) 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bodonçar Böödo (idem) (“Bodonçar ‘The Holy One’”) 121</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bodonçar Müngquay (idem) (“Bodonçar ‘The Fool’”) 17, 19, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Böödo v. Bodonçar Böödo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bolar (peop.) 265, 270 (incorrectly written Buqar), 274</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bolday v. Deli’un Bolday, Dolo’an Bolday</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bolday-a v. Qorqusi Bolday-a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bolda’ud v. Dolo’an Bolda’ud, Hulusan’ud Bolda’ud</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boldqadar (a commissioner of post stations for Qögödei) 278; v. Bulaqqadar, Bulqadar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bo’ol v. Oyda Bo’ol, Sübegei Bo’ol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bo’orú-yin de’i (“the younger brother of Bo’orú”) 120</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Bo'or'çu-yin uru-yâča ("from the family of Bo'or'çu") 240
Bo'or'çu Muqâli Sîgî Qutuqu 'yrbân-u
kelen-tür ("at the words of the
three, Bo'or'çu, Muqali, and Sîgî
Qutuqu") 242
Bo'or'çî v. Bot'o-yân Bo'or'çî
Borjigidai Mergen (son of Qarçü) 3
Borjigidai Mergen-nî ko'ân ("the
son of Borjigidai Mergen") 3
Borjîgin (cl.) 42
Bo'or'çîn v. Boto-yân Bo'or'çîn
Boro ("Gray") (name of a gelding)
3; v. Joshe Boro
Boro'yân To'a (wife of Toroqoljin
Bayan) 3
Boro'yûl (of the Jürkin) (one of the
"four foundlings"; one of the
"four kûldû'ûd; a captain of a
thousand) 181, 172 (2), 173 (4),
177, 202, 209, 214 (8); v. Boroyul,
Boro'yûl Noyan, Boro'yûl Noyan
Boro'yûl-un gersej ("the wife of Boro-
yûl") 214 (2)
Boro'yûl-un yasun-u tula ("because
of the bones of Boro'yûl") 241
Boro'yûl Noyan (of the Jürkin) 240
(2); v. Boroyul Noyan
Boroldai (of the Ikires) 199
Boroldai Suyalbi (youth of Toroqol-
jin Bayan) 3
Boro'ul (of the Jürkin) 137, 138, 213
(2); v. Boroyul
Boro'ul v. A'jam Boroyul
Boro'yûl Noyan 240; v. Boroyul Noyan
Boroqud v. Hula'an Borquad
Bosqayan v. Bûrquan Bosqayan
Botoyän Bor'orji (pl.) 106 (2), 106
Boto-yân Bo'or'çîn (pl.) 109
Botoqul Taryân (widow of Daiduqul
Soqor; ruler of the Tumorat; a wife
of Quduqa Beki) 240, 241 (2)
Bügen (a captain of a thousand) 202
Bûkô ("The Strong Man") v. Bûrî
Bûkô, Çiduqul Bûkô, Çilge Bûkô
Börte (daughter of Dei Se'ên of the
Unggîrd; wife of Temûjin) 66,
104, 110 (2); v. Börte U'jin, Qatun
Börte, U'jin Börte
Börte U'jin (eadem) 94, 99, 100, 104,
110 (4), 111, 118, 245 (3); v. Dei
Se'ên-nî Börte U'jin-i, U'jin, U'jin
Börte
Börte U'jin-û eke ("the mother of
Börte U'jin") 94
Börte U'jin-û üge-ber ("according to
the word of Börte U'jin") 119
Börte U'jin-û üge-tûr ("at the word
of Börte U'jin") 243
Branching Tree v. Seylayar Modun
Brother v. Elder Brother Çâ'adai,
Elder Brother Yesügei, Younger
Brother Jamuqa
Bu'arañ Cebî ("Steward Bu'arañ")
one of the "Six Stewards") 191
Bu'l'ad (cl.) 46
Buqidai (a son of Tûge; a captain of
a company of quiver-bearers) 225
(2), 230; v. Bukidai
Buyatu Saljî (a son of Alan To'a)
17, 19, 23; v. Buyutu Saljî
Buydurma Fountän v. Buydurma
Huj'a'ur-a
Buydurma Huj'a'ura v. Erdis-ûn Buy-
durma Huj'a'ur-a
Buyu Qadagé (a son of Alan Go'a)
17; v. Buyu Qatagi
Buyu Qatagi 19, 23, 30, 32, 33 (2),
42; v. Buyu Qadagi
Buyutu Saljî 42; v. Buyutu Saljî
Buqiing [Chinese Fei-ching] (北
京 (= Ta-nings Take of Ming)] (ct.)
Buqiing Bulaysan ("the city of Bu-
qiing") 253
Buqiing Bulaysan ("the city of Bu-
qiing") 253 (2)
Buiri'ud v. Ayiri'ud Buiri'ud Tatar
Buji (a captain of a thousand) 202
Buqidai (a son of Tûge; a captain of
a company of quiver-bearers) 225,
278; v. Bukidai
Bula's v. Alqui Bula's
Bulay v. Alqui Bulay, Olegei Bulay
Bulaqadar (a commissioner of post
stations for Ogdei) 278; v. Bol-
qadar, Bulqadar
Bul'îrî v. Bûrî Bul'îrî
INDEX NOMINUM

Bulqadar (a commissioner of post stations for Ogödei) 278; v. Bulqadar, Bulqaqdar
Buluṭyan (a captain of a thousand) 202
Buqa v. Dori Buqa, Jalı Buqa, Jalın Buqa, Kingğiydai Buqa Guregen, Qori Buqa
Buqa (younger son of Gül'in U'a of the Jalayir; brother of Muguqali) 137, 226, 227, 234, 239
Buqa Temür (younger brother of Ong Qan) 177
Buqar (= B(u) xärä) (ct.) 257, 263, 270 [erratum pro Bolar]
Buqar Balayasan ("the city of Buqar") 239
Buqatai (a messenger of Çinggis Qahan to Senggum) 168(4)
Buqiyad (peop.) 239
Burqan (king of the Qašin or Tang'-ud) 256, 265(4), 267(3); v. Burqan Qan, Ibeq, Ibeq Burqan, Ibeq Burqan Sidurya, Qašin qirgin-ı Burqan, Qašin qirgin Burqan, Sidurya, Tang'-ud qirgin Burqan-tur
Burqan (mt.) 100, 101, 103(8), 112, 145, 205; v. Burqan Qaldun, Qaldun Burqan
Burqan Basqayan (one of the two "Lords of [Mount] Burqan Qaldun") 9
Burqan Qaldun (mt.) 1, 5(2), 97, 103(2), 103(9), 111, 109, 211; v. Burqan, Qaldun, Qaldun Burqan
Burqan Qaldun-u ebbir ("[in] front of [Mount] Burqan Qaldun") 107(8)
Burqan Qaldun-u ebbir-e ("[in] front of [Mount] Burqan Qaldun") 89
Burqan Qaldun-u ebbir-iye ("by the front of [Mount] Burqan Qaldun") 106
Burqan Qaldun-u Ejed ("Lords of Burqan Qaldun") (i.e., Burqan Basqayan and Sinçî Ceyan) 9
Burqan Qaldun-u gerîber ("by the back of Burqan Qaldun") 115
Burqan Qaldun-u gorîsîn ("the wild beasts of [Mount] Burqan Qaldun") 9
Burqan Qan (of the Qašin or Tang'-ud) 249; v. Burqan
Burqad v. Hula'an Burqad
Butu v. Ikires-i Butu
Butu Guregen (idem) ("Son-in-Law Butu") 202
Bu'ura Ke'er ("He-Camel Steppes") 105, 109, 152
Bu'ura Steppe v. Bu'ura Ke'er
Buyiruy Qan (of the Naiman) 143, 168(8); v. Gügügürti Buyiruy Qan, Gügügürti Naiman-u Buyiruy Qan, Naiman-u Buyiruy Qan, Naiman-u Gügügürti Buyiruy Qan, Qurtasa-Buyiruy Qan
Buyur Na'ur ("Lake Buyur") 59; v. Qalqa-yin Buyur Na'ur-tur
Bügündü (ed.) 42
Bügünüöl (a son of Dobun Mergen) 10, 18, 19, 20, 23, 42
Büyeg (a general in the Orosud campaign) 277
Bülethü Bu'atur (son of Sem Selüle) 43
Bügi Ergi ("Büri Escarpeent") (of the Koldiren River) 96, 97, 98, 107; v. Koldiren-ü Bügi Ergi
Bügi Escarpenent v. Bügi Ergi
Büri (son of Ça'dai) 270(8), 274, 275(3), 276, 277
Büri (son of Qutgu-yu Münngler) 140; v. Büri Bükü
Büri Bükü (idem) 50, 131(3), 140(7)
Büri Bulfurin (son of Tügü'tüdei) 40
Büri Bulfurin-yin kö'ün ("the son of Büri Bulfurin") 40
Ç'a'san Tatar ("White Tatar") (tr.) 153; v. Çaban Tatar
Ça'dai (second son of Temüjin) 242, 243, 254(3), 255(4), 258(9), 259; v. Ça'dai Aqa
Ça'dai-yin yaq-aça ("from the arm of Ça'dai") 254
Ça'dai-yin jaka-tur ("to the collar of Ça'dai") 254
Ča’dai Aqa ("Elder Brother Ça’dai") 269 (2), 270 (3), 271 (8), 278 (2), 277 (2), 279 (4), 280 (3)
Ča’dai Aqa-yin kič’engü gülü’-er ("by the prudent might of Elder Brother Ça’dai") 270
Ça’alun v. Toyo’to’-yin Qutu-ytal Ça’alun
Çabciy al (pass) 247, 248, 251, 252, 253, 279
Çabćiyal Daba’an ("Çabćiyal Pass") 247
Çabćiyal-un Qalýa [Qa’alýa] ("Gate of Çabćiyal") (pass) 252
Çabćiyal-un Qa’alýa ("Gate of Çabćiyal") (idem) 247
Çaya’an v. Torolas-un Conay Çaya’an
Çaya’an v. Aman Çaya’an Ke’er, Merkeldei Çaya’an
Çaya’an Qo’a (a captain of a thousand) 202; v. Çayan Qo’a
Çaya’an U’a v. Ne’idei Çaya’an U’a-yin ter’en inu
Çaya’an Uua v. Ne’idei Çaya’an Uua
Çaya’an Qo’a-yin kő’n ("the son of Çaya’an Qo’a") 218; v. Çaya’an Qo’a
Çahan Tatar ("White Tatar") (tr.) 153; v. Ça’a’an Tatar
Çakir Ma’ud (pl.) 195 (2)
Çanai (of the family of Jürçedei) (a commissioner of post stations for Ögdöei) 226, 224, 279 (4)
Çasar (military officer in the service of Ögdöei) 278 (9)
Çangü’ud (tr.) 120
Çaqa (daughter of Buquran of the Tang’ud) 249
Çaqqurqan (of the Uriangqad) 183, 184 (2), 185; v. Uriangqadai Çaqqurqan
Çaqqurqan-ı morin ("the horse of Çaqqurqan") 184
Çaraq Ebiğen ("Old Man Çaraq") (of the Qongotad) 72 (8), 73 (3)
Çaraq Ebiğen-ı kő’n ("the son of Old Man Çaraq") 68
Çaraqai Lingqu (second son of Qaidu) 47; v. Tumbinai Çaraqai Lingqu
Çaraqai Lingqu-yin berigen eme-deче ("of [lit., 'from'] the wife [which had been] the sister in law of Çaraqai Lingqu") 47
Çaraqai Lingqu-yin kö’n ("the son of Çaraqai Lingqu") 47
Çasutu ("Snowy") (mt.) 266, 267
Çaujin [= Ça’ujin] Örtgeei (son of Qaidu) 47
Ça’ur Beki (daughter of Ong Qan; younger sister of Senggüm) 165 (2), 166 (3)
Ça’urqi (a captain of a thousand) 202, 245
Ça’urqan (a younger son of Jürçedei of the Uriangqad; a younger brother of Jelme) 120, 124, 127
Çebeyigen (a daughter of Temüjin) 230
Çeg v. Sılgin Çeg
Çegät (mt.) 61, 94, 142
Çegät-ı Sira Ke’er-e ("at the Sira Steppe of [Mount] Çegät") 67
Çeri v. Balı Çerbi, Bucıran Çerbi, Dodaç Çerbi, Dociqer Çerbi, Ögele Çerbi, Ögele Çerbi, Ögölen Çerbi, Şöyiketi Çerbi, Tolun Çerbi
Çeren (son of Qulan Ba’atav; younger brother of Altan) v. Yeke Çeren
Çeren-ı adu’ucin ("the keepers of horses of [Yeke] Çeren") 219
Çeren-ı kö’n ("the son of [Yeke] Çeren") 109
Çeren-ı uğülgeyen ivated ("the words which [Yeke] Çeren had spoken") 109
Çe’ud v. Tülkin Çe’ud
Çidun v. Qara’un Çidun, Qara’un Çidun
Çidun Çidun (son of Ba’aridai) 41 (2)
Çiđiđe (one of the two keepers of geldings of Alcbdai) 170
Çiğ Güregen ("Son-in-Law Çiğ") (a captain of a thousand) 202; v. Çiğ Güregen
Çišun (younger son of Sorqan Sira of the Suldu; one of the "four
DALAI ("Sea") (Gulf of Chihli) 258
Dalai-yn Qahan-nu silen-c ("for the broth of the Qahan of the Sea") 280
Dalan Baljud ("Seventy Marshes") (pl.) 129, 201, 218
Dalan Nemürges ("Seventy Mantles of Felt") 128 (9), 173, 175, 206
Daldurqaqan v. Qa'dan Daldurqaqan
Darbai (an ambassador of the Ul'ud) 286
Daril (erroratum pro Darim) v. Güsen Daril
Daritai (fourth son of Barton Ba-
atur; youngest brother of Yesüqe; unce of Temüjin) 148, 183
Daritai Odəqin (idem) 50, 54, 56 (9), 122
Darmac v. Çoju Darmala, Joći Dar-
ma, Qa'atai Darmala
Da'yun v. Daçu'un
Daçu'un (a captain of a thousand) 202
Dayir (a captain of a thousand) 202
Dayir ("Bay") (name of a gelding) 23
Dayir Usun (of the Uus Merkid) 105, 117, 197 (3); v. Quas Merkid-
in Dayir Usun, Uus Merkid-un
Dayir Usun
Dayir Usun-u gü ebertü ünüşün ça-
ya'an-i (acc.) ("the kid [coloured] white [horse] and which had a horn, also of Dayir Usun") 117
Degi (of the Besüd) (a shepherd; a captain of a thousand) 120, 124
(9), 202, 210, 216, 228, 243
Degelen v. Hula'an Degelen
Degtär v. Sira Degtär
Dei Sechen (of the Unggrad) (hus-
band of Cotan; father of Börte; father-in-law of Temüjin) 68 (9), 85, 86, 89 (8), 94 (3); v. Unggradai
Dei Sechen
Dei Sechen-ni Börte Üjin-i (acc.) ("Börte Üjin [daughter] of Dei Sechen") 94

Čiçurqun (mt.) 142 (2); v. Cegër
Čiçurqun qoşar-un ja'una
Čirgida v. Salj'i-ud-un Čirgida Ba-
atur
Çoju Darmala (of the Mongol) 201;
v. Joći Darmala
Conény v. Tordas-un Conény Caya'an
Čo'orqad (pl.) 265 (2)
Ču'sa Cahan Torulas ("the Torulas
of Co'as Cahan") 192
Cornaqan Qorci ("Quiver-Bearer
Qoči") 260, 274 (2)
Cornaqan Qorçi-yin geljige ("suc-
courers of Cornaqan Qorçi") 270
Čorogi v. Qadagin-u Baqû Čorogi
Čos v. Kkös Čos, Kkös Čos
Çotan (wife of Dei Sechen; mother of
Börte; mother-in-law of Temüjin) 94 (9), 95, 96
Čol ("Desert") 188 (9); v. Uray Çol
Čol-un quhr'ud ("the wells of the
Čol") 279
Čol yašar-a ("in the Čol country") 279
Čui Mören ("Čui River") (rv.) 158,
177, 198, 236
Čişerem [Persian Či'(u)č(u)'rān] v.
Čişerem Baliysaçu
Čişerem Baliysaçu ("the city of Čiş-
eren") (ct.) 269
Čügü Güregen ("Son-in-Law Cügü"
(a captain of a thousand) 251 (9); v.
Čügü Güregen
Čügelü (a captain of a thousand) 202
Da'aritai (fourth son of Barton Ba-
atur; youngest brother of Yesüqe;
unce of Temüjin) 154, 242; v.
Daritai, Daritai Odçiqin
Daš'an v. Čabiçyal Daš'an, Hune-
gen Daš'an
Dayai (of the Sulud) (one of the
two messengers of Cinggis Qahan to
Ong Qan; a captain of a thousand)
126; v. Tayai, Tayai Baatur
Dalduql Soqor (chief of the Tumad
people) 240
Dell’iun Bolday ("Dell’iun Hill")
(is.) v. Onan-nu Dell’iun Bolday-a
Dergeg v. Uunggir-ad-un Dergeg Emel
Alqui-tan, Terge
Desert v. Cp
De’ü v. Jamu-ya De’ü, To’oril De’ü
Düg Saqal-un Neqün Usun ("the Neqün Usun of Düg Saqal")
188 (2)
Düer v. Al Düer
Digid v. Ala Qaś Digid Quri
Digan v. Öre Beg Digan
Dobun Mergen (younger son of Toroquljin; husband of Alan To’a)
8, 5, 6 (2), 7, 9, 10, 12, 13 (2), 14, 15, 16, 17 (2), 18
Dodai (one of the "Six Stewards")
210; v. Dodai Cerbi
Dodai Cerbi ("Steward Dodai")
(idem) 124, 191, 193, 226, 227, 234 (3)
Doyoladai (a son of Način Ba’atur)
46
Doyšin v. Bai Şinggor Doyšin, Dörbei Doyšin
Dolo’adai (a captain of a thousand)
202
Doloan Bolday ("Seven Hills") (pl.)
(of Köde’e Aral of the Kelüren)
202
Doloan Bolda’ud ("Seven Hills")
(idem) 186
Dolonggirtai Qongtayar ("Qongtayar of the Dolonggirt")
306; v. Qongtayar, Qongtayar Qori
Dömo, v. Seče Dömo,
Dongqayid (tr.) (of the Kereyid)
150, 171, 197, 206; v. Olon Dongqayid
Dongqayid-un gelgüge ("succourer of the Dongqayid")
171 (2)
Dooqolq (of the Mangyud)
210, 281
(v. Dooqolq Cerbi
Dooqolq Cerbi ("Steward Dooqolq")
(idem) 120, 124, 191, 226, 227, 254; v. Dooqolq,
Dori Buqa (a captain of a thousand)
202
Dörbei (of the Dörbed)
240
Dörbei Doyšin ("Dörbei, ‘The Fierce’") (idem) v. Dörbetei Dörbei Doyšin
Dörbed v. Dörbetei Dörbei Doyšin
Dörbetei Dörbei Doyšin ("Dörbei, ‘The Fierce’, of the Dörbed")
240, 261
Dörben ("Four") (cl.) 11, 120, 141, 196
Dörben-ü Qaš’un Beki ("Qaš’un Beki of the Dörben")
141
Dörben irgen ("the Dörben people")
11
Döregene (a wife of Qudu, son of To’o’a Beki, given to Ögödei by Cinggis Qahan)
198 (2)
Dörmegei Balayasu ("the city of Dörmegei")
(= Ling-chou 靈州) (ct.) 267
Dungqang (C Chinese Tung-ch’ang 唐昌) (ct.) v. Dungqang Balayasu,
Dungqang Balayasu
Dungqang Balayasu ("the city of Dungqang")
247
Dungqang Balayasu ("the city of Dungqang")
247 (2), 248
Duta’ud (Tatar) (tr.) 158
Duta’ud Tatar (idem) 158
Duua Soqor 3, 4, 5 (2), 11 (3)
Düyiren (mt.) 28
Earth v. Fajar, Heaven and Earth,
Mother Earth
Ebegei (secondary wife of the father of Sača Beki of the Jürkin)
190 (2)
Ebin v. Jürbedei Ebin
Ebügejin (tr.) 166
Ebügen v. Çaraqa Ebügen, Jafri’udai
Ebügen, Sirgütı Ebügen, Sirgütü’etti
Ebügen, Usiün Ebügen
Eçi’e v. Mümögli Eçi’e
Eçi’e v. Mümögli Eçi’e, Ong Qan Eçi’e, To’oril Qan Eçi’e
Eder Altai-yi’ın belcir-iyer ("by the mouth of the valley of Eter Al-
tai") 177; v. Eter Altai-yin belcir-
iyer
Ejed v. Burqan Qaldum-nu Ejed
Ejed Qand v. Kitad ergen-ı ıaJar usun-u Ejed Qand
Ejen v. Köl Baryujañ Töglümün Enen, Ulus-un Ejen
Ejil (Turkish “Isli”) (= Volga) (rv.)
Ejen v. Adil, Idil
Eke v. Alan Eke, Ho’eñiñ Eke, Nomełun Eke, Otögen Eke, Qo’aycin Eke, Üjin Eke
Eke Etüge (”Mother Earth”) 113
Eke Toroqan (”Mother Stream”) 257
Eke Naran (”Mother Sun”) 238
Eke Onan (”Mother Onan”) 75
Eke Stream v. Eke Toroqan
Eke Üjin (”Üjin, the Mother”) 74
El Qutar (a younger brother of Ong Qan) 152
Elçi v. Ugelün Elçi
Elder Brother Ca’adai v. Ca’adai Aqa
Elder Brother Yesügei v. Yesügei Aqa
Eled v. Berke Eled, Qalaqaljid Eled
Eljiğidei (“The Donkey”) (a chief)
229; v. Eljiğidei
Eljiğidei (idem) 275 (9); v. Eljiğidei
Eljiğidei-yin kö’n (”son of Eljiğidei”) 275
Eljiğidei-yin üge-εr (”according to the word of Eljiğidei”) 278
Emegen v. Qo’aycin Emegen
Emel v. Unggirad-un Dergeg Emel
Alqui-tan
Emegen Gületü (pl.) 142
Erdemü Barula (cl.) 48
Erdis (rv.) v. Erdiis
Erdiis-un Buydurma Huja’ur-a (“at the Buydurma Fountain of the Erdiis”) 198
Erdiis (rv.) 198 (9), 207, 264; v. Erdis
Erge Qara (a younger brother of Ong Qan) 177; v. Erge Qara
Ergi v. Büyük Ergi
Ergi (rv.) 141, 144 (9); v. Ergiine Muren
Ergiine Muren (“Ergiine River”) 141, 182
Eriyaya (= Ning-hsia 夏寧) (ct.) 265
Eriye’ü (= Hsii-liang 香梁) (ct.) 265
Erke Qara (younger brother of Ong Qan) 151, 177; v. Erge Qara
Eter Altai-yin belêir-uyn (”by the mouth of the valley of Eter Altai”) 101
Everlasting Heaven v. Müngke Tengeri.

Father Münglig v. Münglig Eçige
Father Ong Qan v. Ong Qan Eçige
Father To’oril Qan v. To’oril Qan Eçige
Forest v. Black Forest, People of the Forest
Fountain v. Buydurma Fountain
Genjiğidei Tunan (”Tunan of the Ge
güed”) 210
Geniges (ct.) 47, 122, 210
Geveyid (tr.) 242; v. Kereyid
Geveyid-un To’oril (“To’oril of the Geveyid”) 184
Geügi (a captain of a thousand) 202;
v. Arqal Geügi
Ge’ün Toroqan (“Mare Stream”)
(rv.) 257
Ging v. Onggig Qingjas
girma’u (second son of Qutula Qa
han) 61
Girte v. Tüdd’en Girte
Gon v. Jau Gon
Great Assembly v. Yeke Quirilta.
Gui Ong (= Chinese Kuo-wang 高王
”Prince of the Realm”) (Muqali’s title) 202, 206; v. Muqali Gui Ong
Gungju (= Chinese Kung-chu 公主
”Princess”) (of the Kitad) 248
Güçü (of the Merkid) (one of the
”four foundlings”; a captain of a thousand) 138, 202, 214, 243, 244;
v. Kuçü
Güçügdü-un Buyiruy Qan-tur v. Nai
man-u Güçügdü-un Buyiruy Qan
tur
Güçügür (of the Besüd) (younger
INDEX NOMINUM

brother of Degei; a captain of a thousand) 124, 202; v. Küçülgür
Güçülgür Moçić (“the carpenter Güçülgür”) (idem) 223
Güçülgürteli Buyiruy Qan (“Buyiruy Qan of the Güçülgür”) 177
Güçülgül (of the Naiman) (son of Tayang Qan) 194, 287; v. Güçülgül Qan
Güçülgül Qan (idem) 194 (2), 196; v. Naiman-u Güçülgül Qan
Güçülgül Naiman-u Buyiruy Qan (“Buyiruy Qan of the Güçülgül Naiman”) 141
Güçülgül v. Enegen Güçülgül
Güçülgül [erratum pro Güçülgül] (mt.) 89; v. Güçülgül
Gür Qan (of the Qara Kitad) (uncle of Ong Qan) 189, 177 (3); v. Qara Kizad-un Gür Qan-tur
Gürbesi (mother of Tayang Qan of the Naiman) 189 (2), 194, 196
Gürbesi-yin Jasay (“the ordinances of Gürbesi”) 189
Güregen v. Alî Güregen, Kinggiyadai Buqa Güregen, Butu Güregen, Çığı Güregen, Olgar Güregen, Qadaï Güregen, Onqgïd-un Ala Quï Dïgï Quri Güregen, Quirol Aïqy Güregen
Güregen (mt.) 89 [erroneously transcribed Güregen]. 94, 128, 199, 141
Güregen v. Çigü Güregen
Gûrîn Ba‘stur v. Ubçïtai Gûrîn Ba‘stur
Güsên Darîl [erratum pro Darîm] (ct.) 283
Güse‘ûr Na‘ur (“Lake Güse‘ûr”) 151, 177
Gûl’ûn Qo‘a (son of Telegelî Bayan of the Jalayir) 208; v. Gü‘ûn U‘a
Gûl’ûn U‘a (idem) 237 (2); v. Gü‘ûn Qo‘a
Güyigüneg Ba‘stur (pers.) 247
Güyüg (son and successor of Ogödei) 270 (5), 274, 275 (5), 276 (2), 277 (2)
Fajar (“Earth”) 109; v. Tenggeri Fajar
Faro‘a v. Alan Fa‘a, Baryu‘in Fa‘a, Boroyün Fa‘a, Mongoyöljin Fa‘a
Foralas (tr.) 120; v. Forulas
Foralas-un Conay Çaya’an (“Conay and Çaya’an of the Forolas”) 141
Foralas-un Qoridai (“Qoridai of the Forolas”) 141
Foroqan v. Eke Foroqan, Ge‘ün Foroqan, Kimurya Foroqan, Sengür Foroqan, Tenggelüg Foroqan, Tüngge Foroqan, Tünggelig Foroqan
Foroqan v. Altan Foroqan, Tüngge Foroqan
Foroqan v. Kimurya Foroqan, Tana Foroqan
Forulas (tr.) 188 (2); v. Forolas
Funan (of the Geniges) 123, 210 (6), 216, 249
Funan (of the Tayîch’ûd) 177, 202
Furban Ja‘ud Merkid (“Three Hundred Merkid”) 112
Furban Merkid (“Three Merkid”) 104, 145, 205
Furban Merkid-un Uduyid-ta (“by the Three Uduyid of the Merkid”) 199
Furban müred-un terï‘ûn (“[at] the head of the Three Rivers”) 179
Furban Telesûd (pl.) 177
Haryasun [erroneously transcribed Qaryasun] (son of Eljigidei) 275, 276 (3), 277
Harîltu Na‘ur (“Harîltu Lake”) 136
Heaven v. Tenggeri
Heaven and Earth v. Tenggeri Fajar Heights v. Jeje‘er Heights, Tergüne Heights, Toqöesêy Heights
Hill v. Delî‘un Hill
Hindus-un dumda (“the middle of the Hindus”) 264
Hindus-un yajar-a (“unto the country of the Hindus”) 264
Hindus-un kiçi‘ar ingen-i (acc.) (“the people of the frontier of the Hindus”) 264
Hindus ingen Baytad ingen qoyar-un Ja‘ûra (“between both the Hindus-
people and the Baytad people") 281
Hochan Orzang (of the Tayici’ud) 144; v. Qochan Orzang, Qoton Orzang
Hoi-yin irgen ("the People of the Forest") 207
Hoi-yin irgen-see ("from the People of the Forest") 202
Hoi-yin irgen-i (acc.) ("the People of the Forest") 207, 239 (8)
Hoi-yin irgen-tir ("unto the People of the Forest") 207, 239
Hoi-yin irgen-i noyad-i (acc.) ("the chiefs of the People of the Forest") 239
Hoi-yin irgen-i yahudal ("the ways of the People of the Forest") 241
Holukun (daughter of Joji) 239
Horquday (a captain of a company of quiver-bearers) 225, 278
Horbogetur (a general of the Kitad) 251 (8)
Huelun (bride of Ciledi of the Merkid; wife of Yesugi; mother of Temu’jin) 55, 71
Huelun-iin haeci ("the vengeance of Huelun") 102
Huelun Eke-yin ger dotora ("within the tent of Mother Huelun") 98
Huelun Eke-yin ko’un-i ("the sons of Mother Huelun") 108
Huelun Eke-yin nilqa ko’un ("the youngest son of Mother Huelun") 195
Huelun Eke-yin torgid ("kindred of Mother Huelun") 81
Huelun Ujin ("Lady Huelun") 55, 56 (4), 59, 70 (2), 72, 73, 74 (2), 150 (2); v. Huelun, Huelun Eke, Ujin, Ujin Eke, Yesugei Bat’utun Huelun Ujin-ece
Huoert ı’a ("Huoert Valley") 116
Huja’ur (daughter of Qara-dail) 281
Huja’ur Ujin (a daughter of Ong Qan; wife of Toyo’a of the Merkid) 177
Hula’an Boruqad (mt.) 173; v. Hula’an Buruqad
Hula’an Buruqad (mt.) 170 (2); v. Hula’an Boruqad
Hula’an Degelen ("Red Garment") 261 (3)
Hula’an Qud (pl.) 165, 177
Hula’an’u’d Borda’ud v. Jorqal Qun-u
Hula’an’u’d Borda’ud
Huliyatu Subid (pl.) 115
Huneqen Dadan ("Fox Pass") [= Yeh-lu ling野狐嶺] 247
Huslin (a captain of a thousand) 202
Ibaqa (eldest daughter of Ibaqa Gambu) 206 (3)
Ibaqa-yin oro ("the place of Ibaqa") 208
Ibaqa Beki 186, 208; v. Ibaqa
Idil (Turkish Ili) (= Volga) (rv.) 202; v. Idil, Ejil
Idoyadai (a captain of a thousand) 243; v. Idoyadai
Idoyadai (idem) 202; v. Idoyadai
Idu’ud (Iluq’ud, Turkish Iduq Qut ("Holy Luck") (title of the ruler of the Ui’ur) 228 (4); v. Ui’ud-um Idu’ud ("the Idu’ud of the Ui’ud") 238
Hugren (a messenger of Ong Qan) 177; v. Itürgen
Ikires (tr.) 129, 202
Ikires-un Butu ("Butu of the Ikires") 120
Ikires-un Tüge Maqa ("Tüge Maqa of the Ikires") 141
Ile (a general of the Kitad) 251 (3)
Iluq (king of the Qasun or Tung’ud) 257 (2); v. Iluq Burqun, Iluq Burqun Sidurun
Iluq Burqun (idem) 260, 267, 268
Iluq Burqun Sidurun (idem) 267
Ilule (pers.) 243
Ilügei (a captain of a thousand) 202
Ilügei-yin uruy-aşa ("from the family of Ilügei") 226
Inal v. Yedi Inal
Inalçi (son of Quduqa Beki of the Oyirad) 239
Inalçi-yin aqa ("elder brother of Inalçi") 239
Inança Bilge Qan (of the Naiman) 189, 194; v. Inança Qan, Naiman-u
Inança Bilge Qan
Inança Qan (idem) 151
Irge v. Kereyid irge, Jürkin-üs irge, Merkid irge
Irge v. Ayir'ud Buiru'ud Tatar irgen, Baytad irgen, Dörchen irgen, Hoijin irgen, Jüyin irgen, Kereyid irgen, Kitad irgen, Madsari irgen, Merkid irgen, Mongol irgen, Naiman irgen, Qasín irgen, Sarata'ul irgen, Tang'ud irgen, Tatar irgen, Timad irgen, Unigiräd irgen, Uru'-ud irgen
Iru (= Merv) (ct.) 258, 259
Isebur (= Niläşpur) (ct.) 258, 259
Isle v. Aral
İtürgen (a messenger of Ong Qan) 184 (5); v. İdürgen
Jadaradai-yin kû'än ("the son of Jadaradai") 40; v. Jajiradai
Jadaran (ct.) 40, 122, 129, 196, 223
Jadaran-u ebiçe ("the ancestor of the Jadaran") 40
Jajiradai (son of the woman seized by Bodonçar) 40; v. Jadaradai
Jajiradai Jamuya ("Jamuya the Jad-
Jirad") 141; v. Jamuya
Jalaldin Sultan [Persian Jalal al-Din Sümân] 257 (4)
Jalaldin Sultan Qan Melig qoyar-i (acc.) ("both Jalaldin Sultan and Qan Melig") 257, 264 (9)
Jalaldin Sultan Qan Melig qoyar-un qoyina-ta ("behind both Jalaldin Sultan and Qan Melig") 257
Jalama-yin ebü-r-e ("in front of [Mount] Jalama") 128
Jalayir-un Qaçî'un Toyura'un Qaraqaï
Toyura'un Qaraâldai Toyura'un ("Qaçî'un Toyura'un, Qaraqaï Toyura'un, and Qaraâldai Toyura'un of the Jalayir") 120
Jalayir-un Seçe Domoy ("Seçe Domoy of the Jalayir") 120
Jalayir-un Telegetü Bayan-u kö'ün ("the sons of Telegetü Bayan of the Jalayir") 137
Jalayirtai Bala ("Bala the Jalayir") 264; v. Jalayirtai Bala
Jalayirtai Qoxçî (per.) 274
Jali Buqa v. Tatar-un Kööên Baraqa
Jali Buqa qoyar-tür
Jalin Buqa v. Tatar-un Alçi Tatar-un
Jalin Buqa
Jalayirtai [erratum pro Jalayirtai] Bala ("Bala the Jalayär") 257; v. Jalayirtai Bala
Jamuya-yin de'û ("the younger brother of Jamuya") 128
Jamuya-yin ede üges ("these words of Jamuya") 107
Jamuya-yin ede üges inu ("these words of Jamuya") 107
Jamuya-yin ene üge-yi (acc.) ("this word of Jamuya") 118
Jamuya-yin eserü ("against Jamuya") 129
Jamuya-yin eserü inu ("against Jamuya") 142
Jamuya-yin ile ("in the presence of Jamuya") 200
Jamuya-yin jüğ ("toward Jamuya") 121
Jamuya-yin manglan ("vanguards of Jamuya") 142 (2)
Jamuya-yin tere üge-tür ("at that word of Jamuya") 160, 200
Jamuqa-ynique-ür ("at the word of Jamuqa") 108
Jamuqa Altan Qusar-tan-u yousutan ("ones having the manner [of punishment] of Jamuqa, Altan, Qusar, and others") 249
Jamuqa Anda ("Anda Jamuqa") 105(2), 110, 113, 117(2), 118(3), 125, 179, 181, 194, 201; v. To'oril Qan Jamuqa Anda quyqar-a
Jamuqa De'û ("Younger Brother Jamuqa") 104(3), 105(3), 106, 170(2)
Janggi (a chief) 277(2)
Jaqa Gambu (younger brother of To'oril Qan or Ong Qan of the Kereyid) 107, 108(2), 142, 150, 158, 186(2), 208(3); v. Kereyid-ûn Jaqa Gambu
Jaqa Gambu-yin ulas-i (acc.) ("the people of Jaqa Gambu") 202
Jaqudderratum pro Jabrud?-un iger-ün ("unto the people of the Jaqudd") 281
Jaqudd (erratum pro Jabrud?) ün iger ("the Jaqudd people") 281
Jari'ud Adangqan Uriangqajin ("Adangqan Uriangqajin of the Jari'ud") (clan of the woman seized by Bodonçar) 28
Jari'udai (of the Uriangqajad) (father of Sübe'eti and Jelmé) 97; v. Jari'udai Ehügen
Jari'udai Ehügen ("Old Man Jari'udai") (idem) 97, 211
Jau Gon [Chinese Chao Kuan 蒋] (colloquial epithet for the Sung emperor) 251(2)
Jayay ( č Turkish Fáyaq) (rv.) 203, 270, 274
Jebbe ("Weapon") (of the Tayic'i'ud) (name given to Jirç oasis by Cinggis Qahan) 146, 147(4), 158, 193, 202(2), 209, 221, 227, 247(3), 248, 251, 252, 257(4), 272; v. Jirç oasis
Jebbe-yn gejige ("succourer of Jebbe") 257
Johke (son of Telegetu Bayan of the Jalayir; a captain of a thousand) 187(3), 202, 244, 244
Jedei (of the Mang'ud) (elder brother of Doqoqqu; a captain of a thousand) 243; v. Jedei
Jedei (a captain of a thousand) 202
Jedei Qondaqor v. Süüküen-û Jedei Qondaqor-un kö'un
Jegi (pers.) 278
Jeje'êr ûndür-ûn gerû-de ("at the back of Jeje'êr Heights") 166
Jeje'êr ûndür-ûn jer Qabêyai-yin amasaar-a ("at the outlet of Jer Qabêyai of Jeje'êr Heights") 185
Jelmé (of the Uriangqad) (elder brother of Sübe'eti; a captain of a thousand; one of the "four dogs") 97(5), 108, 120, 125, 145(7), 156, 202, 209(2), 211(5), 214(5); v. Jelmé Qo'a
Jelmé-yin de'û ("the younger brother of Jelmé") 120
Jelmé-yin kö'n ("the son of Jelmé") 225
Jelmé-yin tusu inu ("the services of Jelmé") 211
Jelmé Qo'a v. Uriangqadai Jelmé Qo'a
Jer Qabêyai ("Jer Narrow") v. Jeje'êr ûndür-ûn Jer Qabêyai-yin amasaar-a
Jeronu v. Jerene Qabêyai, Onon-u Jerene, Onon-u Jerene Qabêyai
Jerene Qabêyai ("Jerene Narrow") 201; v. Onon-u Jerene, Onon-u Jerene Qabêyai
Jetei (of the Mang'ud) (elder brother of Doqoqqu; a captain of a thousand) 120, 124, 202, 214(5); v. Jedei
Je'en v. Sükegei Je'en
Je(û)üredi-ûn ebüge ("the ancestor of the Je'ûred") 44
Je(û)üredi (son of Bodonçar) 43(9), 44
Je(û)üreyid (cl.) 44
Je(û)üriyedai Qali'udar ("Qali'udar of the Je'ûriyed") 183; v. Qali'udar
Jidun v. Qara'um Jidun
INDEX NOMINUM

İrîn (tr.) 170, 171(9), 185, 186, 208
İrîn-u gelîşe (“succeor of the İrîn”) 170(8)
İrîn-u Qadâ’î Ba’atu’ur (“Qadâ’î Ba’atu’ur of the İrîn”) 188
İrîn Ba’atu’ur (“İrîn Ba’atu’ur”) 170(2), 187
İryo’adai (“The Six”) (original name of Jebe of the Tayîcî’ud) 147, 227
İryo’an (of the Oronar) 120
İrîşen v. Qara İrîşen
İoî (son of Qutula Qahan) 51
İoî (eldest son of Temûjin) 105, 210, 239(6), 242(8), 243, 254(8), 255(8), 268(8), 269(8)
İoî-yin doro (“under İoî”) 210
İoî-yin ya’-aça (“by [lit., ‘from’] the arm of İoî”) 254
İoî-yin öki (“daughter of İoî”) 239
İoî-yin güçüûtû-yi (acc.) (“İoî’s [being mighty]”) 255
İoî Darmala (of the Mongol) 126(2); v. Coji Darmala
İoî Darmala-yin adu’un (“the herd of horses of İoî Darmala”) 126(2)
İoî Qaśar (second son of Yesîqel Ba’atu’ur) 60, 185
Jorqal Qun-u Hula’anu’ud Bolda’ud (mt.) (“the Hula’anu’ud Bolda’ud of Jorqal Qun”) 177
Jososo Boro (“Red-Earth Gray”) (name of a horse of Cinggis Qahan) 265(8)
Jubqan (an ambassador of Cinggis Qahan to the Sung court) 251
Jubur v. Qorqosay, Jubur
Jungdu-yin altan mûnggûn ed s’uramsun ya’u ke inu (“the gold, silver, goods, satins, and possessions of Jungdu”) 232
Jungdu-yin ed (“the goods of Jungdu”) 232
Jungdu-yin ed ya’u ke (“the goods and possessions of Jungdu”) 232
Jungdu-yin Sira Ke’er (“Yellow Plain of Jungdu”) 232
Jungui (pere.) 245
Jungso (of the Noyakin) 190
Jûngsi (a captain of a thousand) 202
Jûrêd (= Kitad) (peop.) 274
Jûrêd-un Wuqanu (“Wuqanu of the Jûrêd”) 223(8); v. Wuqanu
Jûrêd-un Jûyin v. Qara Kidad-un Jûrêd-un Jûyin, Qara Kitad-un Jûrêd-un Jûyin
Jûrêdei (of the Uru’ud) (a captain of a thousand) 171(5), 176(3), 183, 185, 202, 208(11), 209, 265; v. Uru’ud-un Jûrêdei Ebin
Jûrêdei-yin nökô’e tusa inu (“the second service of Jûrêdei”) 208
Jûrêdei-yin urû-aça (“from the family of Jûrêdei”) 226
Jûrêdei[i] (idem) 171, 176
Jûrêdei Ebin v. Uru’ud-un Jûrêdei Ebin
Jûrîk v. Jûrîk-un Sorgatu Jûrîk, Sorgatu Jûrîk
Jûrîk (tr.) 181, 182, 183(8), 186(6), 187, 139(4), 140
Jûrîk-un ige (“the people of the Jûrîk”) 137
Jûrîk-un mûntu-y-aça (“from the encampment of the Jûrîk”) 137, 138
Jûrîk igen-un yosun (“the reason of the name of the Jûrîk people”) 139
Jûrîk-un Sorgatu Jûrîk-un kö’un (“the son of Sorgatu Jûrîk of the Jûrîk”) 132
Jûrîk-un Saça Beki Taiçu (“Saça Beki and Taiçu of Jûrîk”) 133
Jûrîk-un Saça Beki Taiçu-tan (“Saça Beki, Taiçu, and others of the Jûrîk”) 130
Jûrîgen v. Qara Jûrîgen
Jûyin v. Kitad ige-un Jûyin, Qara Kidad-un Jûrêd-un Jûyin, Qara Kitad-un Jûrêd-un Jûyin
Jûyin igen v. Qara Kitad Jûyin igen, Tatar Jûyin igen
Kanglin (peop.) 270; v. Qanglin
Ke'en v. Narin Ke'ën
Ke'er v. Aman Çaya'an Ke'er
Ke'er v. Bara'an Ke'er, Barula Ke'er,
Bu'ura Ke'er, ¥unjig-yin Siya
Ke'er, Qara Ji Ke'er, Sa'ari Ke'er,
Teme'en Ke'er
Keltgegi Qada (pl.) v. Qalqa-yin Or
Nu'-yin Keltgegi Qada-da, Qalqa-
yin Or Nu'-yin Keltgegi Qada-da
Këlëren (rv.) 183
Këlëren-ii Arqal Geği-de ("at Arqal
Geği of the Këlëren ") (pl.) 188
Këlëren-ii Burïgi Ergi-de ("from
the Burïgi Escarpment of the Kë-
ëren ") 177
Këlëren-ii Kûde'e Aral-un Dolo'an
Bolds'ud ("Dolo'an Bolday of Kûde'e
Isle of the Këlëren ") 282
Këlërenu-ii Kûde'i Aral-a ("at Kû-
dei's Isle of the Kerüen ") 269
Këlëren-ii Kûde'ê Aral-un Dolo'an
Bolds'ud ("Dolo'an Bolda'ud of
Kûde'ê Isle of the Këlëren ") 180
Këlëren-ii Ùrây Cöl nü-daça ("from
the Ùrây Cöl corner of the Këlë-
ren ") (pl.) 94
Këlëren Mûren ("Këlëren River ")
(rv.) 94, 142
Këlëren Mûren-ii Ùrây ("at the
head of the Këlëren River ") 96
Këlëren Mûren-ni Ùrây ("at the
head of the Këlëren River ") 98
Këlëren Mûren ("Ken River ") (rv.)
141
Kerel (peop.) 268 [erroneously trans-
scribed Raral], 270; v. Raral
Kereyid (tr.) 171, 173, 208 (8), 214;
v. Gereyid, Ongqo'did Kereyid
Kereyid-ii Jaqa Gambu ("Jaqa
Gambu of the Kereyid ") 150, 208
Kereyid-ii Ong Qahan ("Ong Qahan
of the Kereyid ") 150
Kereyid-ii To'oril Ong Qan ("To-'
oril Ong Qan of the Kereyid ") 104
Kereyid-ii To'oril Qan ("To'oril
Qan of the Kereyid ") 120
Kereyid-ii To'oril Qan-nu ùgülgezen
üges-i (acc.) ("the words which
had been spoken by To'oril Qan of
the Kereyid ") 105
Kereyid in-gi ("the Kereyid people ")
186, 187 (8), 208
Kereyid in-gi ("the Kereyid people")
150, 200
Kereyid in-gi Ong Qan ("Ong Qan
of the Kereyid people ") 96
Kesdåyim (= Kâstîmî) (peop.) 239
Kesimir (pl.) 262, 270
Kete (a captain of a thousand) 202,
243
Kete (a captain of a thousand) 202
Keyibe (= Kiev) (270); v. Kiwa
Kibçe-çin ayen ùde'er-e ("from on
the Kibçe warfare ") 275
Kibçe'ud (pl. in -ud of Kibçe')
(peop.) 262, 270, 274, 277 (8); v.
Kimça'ud
Kîlî Ba's Na'ur ("Lake Kîlî Ba's ")
(lik.) 177; v. Kišl Ba's Na'ur
Kidad v. Qara Kidad
Kîlyo Mûren ("Kîlyo River ") 105,
109 (8)
Kimça'ud (pl. in -ud of Kimça'ud)
198; v. Kibçe'ud
Kîmûrya Goroqan ("Kîmûrya
Stream ") 88
Kîmûrya Goroqan-uu Ayil Qarayâna
("Ayil Qarayâna of Kîmûrya
Goroqan ") 122 (8)
Kîmûrya Goroqan-nu Beder Qosî-un-uu
Qorçuq-ya Bolda'-a ("at Qorçuq-qa
Hill of the Beder Spur [lik., 'Snout']
of the Kîmûrya Stream ") 88
Kîmûrya Goroqan-uu Ayil Qarayâna-da
("at Ayil Qarayâna of the Kîmûrya
Stream ") 107
Kîmûrya Stream v. Kîmûrya Goroqan
Kinggîyadai v. Olqunan'-u Kinggîy-
dai
Kinggîyadai Buqa Güregen ("Son-in-
Law Buqa of the Kinggîyadai ") (a
captain of a thousand) 208
Kiratai (a messenger of Çinggis Qan to Senggüm) 168 (2)

Kirgisd (pl. in -ud of Kirgis) (peop.) 230 (3)

Kiriluy v. Taryutai Kiriluy, Tayo-č’ud-un Taryutai Kiriluy

Kiriluy v. Tayič’ud-un Taryutai Kiriluy

Kirvatun v. Kököči Kövatun

Kiyar (= Kaşar) (ct.) 203

Kiši Baši Na’ur (”Lake Kiši Baši”) 156; v. Kiši Baš Na’ur

Kišiši (herdsman of Yeke Çoren; freeman) 51, 169 (6), 170, 187 (9), 202

Kitad (the Chin & dynasty) 247; v. Kidad

Kitad-un Altan Qahan (”the Altan Qahan of the Kitad”) 58

Kitad-un čeri’ud (”the soldiers of the Kitad”) 247

Kitad-un Jungdu Balayasu (”the city of Jungdu of the Kitad”) 268

Kitad irgen (”Kitad people”) 247, 263, 266, 271, 272 (2)

Kitad irgen-ü Altan Qa’an-i (acc.) (”the Altan Qa’an of the Kitad people”) 250

Kitad irgen-ü Altan Qan (”the Altan Qan of the Kitad people”) 132

Kitad irgen-ü Altan Qan-ni (acc.) (”the Altan Qan of the Kitad people”) 271

Kitad irgen-ü Altan Qan-nu itegelen ins’ud (”the trusty favourites of the Altan Qan of the Kitad people”) 266

Kitad irgen-ü Aquatul Altan Qa’an (”the Altan Qa’an of the Kitad tal”) 250

Kitad irgen-ü Aquatul meretü Altan Qan (”the Altan Qan of the Kitad people, named Aquatui”) 250

Kitad irgen-ü yakar nusun-ü ejed qand (”the lords and qand of the land and the waters of the Kitad people”) 272 (2)

Kitad irgen-ü Jüyin (”the Jiuyin of the Kitad people”) 266

Kiwa (= Klev) (ct.) 274; v. Keyibe

Kiwamen Kermen [erratum pro Kiwa Menkermen] (ct.) 262

Kiwa Menkermen [erroneously transcribed Kiwamen Kermen] (ct.) 262

Kiyad irgen-ü sildar (”a good omen of the Kiyad people”) 68

Kiyi an v. Mąnggetü Kiyan, Mąnggetü Kiyan, Yesigei Kiyan

Köde’ei Aral v. Kelüren-ü Köde’ei Aral-un Dolo’an Bolday

Ködeger v. Abji’a Ködegler

Köde’ei Aral v. Kelüren-ü Köde’ei Aral

Köde’ei Aral v. Kelürenü Köde’ei Aral-un Dolo’an Bolda’ud

Kösegüi Sabrä (of the Naiman) 156

Kösegüi Sabrä (idem) 159, 190 (9), 194; v. Naiman-u Küsegüi Sabrä

Kösegüi Saj’ibray (idem) 159, 162

Köke Köse 243; v. Kökö Köse

Kökö (a captain of a thousand) 202

Kökö Köse (of the Ba’arın) 202, 210, 216, 254; v. Ba’arín-u Qorçi Mỹsül

Ebügen Kökö Köse

Kökö Lake v. Kökö Na’ur

Kökö Na’ur (”Blue Lake”) (Ik.) v. Senggüm Poroqan-u Qara Jirün-ü Kökö Na’ur, Senggüm Poroqan-u Qara Jirün-ü Kökö Na’ur

Köküchü (one of the “Four Foundlings”; a captain of a thousand) 119, 138, 202, 243, 244

Köküchü (the keeper of geldings of Senggüm, son of Ong Qan) 188 (8) Küküčü Kirvatun (son of the slave Sügegi) 180 (8)

Küküčü Teb Tenggeri (middlemost son of Müğilig Eege of the Qongqotad) 244; v. Teb Tenggeri

Kül Ba’arujin Tögümü’un Ej’en (”Lord of Köl Ba’arujin Hollow”) (epithet of Baryudai Mergen) 8; v. Ba’arujin Tögüm, Baryujin Töktüm

Külen Na’ur (”Lake Kölen”) 68

Kötüer v. Abjiya Kötüer

Kötün Baraqa v. Tatar-un Kötün Baraqa Jali Baqa

Köhmen (pl.) 145, 147

Köüd v. Tayič’üd kö’ud
Köün v. Toki Köün
Küü (of the Merkid) (one of the
"four foundlings": a captain of a
thousand) 114; v. Güü
Küügür (of the Bööd) (younger
brother of Degi; a captain of a
thousand) 120; v. Güügür
Küüg v. Qaši Küüg

Lablaqa (a quiver-bearer) 278; v.
Lablaqa
Lablaqa (idem) 225
Lake Baljuna v. Baljuna Na’ur
Lake Böyer v. Böyer Na’ur
Lake Gümür v. Gümür Na’ur
Lake Kiši v. Kiši Na’ur
Lake Kii v. Kiši Na’ur
Lake Köven v. Köven Na’ur
Lord of Köl Baryun v. Köl
Baryun Tugüm-ün Ejen
Lord of the Nation v. Uhus-ün Ejen
Lords of [Mount] Burqan Qaldun v.
Burqan Qaldun-ün Ejen
Lords and qand of the land and the
waters of the Kitab people v. Kitab
irgen-ü yazar usun-ü ejej qand

Mašil Yaya’ud v. Mašil Yaya’ud
Mašil Yaya’udai ("a Mašil Ba-
ya’ud") 15, 18
Madasari irgen-ü Abtu balsasun
("the city of Abtu of the Maddasari
people") 281
Majær (= Magyars) (peop.) 270
Majær (pl. in od [¼ od] of Majær)
(= Magyars) (peop.) 292
Mangyud (cl.) 46, 120, 170 (2), 171
(4), 175, 209

Mangyud-un Quyıldar Seçen ("Quyıldar
Seçen of the Mangyud") 171; v. Quyıldar
Mangyud-un Quyıldar ("Quyıldar
of the Mangyud") (idem) 130

Mangyutai (a son of Način Ba’atur)
46
Mangyutai (a commander of day-
guards) 278

Mankerman (ct.) 274; v. Kiwa Men-
kerman, Mankerman
Maq v. Tüge Maq
Mara (a captain of a thousand) 202
Maru (¼ Persian Mori) (ct.) 201
Masqad (¼ Persian Mašad) (son of
Yalawači) 203 (2)
Masqad Qurumši (idem) 203
Mau Heights v. Mau Undür ("Bad
Heights")
Mau Undür-un ebr-lyer ("by the
front of Mau Heights") 170 (2), 173
Mau Undür-ün geri-de ("at the back
of Mau Heights") 170
Mau Undür-ün geri-er ("by the back
of Mau Heights") 170
Ma’ud v. Čišir Ma’ud
Meged Balasasun ("the city of Me-
ged") 274
Meged Balasasun ("the city of Me-
ged") 275
Meked (ct.) 270; v. Meged Balasasun,
Megen Balasasun
Megetü (a captain of a thousand)
202
Megüün Seültü (of the Tatar) 132,
133 (2), 134; v. Tatar-un Megüün,
Tatar-un Megüün Seültü
Menig v. Qan Menig
Menen Ba’arin (cl.) 41, 120
Menen Tüdun (son of Qabıši Ba’-
atur) 45 (2)
Mengeqi (a Mongolian prince) 277 (2)
Mengeqi Kiyar (a son of Bartan
Ba’atur) 80
Menkermen (ct.) 270; v. Kiwa Men-
kerman
Mergen v. Baryüdai Mergen, Bor-
jigaidai Mergen, Dobun Mergen,
Qonitar Mergen, Qorultai Mergen
Merk (tr.) 102 (2), 103 (2), 104 (2),
105, 111 (2), 112, 188 (Merki),
145, 150, 198 (8), 200, 208 (8); v.
Yurbaś Merki, Qašad Merki, Qašad
Merkid-ün Qašai Darmala,
Qo’as Merkid-ün Dayir Usun, Udu-
yid Merkiq, Uduyid Merkiq-ün
Toyo’a, Uduyid Merkiq-ün Toyo’a
INDEX NOMINUM

Beki, Udyid Uuas Merkid, Uuas Merkid-ün Dayir Usun 112
Merkid-ün a‘ur ("a mortar of the Merkid") 112
Merkid-ün čorgan ger ("the čorgan tents of the Merkid") 115
Merkid-ün yajar ("the country of the Merkid") 210 (§)
Merkid-ün ğarîm ulus ("half the people of the Merkid") 198
Merkid-ün Toyto’a ("Toyto’a of the Merkid") 192, 117, 177, 198
Merkid-ün Toyto’a Beki ("Toyto’a Beki of the Merkid") 197
Merkid-ün Toyto’a Beki-yin ko‘ün ("the son of Toyto’a Beki of the Merkid") 141, 142
Merkid-ün Toyto’a-yin ko‘d ("sons of Toyto’a of the Merkid") 109
Merkid-ün Toyto’a-yin ko‘ün ("the sons of Toyto’a of the Merkid") 144, ("sons of Toyto’a of the Merkid") 177
Merkid-ün Toyto’a-yin Qutu Cila’un quyar ko‘d ("the two sons of Toyto’a of the Merkid, Qutu and Cila’un") 162
Merkid-ün Toyto’a-yin Qutu Cila’un teri‘üen ko‘d (acc.) ("the sons such as Qutu and Cila’un of Toyto’a of the Merkid") 236
Merkid-ün ulus ("the people of the Merkid") 110 (§)
Merkid-ün Yeke Ciledü ("Yeke Ciledü of the Merkid") 54
Merkid irgen ("the Merkid people") 112
Merkid irgen ("the Merkid people") 111, 113 (§), 155, 157 (Merkid[i]), 198
Merkid irgen-i Toyto’a Beki ("Toyto’a Beki of the Merkid") 177
Merkid-i ele yasatu gu’un-ni (acc.) ("any person which was but of the Merkid bone") 119
Merkid-i čul (čul) ulja‘ur ("čul [čul] ulja‘ur of the Merkid") 204
Merkid-i Caya’an ("The Merkid White") (name of a gelding) 169
(4)
Moči v. Gölügür Moči
Moči Bedii’un (of the Dörbed) 120; v. Bedii’un
Modun v. Saylauar Modun
Mogu [Chinese Mo-chhou 蒙州] (ct.) 248
Mongol (tr.) 52 (§), 57, 108, 126, 142, 174, 189 (§), 190, 193, 194 (§), 195, 248 (§), 266
Mongol-un as-tas ("the geldings of the Mongol") 192, 194 (§)
Mongol-un ba ere ayt ("the men and the geldings of the Mongol") 248
Mongol-un čay Jaya’an ("the time and destiny of the Mongol") 194
Mongol-un čeri‘üd ("the soldiers of the Mongol") 198
Mongol-un eblies etiges-i (acc.) ("the grandfathers and fathers of the Mongol") 266
Mongol-un hünk ("the scent of the Mongol") 196
Mongol-un olon ("the many of the Mongol") 194
Mongol-un olonkin ("the more part of the Mongol") 174, 194
Mongol-un qan-tur ("with the gas of the Mongol") 248
Mongol-un qor ("the quivers of the Mongol") 190
Mongol-un törö ("the principles of the Mongol") 216
Mongol-un irgen ("the Mongol people") 189
Mongol ulus ("Mongol people") 272
Mongol ulus-un miş-ad-un noyad-i (acc.) ("captains of the thousands of the Mongol people") 202
Mongoljin To’a (wife of Borjigaidai Mergen) 8
Mongoljin ulus ("the Mongoljin people") 202
Moriël (of the Tajiil ‘ud) 124
Moroqa (a captain of a thousand) 202
Mother Alan v. Alan Eke
Mother Earth v. Eke Etsigen, Obigen Eke
Mother Hoelun v. Hoelun Eke
Mother Nomoluun v. Nomoluun Eke
Mother Onan v. Eke Onan
Mother Qoysimin v. Qoysimin Eke
Mother Sun v. Eke Naran
Mother Ujin v. Ujin Eke
Mongge (eldest son of Tolui) 270 (2), 274
Munggetu Kiyan-u koi ("son of Munggetu Kiyan") 213; v. Munggetu Kiyan
Mungke (pers. 248
Mongke Tenggeri ("Everlasting Heaven") 178, 187, 199, 203, 208, 224, 240, 256 (2), 267
Mongke Tenggeri-yin Jarly ("the decree of Everlasting Heaven") 244
Mongke Tenggeri-yin gulent-tür ("in the might of Everlasting Heaven") 224, 273
Mudun v. Saileyar Mudun
Mulqaluq (of the Jadaran) 128, 223 (3)
Mulqaluq (of the Taykill) 124
Mungquq v. Bodonbar Mungquq
Mugali (son of Gunlu U's of the Jadair; brother of Buga; one of the "four kold'ud") 187, 188, 189, 202, 208 (3), 209, 210, 224, 240, 256 (2), 260, 289 (3), v. Boorqulu Muqali Sigq Qutuq yurtban-u kelen-tür
Muqali-yin uruy-aqqa ("from the family of Muqali") 226
Muqali-yin uruy-un uruy-a gurtele ("unto the seed of the seed of Muqali") 206
Muqali Gui Ong ("Prince of the Realm, Muqali") 202, 206; v. Gui Ong
Müge (a captain of a thousand) 202
Mülke Totay (of the Ikires) 149
Münggetu (succecor of Cormaqan Qorti) 270
Münggetu Kiyan (of the Çangil'ud) 180; v. Münggetu Kiyan
Münggür v. Qutuyu Münggür
Münggiil'tür (a captain of a thousand) 202
Müngke (a captain of a thousand) 202
Müngler v. Qutuyu Müngler
Münglig (son of Carshaq of the Qongqotad; a captain of a thousand) 68 (9), 69
Münglig Ee'ee ("Father Mungkin") (idem) v. Qongqotadaig Mungkin Eei-yin ko'i'd
Münglig Eoige ("Father Mungkin") (idem) 69, 180, 183, 204 (2), 245 (3), 246; v. Father Münglig, Qongqotadaig Mungkin Eoige
Münglig Eoige-yin ger-dece ("from in the tent of Father Münglig") 168
Münglig Eoige-yin ger-tür ("in the tent of Father Münglig") 168, 204
Münglig Eoige-yin uruy-tür ("in the seed of Father Münglig") 246
Müren v. Amai Müren, Çui Müren, Ergine Müren, Keliin Müren, Ken Müren, Onan Müren, Sim Müren, Taqer Müren, Tuula Müren, Uriq'un Müren
Müürüq Se'il v. Qadiyqiy Niru'un-u Müürüq Se'il
Naqin Baatur (a son of Menen Tuden) 46
Naqin Baatur-un alin eme-dece töroqen ("those which were born of the wife which Naqin Baatur himself had taken") 46
Naqin Baatur-un ko'i'd ("the sons of Naqin Baatur") 46
Naiman (tr.) 141, 152 (2), 160 (2), 163, 196 (3), 198 (3), 200 (2), 208 (2)
Naiman-u Buyiruy Qan ("Buyiruy Qan of the Naiman") 142, 144; v. Guoq'ud Naiman-u Buyiruy Qan
INDEX NOMINUM

Naiman-u Güçügül-ün Buyuryn Qan
("Buiruy Qan of the Güçügül of the Naiman") 183
Naiman-u Güçülgül Qan
("Güçülgül Qan of the Naiman") 198 (2), 202, 237
Naiman-u İnanc İlke Qan
("İnanc İlke Qan of the Naiman") 177 (2)
Naiman-u Köşge-i Sabray
("Köşge-i Sabray of the Naiman") 177 (2)
Naiman-u qədərduyəçi
("the [best] fighter of the Naiman") (i.e., Köşge-i Sabray) 159
Naiman-u qa'arul
("a watchman of the Naiman") 188, 193 (3), "the watchmen of the Naiman") 193
Naiman-u Tayyar Qan
("Tayyar Qan of the Naiman") 190
Naiman-u Tayyar Qan-tur
("unto Tayyar Qan of the Naiman") 166
Naiman-u Tayyar Qan-u eke
("mother of Tayyar Qan of the Naiman")
(i.e., Gürbəti) 189
Naiman-u tubu'ud-i (acc.)
"the devices of the Naiman") 161
Naiman ingres
("the Naiman people") 192, 198, 200
Naiman ingres-u ulus-i (acc.)
"the nation of the Naiman people") 198
Naiman nökdü
("the Naiman companions") 195
Namng (ct.) [Chinese Nan-ching
南京] 263, 273; v. Namng Balayasu
Namng Balayasu
("the city of Namng") (idem) 201
Naqu (mt.) 198; v. Naqu Qun-nu a'ula
Naqu Bayan (father of Bo'erbü) 90, 92, 93 (2), 205
Naqu Bayan-nu ya-yəa kö'lün inu
("the only son of Naqu Bayan") 92
Naqu Bayan-nu ger-tür
("at the tent of Naqu Bayan") 93
Naqu Qun-nu a'ula
("the mountain of Naqu Qun") 198
Naqu Qun-nu ebur
("the front of Naqu Qan") 198 (2)
Naqu Qun-nu doronajı gormaı
("the eastern skirt of Naqu Qun") 195
Naran v. Eke Naran
Naratu Sitü'ên (pl.). 183; v. Ulja-yin
Quatut Sitü'ên Naratu Sitü'ên-e
Narin Ke'en (son of Yeke Ceren) 169 (3)
Narin To'oril (son of Çavay Qo'a)
218; v. To'oril
Nation v. Lord of the Nation
Na'u (rv.) 253
Na'ur v. Baljuna Na'ur, Buyur Na'ur,
Güse'ur Na'ur, Hariltu Na'ur, Kičil Baş Na'ur, Kişil Başi Na'ur,
Kökö Na'ur, Kölen Na'ur
Nayā (<Naya's q. v.) 197; v. Ba'aridai
Nayā Noyan, Nayā Noyan
Nayā Noyan (<Naya's Noyan)
(idem) 197 (2); v. Ba'aridai Nayā
Noyan, Nayā
Naya'a (a son of Sırıgül ethi of the
Niçügül Ba'arin) 149 (6), 197 (3),
202, 220 (5)
Naya'a-yin üne lige
("this word of Naya'a") 149
Naya'a Biljı'ur
("Naya'a 'The Lark'") 220; v. Ba'aridai Nayā
Noyan, Nayā, Nayā Noyan
Negus (tr.) 218 (3)
Nekün Taisi (a son of Bartan Ba'-
atur; elder brother of Yesügei) 50, 54, 56, 180
Nekün Taisi-yin kö'ün
("the son of Nekün Taisi") 122, 179
Nekün Usun v. Didig Saqal-un Nekün
Usun
Ne'deici Çaya'an Uus (of the Qongqo-
tan) 120; v. Ne'deici Çaya'an U's
Ne'deici Çaya'an U's-yin teri'ül inu
("the head of Ne'deici Çaya'an
U's") 192
Nermürges v. Dalan Nermürges
Ne'di'irin v. Yeke Ne'di'irin
Niçügül Ba'arin-u Sırıgül ethi Ebügen
("Old Man Sırıgül of the Niçü-
gül Ba'arin") 148
The Secret History of the Mongols

Nidun v. Yake Nidim
Nilga Senggum (son of Ong Qan of the Kerekid) 165, 166 (2), 167 (2);
v. Senggum
Niru'ud v. Qara'un Jidun-u niru'ud
Niru'un v. Qa'diy-i Nilru'un-u Mürüce Se'il
Nomolun Eke ("Mother Nomolun") (mother of Qaidu) 46
Noyagidal (son of Qadun) 46
Noyakin (cl.) 46, 190, 166 (9)
Noyan v. Belgütei Noyan, Naya Noyan, Odqgin Noyan, Qorqi Noyan
Nu'u v. Or Nu'u, Qaduqul Nu'u

Odqgin (= Temüge, the youngest brother of Temüjin) 195, 242, 244, 245 (9); v. A'iljan Odqgin, Dari-tai Odqgin, Temüge Odqgin, Tü-dv'en Odqgin
Odqgin-nu uruy ("seed of Odqgin") 225
Odqikin 243, 245; v. Odqgin
Odqikin-u qubi kied ("together with the part of Odqgin") 242
Odqikin-u uyala-yi (acc.) ("the wailing of Odqikin") 245
Odqikin-u eserü ("in the face of Odqikin") 245
Odqgin Abayya-yin ulus-un ökid ("the daughters of the ulus of Uncle Odqigin") 281
Odqgin Noyan 190, 195, 245 (2), 267, 269, 280; v. Odqigin, Odqikin
Oya bo'ol-un köün ("the son of the slave Oya") 180; v. Tumbina
Caraka Lingqu qoyar-un Oya
Olar Guregen ("Son-in-Law Olar") (a captain of a thousand) 202
Old Man Carafa v. Carafa Ebugen
Old Man Jaričudai v. Jaričudai Ebugen
Old Man Şirgöti v. Şirgöti Ebugen
Old Man Şirgöti'eti v. Şirgöti'eti Ebugen
Old Man Uşin v. Uşin Ebugen
Old Woman Qo'syän v. Qo'syän Emege

Oldayar Qorqi ("Quiverbearer Oldayar") 271
Olun Dongqayid (tr.) 170 (Olon Dongqayid), 171; v. Dongqayid
Olun Dongqayid ba'atud ("the Olun Dongqayid ba'atud") 170
Olqunu'ud Kinggiyadai ("Kinggiyada of the Olqunu'ud") 120
Olqunu'ud igen-öce ("from the Olqunu'ud people") 64
Olqunu'ud igen-tür ("unto the Olqunu'ud people") 61, 62
Onan (rv.) 144; v. Eke Onan, Onon
Onan-u čiajji ("[on] the yonder side of the Onan [River]") 144
Onan-nu Deli'un Bolday-a ("at Deli'un Hill of the Onan [River]") 59, 97, 211
Onan-nu ergi de'ere ("on the bank of the Onan [River]") 81
Onan-nu möšün-tür ("on the ice of the Onan [River]") 116
Onan-nu Qorqonay Jubur ("the Qorqonay Valley of the Onan [River]") 27
Onan-nu teri'un ("[at] the head of the Onan [River]") 108
Onan-nu teri'un-e ("at the head of the Onan [River]") 209
Onan-nu tun dota ("within the forest of the Onan [River]") 81
Onan-nu tun-tur ("in the forest of the Onan [River]") 50, 130, 138
Onan Müren ("Onan River") 24, 20, 34, 53, 55, 56, 72, 74, 84, 88, 106 (2)
Onan Müren-nu teri'un-e ("at the head of the Onan River") 1, 106
Ong v. Gui Ong, Ong Qan
Onggung Cingsang ("Minister Onggung") (i.e., Wan-ten Hsiang ch'eng-hsiung 安頴復典丞相 of the Chin) 132 (8), 133 (8), 134 (8)
Onggung Cingsang ("Minister Onggung") (i.e., Wan-ten Fu-hsiang ch'eng-hsiung 安頴復典丞相) 248 (8)
Onggung Cingsang-un nereyidügse'er ("because Onggung Cingsang had named . . .") 154
Onggirad (tr.) 202; v. Unggirad.

Onggiran (a captain of a thousand) 302

Ong Qahan v. Kereyd-in; Ong Qahan
Ong Qan (i.e., To’oril Qan of the Kereyid) 96 (3), 184 (4), 141 (4), 142 (3), 144, 150 (2), 151 (3), 162 (3), 157, 158, 159 (3), 160 (2), 153 (2), 164 (4), 165, 167 (2), 170 (10), 171 (2), 174 (2), 177, 178, 181, 183 (2), 184 (2), 185 (2), 188 (4), 189 (2); v. Kereyd-in igen-i Ong Qan, Kereyd-in Ong Qan, Kereyd-in To’oril Qan, To’oril Ong Qan

Ong Qan-nu altan terme ("the golden text of Ong Qan") 187

Ong Qan-nu bayidal-tur ("at the station of Ong Qan") 161

Ong Qan-nu de’il ("the younger brother of Ong Qan") 151, 196

Ong Qan-nu de’tiner ("the younger brethren of Ong Qan") 162

Ong Qan-nu minya tur’a’ud-i (acc.) ("the thousand dayguards of [me.] Ong Qan") 170

Ong Qan-nu minya tur’ay-a’ud-un no-yan ("chief of the thousand dayguards of Ong Qan") 170

Ong Qan-nu qoyina-ça ("after Ong Qan") 162

Ong Qan-nu Telegeti Amsar-a bili-kün jirimud irge adu’un ide’e ("half the people, herds, and food of Ong Qan which were at Telegeti Outlet") 162

Ong Qan-nu tige ("the words of Ong Qan") 174

Ong Qan-nu yeke yol őerğ-iyer ("with the great middle army of [me.] Ong Qan") 170

Ong Qan Eitige ("Father Ong Qan") 204

Ong Qan Eitige-de ("unto Father Ong Qan") 200

Onggirid Kereyid (tr.) 187

Onon-u Jerene-de ("unto Jerene of the Onon") 129

Onon-u Jerene Qahbiyai-a ("unto the Jerene Narrows of the Onon") 129

Oqotur (succeourer of Cormaqan Qorqo-qi) 270

Or Nu’u v. Qalqa-yin Or Nu’u-yaqin
Orqang (cl.) 47, 180

Orqartai (a captain of a thousand) 202

Orqan (rv.) v. Orqan

Orqan Selenge golur-un Talqal Aral-as ("from Talquin Isle of both the Orqan and the Selenge") 115

Orqan (rv.) 105, 195; v. Orqan

Orqan Selenge golur-un Talqal Aral-as ("at Talquin Isle [between] both the Orqan and the Selenge") 105

Orusud (plur. in -sud of Orus-Russians) ("Russians") 262, 270, 274, 277 (3)

Orusud igen-i (acc.) ("the Orusud people") 275, 277 (2)

Oyirad-un Quduqa Beki ("Quduqa Beki of the Oyirad") 141, 142, 144

Ogele (younger brother of Bo’orcu) 234; v. Ogele Cerbi

Ogele Cerbi ("Steward Ogele") (younger brother of Bo’orcu; one of the "Six Stewards") 191 (2), 226 (2), 230; v. Ogele Cerbi, Ogülei Cerbi

Ogeley Cerbi (idem) 120; v. Ogele Cerbi, Ogülei Cerbi

Ogödei (third son and successor of Cinggis Qan) 214, 242, 243, 255 (7), 285 (2), 280 (9); v. Ogödei

Ogödei-yaqin ("the life of Ogödei") 214

Ogödei-yaqin quyina-ça ("behind Ogödei") 214

Ogödei-yaqin uruy-i (acc.) ("the seed of Ogödei") 225

Ogödei Qahan ("Emperor Ogödei")
THE SECRET HISTORY OF THE MONGOLS

198, 269 (3), 270 (3), 271, 272 (3), 274, 275, 278, 279, 290, 291; v. Öğidei
Öğidei-yin tige-tür ("according to the words of your [brother] Öğidei") 268
Öğidei Cerbi ("Steward Öğidei") 124; v. Ögelgei Cerbi
Ökin Baraqay (eldest son of Qaban Qan) 139
Ökin Baraqay (idem) 48; v. Ökin Baraqay
Ökin Baraqay-un köün ("the son of Ökin Baraqay") 49
Ökidei 172 (8), 178 (2); v. Öğidei
Ökidei-yin qoyina-ča ("behind Ökidei") 178
Ölegei Bulay-a ("at Ölegei Spring") 128
Önggūd-un Ala Qūş Dīqīg Quri ("Ala Qūş Dīqīg Quri of the Önggūd") 183
Önggūd-un Ala Qūş Dīqīg Quri Güregeyn ("Ala Qūş Dīqīg Quri Güregeyn of the Önggūd") 202
Önggūr (son of Münggei Kiyan-Münggei Kiyan; a captain of a thousand) 120, 124, 202, 213 (2), 221 (8)
Önggūr Baqšurči ("the cook Önggūr") (idem) 213, 222 (3)
Orbei (a wife of Ambayai Qahan) 70 (9), 97, 98
Öre Beg Digin (chief of the Kirgisud) 239
Örtgei v. Čaujin Örtgei
Örtungei Balaṣasan ("the city of Örtungei") 260; v. Örtungei Balaṣasan
Örtungei Balaṣasan ("the city of Örtungei") 260; v. Örtungei Balaṣasan
Ötögen Eke ("Mother Earth") 255
People of the Forest v. Hoi-yin irgen Plain v. Ke'er
Qa’ad Merkid (tr.) 105, 106
Qa’ad Merkid-un Qa’atai Darlamal ("Qa’atai Darlamal of the Qa’ad Merkid") 102
Qa’an v. Altan Qa’an, Cinggis Qa’an, Yesügei Qa’an
Qa’atai Darlamal (of the Qa’ad Merkid) 105, 111, 112; v. Qa’ad Merkid-un Qa’atai Darlamal
Qaban v. Qara-un Qabqal
Qabqali-yi v. Jer Qabqali-yi, Jerene Qabqali-yi
Qabqali Ba’atun-un eke-yin inje inje [sejn- ] (acc.) ("her which was come as inje of the mother of [that] Qabqali Ba’atun") 48; v. Barim Şihratu Qabqali
Qabqali Ba’atun-un köün ("the son of Qabqali Ba’atun") 45
Qabqanal (pop.) 239
Qabqanal-as (ch.) 47
Qabul Qahan (son of Tumbinai Seên) 48, 52; v. Qabul Qan
Qabul Qahan-nu doli-un köölid-un dumbadu ("the middlemost of the seven sons of Qabul Qahan") 53
Qabul Qahan-nu köölid ("the sons of Qabul Qahan") 48
Qabul Qahan-nu qoyina ("after Qabul Qahan") 52
Qabul Qahan-nu tige-bir ("according to the word of Qabul Qahan") 52
Qabul Qan-un doli-un angaa aqa ("the eldest brother of the seven sons of Qabul Qan") 190
Qabul Qan-un doli-un aqa ("the eldest brother of the seven sons of Qabul Qan") 140
Qabul Qan-un köölid-un aqa ("the eldest brother of the sons of Qabul Qan") 189
Qaçu v. Qori Qaçu
Qaçu-un v. Sali Qaçu-un
Qaçu’uratu Subsid (pl.) 115
Qaç/qi Külių ("Hero Qaç/qi") (first son of Memen Tudun) 46
Qaç/qi Külių-un köün ("the son of Qaç/qi Külių") 46
Qačīn (second son of Menen Tudun) 45
Qačīn-nu kō'ūn ("the son of Qačīn") 46
Qačīr Uṣun ("Qačīr Water") (rv.) 195; v. Qangxyi-yin Qačīr Uṣun-a
Qačī'u (third son of Menen Tudun) 45
Qačī'u-yin kō'ū ("the son of Qačī'u") 46
Qačī'un (fifth son of Menen Tudun) 45
Qačī-un-nu kō'ūn ("the son of Qačī-un") 46
Qačī'un (third son of Yesūgei Bā'atur) 60, 79, 99, 181, 244; v. Qačī'un Elīī
Qačī'un Beki v. Dōrben-ū Qačī'un Beki
Qačī'un Beki (of the Noyakin) 166 (9)
Qačī'un Elīī ("Messenger Qačī'un") 60; v. Qačī'un (third son of Yesūgei Bā'atur)
Qačī'un Toyura'un v. Jalayır-un Qačī'un Toyura'un Qaraqai Toyura'un Qarańdai Toyura'un, Qačī'un Toyura'un Qačī-un Toyura'un
Qačula (fourth son of Menen Tudun) 45
Qačula-yin kō'ūn ("the son of Qačula") 46
Qal [erratum pro Qal q.v.] 195
Qada (general of the Kitaq) 251 (5), 252 (5)
Qada v. Qulaq-yin Or Nu'ū-yin Költege; Qada-da
Qada'an (sixth son of Qabul Qan) 48, 51, 67; v. Qada'an Taisī
t Qada'an (of the Taryud) 202, 278 (9); Qada'an Daldurqan
Qada'an (daughter of Sorqan Śira) 28, 114 (3), 219
Qada'an v. Qara Qada'an
Qada'an Bulqadar-un keşig ("the company of Qada'an and Bulqadar") 278
Qada'an Daldurqan (of the Taryud) 194, 174 (9); v. Qada'an, Taryud-un Qada'an Daldurqan
Qada'an Taisī (son of Ambayai Qahan) 58, 58; v. Qada'an
Qadagilai gū'ūn ("a person of the Qadagid") 131
Qadagin (cl.) 141 (3); v. Qatagin
Qadagin-ū Baqu Corogi ("Baqu Corogi of the Qadagin") 141
Qaday (of the Jirgin) 186; v. Qaday Ba'atur
Qaday Ba'atur (idem) 185 (9)
Qaday Ba'atur-un uge-yi (acc.) ("the word of Qaday Ba'atur") 185
Qadai (a captain of a thousand) 278 (3)
Qadai Gūregen ("Son-in-Law Qadai") (idem) 102
Qadil-iły Nir'un-un Mūrücke Se'ūl ("Mūrücke Se'ūl of Qadil-iły Nir'un") 177
Qadun v. Qoriqin Qadun, Qulan Qadun, Qu'urūqin Qadun, Yesúgen Qadun, Yesūl Qadun
Qahan v. Qara Qahan, Ambayai Qahan, Cinggis Qahan, Dalai-yin Qahan-u šūlen-e, Ong Qahan, Qoγeœi Qahan, Qabul Qahan
Qahan of the Sea v. Dalai-yin Qahan-u šūlen-e
Qadu (son of Qači Küllüg) 46
Qadu-yin kō'ūn ("the son of Qadu") 47
Qačī'un Toyura'un (of the Jalayır) 124; v. Qačī'un Toyura'un
Qal (second son of Toyo'ta Beki of the Merkid) 198 (Qal); v. Toyo'ta-yin Qudu Qal Qila'un
Qalaqaljīd Eled ("Qalaqaljīd Sands") 170, 208, 208
Qalaqaljīd Eled ("Qalaqaljīd Sands") 170, 208, 208
Qalān v. Qādūs Qaļaŋ
Qalān (mt.) 105; v. Qabun Qalān, Qaldun Burqan, Qaldun Burqan
Qaldun Burqan (idem) 108, 112
Qalibai Soltan ("the Qalibai Soltan") (i.e., Nasir, caliph of Baghdad) 269; v. Baytad irgen-ū Qalibai Soltan, Baytad irgen-ū Qalibai Soltan-tur
Qal'udar (of the Je'uriyed) 188, 184 (4), 185; v. Je'uriyedī Qal'udar
Qali'udar-un morin ("the horse of Qali'udar") 184
Qalja (a captain of a thousand) 208
Qalqa (rv. 175, 176, 208)
Qalqa-yin doronaj'i eti'd-iy'er ("along the eastern side of the Qalqa [River]") 175
Qalqa-yin horenej'i eti'd-iy'er ("along the western side of the Qalqa [River]") 175
Qalqa-yin Or Nu'u-yin Keltegei Qada-
("at Keltegei Qada of [Mount] Or
Nu'u of the Qalqa [River]") 191
Qalqa-yin Or Nu'u-yin Keltegei Qada-
da ("at Keltegei Qada of [Mount]
Or Nu'u of the Qalqa [River]") 175
Qalqa-yin Or Nu'u-yin Keltegei Qada-
da ("from Keltegei Qada of
[Mount] Or Nu'u of the Qalqa
[River]") 175
Qan v. Ajai Qan, Altan Qan, Burqan
Qan, Çingis Qan, Güüşülüg Qan,
Gür Qan, Qabul Qan, Tayang Qan,
To'ril Qan, Yesügei Qan
Qan Melig (Malik Khan or Amin al-
Mulk) 227 (3); v. Jalalding Sołtan
Qan Melig quyari, Jalalding Sołtan
Qan Melig quyaryan quyinaça
Qan Melig-ün balaçad ("the cities of
Qan Melig") 227
Qan Melig-ün kiji'ar balaçad ("the
frontier cities of Qan Melig") 227
(3)
Qangqarqan-u teri'ün-eçe ("from the
head of [Mount] Qangqarqan") 193
Qangqarqan-u teri'ü-te ("at the head
of [Mount] Qangqarqan") 193
Qangqarqan-u Qečir Usun-s ("at the
Qečir Usun of the Qangqarqan")
194
Qangqan (peop.) 193, 228, 274; v.
Kanglin
Qangqas (peop.) 228
Qara v. Erge Qara, Erke Qara,
Qara Jürigen v. Sengür Qoroqan-u,
Qara Jürigen-ii Kökö Na'ur
Qara Jürigen v. Sengür Qoroqan-u,
Qara Jürigen-ii Kökö Na'ur
Qara Kidad v. Qara Kidad
Qara Kidad-un Qor Qun-tur ("unto
Qur Qan of the Qara Kidad")
151, 152, 177, 198
Qara Kidad-un Jüred-ün Juvyn-u er-
kün omoyun čeri'ü-d-i (acc.)
("the bold and courageous soldiers
of the Juvyn of the Qara Kidad and
of the Jüred") 247
Qara Kitad 152; v. Qara Kidad
Qara Kitad Juvyn igerun ("the Qara
Kitad Juvyn people") 206
Qara Kitad-un Jüred-ün Juvyn-u er-
kün čeri'ü-d-i (acc.) ("weighty sol-
diers of the Juvyn of the Qara Kidad
and of the Jüred") 248
Qara Qadsan (son of Büri Bulčiru)
40
Qara Qadsan-un kii'ün ("the son of
Qara Qadsan") 40
Qara Qorun (ct.) 278
Qara Se'ül ("Black Tail") (rv.)
169, 177
Qara Tun v. Tu'sula-yin Qara Tun-
üs Qara Tun v. Tu'sula-yin Qara Tun-
üs Qečär (son of Suyu Seten of the
Barulas) 120
Qaradai Huijür ("Qaradai Foun-
tain") 197
Qarajj Ke'er ("Qaraqj Steppe") 105
Qaraldai (sixth son of Menen Tudun)
45
Qaraldai-yin kii'üd ("the sons of
Qaraldai") 46
Qaraldai Toypura'un (of the Jalayir)
124; v. Jalayir-un Qečäi Toypura-
um Qaraqj Toypura'un Qaraldai
Toypura'un
Qaraqj Toypura'un (of the Jalayir)
v. Jalayir-un Qečäi Toypura'un Qaraqj
Toypura'un Qaraldai Toypura'un,
Qaraqj Toypura'un
Qara'udar (pers.) 278 (3)
Qara'un Idun (mt.) 206
Qara'un Idun-u nira'üd-i ("the ridges
of [Mount] Qara'un Idun") 185
Qara'un Qabdi ("Qara'un Defiles")
180, 177 (2)
Qarču (son of Sem Söcri) 8
INDEX Nominum

Qarçu-ün kü'ün ("son of Qarçu") 3
Qargil Sira (of the Tatar) 214 (2); v. Tatar-ün Qargil Sira
Qaryasun (erratum pro Haryasun q.v.)
Qarlu'ud (plur. in -ud of Qarlu'y)
(people) v. Uur'urta Qarlu'ud-
Qarlu'ud-ün Arslan Qan ("Arslan Qan of the Qarlu'ud") 225
Qarquai Toyura'ün 194; Qaraqai Toyura'ün
Qarta'ad (tr.) 166
Qassay tergen-tür ("in a Qassay cart") 64
Qasar (second son of Yeşügei Ba'atur
by Hö'elmin Ujin) 60, 70 (8), 77 (9), 90, 98, 96, 99, 104, 105 (2),
107, 110 (2), 117, 161, 195, 245, 248, 249,
244 (18), 245, 253 (4); v. Arqai
Qasar, Joči Qasar
Qasar (= Arqai Qasar) 183 (2), 184 (5)
Qasar-ün qandud ("the sleeves of
Qasar") 244
Qasar-ün huysayad qandud ("the
sleeves of Qasar which had been
bound [by Çinggis Qahan"] 244
Qasar-ün irge ("the people of Qasar")
244
Qasar-ün uruy ("seed of Qasar") 255
Qasar-ün irge ("words of [Arqai] Qasar")
183, 184
Qasar noqai ("the Qasar dog") 78
Qaş (a son of Çila'ün Qayiçi of the
Jalayir) 197
Qaşın (pl.) 150, 177
Qaşın ğeren-ū Burqan ("Burqan [Qan]
of the Qaşın people") 249
Qaşın ğeren-ū Burqan-ni (acc.) ("Burqan
[Qan] of the Qaşın people") 260
Qataqi v. Buyu Qataqi
Qataqin 42, 196
Qatan v. Qatun Börte, Qorijin Qatun,
Qulan Qatun, Qu'urçin Qatun, Yeşügei Qatun, Yeşügi Qatun
Qatun Börte 104, 105
Qatun Üjin ("the lady Ujin") 111
Qa'urun (a captain of a thousand) 202
Qaya v. Quba, Qaya
Qayiçi v. Çila'ün Qayiçi
Qo'a v. Çayan Qo'a, Çayan Qo'a,
Gü'ün Qo'a, Jelme Qo'a
Qo'aycin (old maid servant of Mother
Hö'elmin) 101, 110
Qo'aycin Eke ("Mother Qo'aycin")
(eadem) 103
Qo'aycin Emegen ("Old Woman Qo'aycin")
(eadem) 98, 100 (3), 101 (2)
Qo'as Merkid-ün Dayir Usun ("Dayir
Usun of the Qo'as Merkid") 197
Qodun Orçang (of the Tayiçi'ud) 141;
v. Hodun Orçang, Qoton Orçang
Qojin Beki (a Mongolian princess)
165
Qongdaqor v. Sükeken-ü Jegi Qong-
daqor-ün kü'ün
Qongqai (of the Adargid) 260; v.
Adargidai Qongqai
Qongqai Qorüi ("Quiverbearer Qong-
qai") 260
Qongqaqai (a chief) 277, 278
Qongqaqai (idem) 278
Qongqotadai Čaraqa Ebuğen ("Old
Man Čaraqa of the Qongqotad")
72, 73
Qongqotadai Čaraqa Ebuğen-ün kü'ün
("the son of Old Man Čaraqa of
the Qongqotad") 68
Qongqotadai Münlig Echi'-ün kü'id
("the sons of Father Münlig of
the Qongqotad") 244
Qongqotadai Münlig Echi ("Father
Münlig of the Qongqotad") 180
Qongqotadai Tolun Cerbi ("Tolun
Cerbi of the Qongqotad") 265; v.
Tolun, Tolun Cerbi
Qongqotan (cl.) 47, 120, 244 (2), 245
(4), 246
Qongqotar v. Yegei Qongqotar
Qongqotar (of the Dolonggir) 280; v.
Dolonggirtai Qongqotar
Qongqotar Qorüi ("Quiverbearer
Qongqotar") 280
Qorüi v. Corqan Qorüi, Jalayirtai
THE SECRET HISTORY OF THE MONGOLS

Qorqiz, Oldayar Qorqiz, Qorgzai Qorqiz, Qorgzai Qorqiz, Qorgzai Qorqiz (of the Qorqiz) 181, 202, 207 (9), 241 (3); v. Ba'arfnu Qorqiz Usun Ebuqen Kokho Cos
Qorqiz Noyan (iden) 241 (2)
Qorqizui Boldaiy-a v. Kimurya Toroqan-nu Beder Qoofire-un-u Qorqizui Boldaiy-a
Qorqizun (a captain of a thousand) 202
Qorqiz Buqa v. Tatar-un Temujin Uge Qorqiz Buqa
Qorqiz Qaçar (pers) 278 (3)
Qorqiz Sibeči (a watchman of the Naiman) 188 (3), 189, 194
Qorqiz Sileuein Taiq (chief of the thousand dayguards of Ong Qun) 170 (2), 171 (2); v. Qorqiz Sileuein
Qorqiz Tuimad v. Tuimad
Qorqiz Tuimad-un yajar-a (“in the land of the Qorqiz Tuimad”) 8
Qorqiz Tuimad-un yajar-tun-iyan (“in their land of the Qorqiz Tuimad”) 9
Qorqiz Tuimad-un noyay (“chief of the Qorqiz Tuimad”) (i.e., Qorlartai Mergen) 8
Qorqiz Tuimad-un Qorlartai Mergen-nu òkin (“daughter of Qorlartai Mergen of the Qorqiz Tuimad”) 9
Qorqiz Mergen (“Qorqiz ‘The Wise’”) 2
Qorqiz Mergen-nu kührn (“the son of Qorqiz Mergen”) 2
Qorlartai v. Orodus-un Qorlartai
Qorlartai Qadun (of the Hürkin) 182 (2), 186
Qorlartai Qataun (eadem) 130
Qorlartai (cl.) 9
Qorlartai Mergen (“Qorlartai ‘The Wise’”) (chief of the Qorqiz Tuimad) 8, 9
Qorlartai Mergen-nu Baryun Foa’ta (“of [lit., ‘from ] Baryun Po’a of Qorlartai Mergen”) 8; v. Qorqiz Tuimad-un Qorlartai Mergen-nu òkin
Qorqonay Jubur (“Qorqonay Val-

Qudus Qal‘an (pers.) 191
Qudu‘udar (of the Tayi‘i‘ud) 148
Qulan (fifth son of Qabul Qahan) 48
Qulan Ba‘atur-un kō‘ün (“the son of Qulan Ba‘atur”) 51
Qulan Qadun (daughter of Dayir Usun of the Merkid) 197(8)
Qulan Qadun-nu ści (“the report of Qulan Qadun”) 197(9)
Qulan Qatun 197, 257; v. Qulan Qadun
Qulbari (a younger brother of Ong Qan of the Kereyid) 152
Qulbari Quri (idend) 177
Quldašar Qun v. Qorqonay Jubur-un Quldašar Qun-nu ści-r-e
Qum Singgir-un Urúnggu (“the Urúnggu [River] of Qum Singgir”) 156
Qun v. Naqqu Qun, Quldašar Qun, Sarły Qun
Qurçaqus (a captain of a thousand) 202
Qurçaqus Buyiruy Qan (father of Ong Qan of the Kereyid) 159, 167, 177
Qurçaqus Buyiruy Qan-u de‘ñer-ýen (“the younger brethren of Qurçaqus Buyiruy Qan”) 150
Quri v. Ala Qui Digid Quri, Ala Qui Digid Quri Guregen, Qulbari Quri Quri Silemnün (chief of the thousand dayguards of Ong Qan) 208; v. Qori Silemnün Taši
Quril Ayš Guregen (“Son-in-Law Quril Ayš”) 202
Quriltä v. Yeko Quriltä
Qurumäsi [Persian Xwär(i) smî] (peop.) 206; v. Masqud Qurumäsi
Qustu Siti’en v. Ujla-yin Qustu Siti’en Naratu Siti’en-e
Qutu (eldest son of Tayo‘a Beki of the Merkid) 141, 142, 144, 157; v. Merkid-ün Tayo‘a-yin Qutu Cila’un-uni kō‘ün-i, Qudu
Qutu v. Tayi‘i‘udai Quta Mörçi Muluqa
Qutu v. Merkid-ün Tayo‘a-yin Qutu Cila’un-goyar kō‘ün
Qutuytai v. Tayo‘a-yin Qutuytai Ca‘ahun
Qutuytu Munggür (third son of Qabul Qahan) 48; v. Qutuytu Mungler Qutuytu Munggür-un kō‘ün (“the son of Qutuytu Munggür”) 50
Qutuytu Mungler (third son of Qabul Qahan) 140; v. Qutuytu Munggür Qutuytu Yürki (son of Ökin Barqay) 48; v. Sorqatu Yürki
Qutuytu Yürki-yin kō‘ün (“the son of Qutuytu Yürki”) 49
Qutula (fourth son of Qabul Qahan) 88, 87(9)
Qutula Qahan (idend) 48, 66
Qutula Qahan-nu kō‘ün (“the sons of Qutula Qahan”) 51
Qutula Qan (idend) 179
Qutula Qan-nu deßegül Saylayyaq Modun-a v. Qorqonay Jubur-un Qutula Qan-nu deßegül Saylayyaq Modun-a Qutula Qan-un kō‘ün (“the son of Qutula Qan”) 182
Qutuq (= Sigi Qutuq) 262; v. Sigi Qutuq
Qutuqul Nu‘u (pl.) 149
Qutur v. El Qutur
Qu‘ürin (of the Jürkin) 136
Qu‘ürin Qadun (eadem) 182(9)
Qu‘ürin Qutan (eadem) 130
Quyıldar (of the Mangyud) (a captain of a thousand) 171(9), 175, 202; v. Quyıldar
Quyıldar-un amin-u tula (“because of the life of Quyıldar”) 185
Quyıldar-un de‘ere (“over Quyıldar”) 171
Quyıldar-un eme kō‘ün-e (“unto the wife and sons of Quyıldar”) 185
Quyıldar-un eme kō‘ün-e emine türme-re-en (“before and behind the wife and sons of Quyıldar”) 185
Quyıldar-un tusa-yin tula (“because of the service of Quyıldar”) 185
Quyıldar-un uruy-un uruy-a gürtle
THE SECRET HISTORY OF THE MONGOLS

(“unto the seed of the seed of Quylidar”) 185 (2)
Quylidar Anda ("Anda Quylidar") 206, 217; v. Quylidar, Quyuuldr
Quylidar Sechen (idem) 185; v. Mang-yul-un Quylidar Sechen
Quyuuldr v. Mang-yul-un Quylidar

Raral [erratum pro Kerel] 202; v. Kerel
River v. Amni River, Ergêne River, Kellûen River, Ken River, Onan
River, Selenge River, Sin River, Ta'ur River, Tula River, Tu'tula
River, Uru'un River

Sa'ari Ke'er ("Sa'ari Steppe") 128, 161, 177, 193 (5), 197, 200
Sa'ari Steppe v. Sa'ari Ke'er
Sbray v. Köger'i Sabray, Köger'i Sabray
Sbray (elder son of Sorqatu Jürki) 136 (4), 137, 176
Sa'cha Beki (idem) 192, 193, 196; v. Jürkin-ü Sa'cha Beki Taçtu, Jürkin-ü
Sa'cha Beki Taçtu-ten, Sece Beki
Sa'cha Beki-yin töeli-gek eke ("the 'little mother' of Sa'cha Beki") 190
Seayid (tr.) 122
Saylayar Mudun ("Branching Tree") 117; v. Qorqonay-un Saylayar Mudun,
Qorqonay Jubur-un Qutula Qan-nu debségil Saylayar Modun-a
Sali Qaça'u (son of A'ajam Boro'ul) 2
Sali Qaça'u-yin kö'tün ("the son of
Sali Qaça'u") 2
Saljî v. Buyuttu Saljî
Saljî'ud (cl.) 42, 141, 196
Saljî'ud-un Cigridai Ba'tar ("Cigridai Ba'tar of the Saljî'ud") 141
Sands v. Eled
Saqal v. Dídig Saqal
Sarda'ulu-un qa'jar-a ("in the land of the Sarda'ul") 177, 196; v. Sarda'ulu-
un qa'jar-a
Sarly Qun ("Yellow Cliff") (Turk-
iš) (pl.) 237
Sartay ("Mohammedan") v. Sar-
da'ul, Saray'tin, Sarta'tai, Sarta'ul
Sarta'ul qa'jin-un se'ül ("the tail of
a Sarta'ul sheep") 161
Sarta'tai v. Asan Saray'tai
Sarta'tai gi'lün-nece ("among [lit.,
'from'] the Sarta'tai people") 293
Sarta'ul ("Mohammedan") 297, 298
Sarta'ul irgen-e ("by the Sarta'ul
people") 294 (2), 206, 265
Sarta'ul irgen-i (acc.) ("the Sarta'ul
people") 206, 263, 265
Sarta'ul irgen-tür ("against the Sar-
a'ul people") 294, 295, 296 ("in
the countries of the Sarta'ul
people") 295
Sarta'ul irgen-ü sultan-i (acc.) ("the
sultan of the Sarta'ul people") 290
Sarta'ul-un qa'jar-a ("in the land of
the Sarta'ul") 192; v. Sarda'ul-un
qa'jar-a
Sasud [plur. in -ud of ? Sas] (peop.) 292; v. Sesüd
Sayiqan Tüke'en (a messenger of Nil-
qa Sengüm) 187
Sea v. Dalai, Qahan of the Sea
Sece Beki (elder son of Qutoqtu Yür-
ki) 49; v. Sece Beki
Sece Domoy v. Jelâyir-un Sece Do-
 moy
Seben v. Dei Sechen, Quylidar Sechen,
Suya Sechen, Tumbinai Sechen
Sece'tüür (a captain of a thousand) 202
Seči'tür (of the Torolâs) 130
Selenge (rv.) 109, 110, 144, 168, 177,
219 (2); v. Organ Selenge Orqoa
Selenge
Selenge-yin Bu'ura Ke'er-e ("in
the Bu'ura Steppe of the Selenge
River") 152
Semisag [erratum pro Semisaiq (q.
ru.)] (= Samarkand) 297
Semisag Bala-ysun ("the city of
Semisag") 299
Semisag Bala-ysun-aqa ("from the
city of Semisag") 299
INDEX NOMINUM

Semisgen (Turkish Sâmîz Kânî) (= Samarkand) 263; v. Semiagab
Sem Sečtle (second son of Tumbinai Seçen) 48
Sem Sečtle-yin kō’un ("the son of Sem Sečtle") 48
Sem Söçî (son of Yeke Nidî) 2
Sem Söçî-yin kō’un ("the son of Sem Söçî") 2
Senggûm (only son of Ong Qan of the Kereyid) 142 (2), 163, 164, 165, 167, 168, 171 (5), 174 (2), 177 (2), 181, 185, 188 (7), 208; v. Niqa Senggûm
Senggûm-un aqa ("the elder brother of Senggûm") 164
Senggûm-un de’ere ("over Senggûm") 171, 172
Senggûm-un döyi ("the younger sister of Senggûm") 165
Senggûm-un duran ("the heart of Senggûm") 167
Senggûm-un kâ’un ("the son of Senggûm") 165
Senggûm-un engesge qâçar ("the red cheek of Senggûm") 208
Senggûm-un eme kô’û irge orya ("the wives and sons, people and folk of Senggûm") 169, 177
Senggûm-un nokôr ("the companion of Senggûm") (i.e., Kôkôle) 188
Senggûm Anda ("Anda Senggûm") (idenm) 181 (4), 204
Senggûm Bilge (son of Çaraçai Lingqu) 47
Senggûm Bilge-yin kâ’un ("the son of Senggûm Bilge") 52
Senggûr Toroqun ("Senggûr Stream") 99, 94, 96
Senggûr Toroqun-u Qara Jirigen-û Kôkô Na’ur ("Kôkô Lake of [Mount] Qara Jirigen of the Senggûr Stream") 122
Sergesüd (plur. in -üd of Serge) (peop.) 270; v. Serkesüd
Serkesüd (plur. in -üd of Serke) (peop.) 262; v. Sergesüd
Seçüd (plur. in -üd of ? Se) (peop.) 270, 274; v. Saçud
Seçül v. Qadîlyly Nuru’un-u Mûruçe Scül, Qara Seçül Scül üü v. Megiçin Seçül Scüe [Chinese Hsiang-sun. 小顺 "Little Slave"] (name given to the Altan Qan by Ögödei Qahan) 273
Sisten (Persian Sistân) (ct.) v. Sis-ten Balaysu
Sisten Balaysu ("the city of Sis-ten") 266
Solangyas ("Koreans") (peop.) 274
Soltán (Persian Sulûh) v. Jalaqling Soltan, Qalîbâi Soltan, Soltan Soltan-u jûsâlang ("the summer house of the Soltan") 259
Soçtai (a wife of Ambayai Qahan) 70 (2), 71
Soçran Sîra (of the Suldua) (a captain of a thousand) 82 (3), 83 (2), 84, 85, 86, 87, 146 (3), 202, 210 (5); v. Sulduu-un Sorçan Sîra
Soçran Sîra-yin ger ("the tent of Sorçan Sîra") 84
Soçran Sîra-yin ger-tür ("in the tent of Sorçan Sîra") 84, 86
Soçran Sîra-yin kô’un ("the son of Sorçan Sîra") 188
Soçran Sîra-yin oçin ("the daughter of Sorçan Sîra") 146
Soçratu Jûrki (son of Ökin Barqay) 156; v. Jûrücki-un Soçratu Jûrki-yin kô’un, Qutu’tu Jûrki
Söçî v. Son Söçî
Sândiwi (Chinese Hui-an-te-fu 宣 鄉府) (ct.) 247
Sündiwu-yin qoş'un-a ("at the spur [lit. 'snout'] of Sündiwu") 247
Sündid (cl.) 47
Süyüketti Čerbi ("Steward Süyüketti")
(of the Qongqotan) (one of the "Six Stewards"); a captain of a thousand 129, 124, 191; v. Süyüketti
Steppe v. Ke'er
Stream v. Eke Stream, Gən'ün Stream,
Kimurya Stream, Senggür Stream,
Tana Stream
Subčid v. Huliyatu Subčid, Qača’ura-
tu Subčid
Suya Sečen (of the Barulaa) 180
Suldudai Tayai Ba’at’ur-un tua-yin
inu tula ("because of the service of
the Sulduj Tayai Ba’at’ur") 180
Suldus (tr.) 120
Suldus-un Sorqan Sīra ("Sorqan Sīra
of the Sulduj") 88
Sultan [Persian S(ʷ)ulən] 237; v.
Soltan
Sun v. Mother Sun
Sübeči v. Qorı Sübeči
Sübeči [Sübe’etei Sübegeči] 199;
v. Sübe’etei
Sübe’etei Ba’adur (idem) 124; v. Sü-
be’etei Ba’at’ur
Sübe’etei (of the Uriaqqad) (a
younger brother of Jelm; one of
the "four dogs") 105, 129 (4), 202,
221, 237 (8); v. Sübeči
Sübe’etei-yin gejige ("succeourer of
Sübe’etei") 257 ("succeourers of
Sübe’etei") 270, 274
Sübe’etei Ba’at’ur 120, 233, 262 (3),
270; v. Sübe’etei Ba’adur
Sübe’etei Bujeg qoysçun dalda-da
("in the shelter of both Sübe’etei
and Bujeg") 277
Sübege Bo’ol ("Slave Sübegei") (son
of Qyda Bo’ol) 180
Sübege Bo’ol-un kiu’un ("the son of
Sübegei Bo’ol") 180
Süge’etei (of the Qardsakid) (pers.)
186
Süge’etei (messenger of Chinggis Qahan)
186; v. Süge’etei
Süge’etei Je’un (idem) 177, 181 (8)
Süge’etei Je’un-un eene ko’un ("the
wives and children of Süge’etei Je’-
un") 181
Süge’etei 124, 177; v. Süge’etei
Süge’etei Je’un (idem) 120, 181
Sükeken-ui Jegei Qongdakov-un ko’un
("the son of Jegei Qongdakov of
the Sükeken") 120
Siimes v. Altran Siimes
Süyüketti (of the Qongqotan) (one of
the "Six Stewards"); a captain of a
thousand 208; v. Süyüketti Čerbi
Šibir (peop.) 259
Šiduryu ("Upright") (name given
to Burqan Qan of the Qasin or
Tang’ud by Chinggis Qahan) 267,
268; v. Iruq Burqan Šiduryu
Sigi Qutuq (one of the "four found-
lings"); a captain of a thousand
208, 208 (8), 214, 248, 262 (8), 257
(8), 260; v. Bo’orcu Muqalli Sigi
Qutuq quran-un kele-tür
Šigiken Qutuq (idem) 188; v. Siki-
ken Quduq
Šiyid (pl.) 259
Šiju’udai (a son of Način Ba’at’ur) 46
Šikiken Quduq (Šigiken Qutuq)
135
Šikiür (a cook) 180 (8), 136
Šilgin Çeg (pl.) 222
Šiligai (a captain of a thousand) 202
Šiligeljíd v. Ulquı Šiligeljíc
Šin [Sindhi] (Šindu) (rv.)
Šin Muren ("Šin River") 257 (5),
264
Šinči Bayan (pers.) (one of the two
"Lords of [Mount] Burqan Qal-
dun") 9
Singir v. Qum Šingir
Singqor v. Bai Šingqor Doyım
Sira v. Qargil Sira
Sira Değfir ("Yellow Terrace") (=Lung-hu-t'ai (龍虎台)) 247, 272
Sira Ke’er ("Yellow Steppe") v.
INDEX NOMINUM

Čęgęrt-eš Şira Ke'er-e, Jungdu-yin Şira Ke'er
Şiraqul (a captain of a thousand) 292
Şiraqan (pers.) (one of two orderers) 278
Şirgütii ("Şirgüyetü (Şirgüyetü)") Şirgütii Ebugen ("Old Man Şirgüyetü") (of the Niçiğüdù Ba'arìn) 220
Şirgüyetü (idem) 140 (2)
 Şirgüyetü Ebugen ("Old Man Şirgüyetü") (idem) 140 (5)
 Şirgüyetü Ebugen-ü kö'üd inü ("the sons of Old Man Şirgüyetü") 149
Şirün v. Aşıy Sirun
Şişis (pl.) 144
Şüti'ën v. Naratu Şüti'ën, Qusutu Şüti'ën
Tay v. Uluv Tay
Tayai (of the Suldus) (one of the two messengers of Çinggis Qahan to Ong Qan; a captain of a thousand) 194, 177, 206, 207; v. Dayai
Tayai Ba'atur (idem) 151; v. Suldudai Tayai Ba'atur
Taqi Temür Taısi (a younger brother of Ong Qan) 177
Taı̯kär (younger brother of Jamuyla) 198 (2), 199, 201
Taı̯kär-un nıru' inü ("the back of Taı̯kär") 123
Taı̯cu (son of Çutųyti Yürkı [~Sorqatu Jürkii]) 49, 122, 136 (4), 137, 179; v. Jürkin-ü Saça Beki Taı̯cu, Jürkin-ü Saça Beki Taı̯cu-tan
Taı̯si [Ç Turkish Taı̯si Ç Chinese Taı̯tcu 太子 v. Arı̯ Taisi, Nekin Taı̯si, Qada'an Taı̯si, Qori Sicemün Taı̯si, Taı̯ Temür Taı̯si
Taı̯ki (of the Suldus) 120
Taqlun Aral ("Taqlun Isle") v. Orqan Selenge goyar-un Taqlun Aral-aça, Orqan Selenge goyar-un Taqlun Aral-a
Tȧmača (son of Bataçięgan) 2
Tȧmača-un kö'ülin ("the son of Tȧmača") 2
Tamači (a captain of a thousand) 202
Tamir (rv.) 195, 196
Tanı Torqon ("Tanı Stream") (rv.) 107
Tanıyun-ı balsayad v. Uyi-yun-ı balsayad
Tanglı (mt.) 200
Tang'un [Tang'un] (peop.)
Tang'un-ı yafar-yıyar v. Ulı-un-ı yafar-yıyar
Tang'un irği ("the Tang'un people") 249 (2), 265 (3), 266
Tang'un irği-e-ı ("from the Tang'un people") 266
Tang'un irği-e-ı-en ("from his Tang'un people") 249
Tang'un irği-i (acc.) ("the Tang'un people") 266 (2)
Tang'un irği-tür ("against the Tang'un people") 265 (2), 267, 268
Tang'un irği-ı Bürqan-tür ("unto Bürqan of the Tang'un people") 266
Tang'un irği-ı ekçe etige-yi (acc.) ("the mothers and the fathers of the Tang'un people") 268
Tang'un irği-ı Iluq Bürqan-ı (acc.) ("Iluq Bürqan of the Tang'un people") 260
Tang'unud [plur. in -ud of Tang'un] (idem) 265 (2), 266
Taryd (tr.) 120, 213
Taryd-un Qada'an Daldurqan ("Qada'an Daldurqan of the Taryd") 120
Taryun v. Botoqu Taryun
Taryutai ("Fatty") (=Taryutai Kiriltuq q.v.) (of the Tayičid) 140 (6)
Taryutai Kiriltuy ("Fatty Kiriltuy") (of the Tayičid) 81, 149 (6), 220 (2); v. Tayičid-ın Taryutai Kiriltuy, Tayičid-ün Taryutai Kiriltuy Qodun Orağang A'ucu Ba'astur-tan
Taryutai Kiriltuy v. Tayičid-ün Taryutai Kiriltuy
Taryutai Kiriltuy-un kö'üd deünær
The Secret History of the Mongols

inu ("the sons and younger brethren of Täryutai Kirlitü") 149
Tä (peop.) 239
Täš v. Torbi Täši
Tätar (peop.) 59, 67, 128, 123(4), 124, 125, 128, 141, 159(2), 154(6); v. Aki Tätar, Atüq Tätar, Ayrı’ud Buiru’ud Tätar, Ça’a’n Tätar, Cahan Tätar, Dutu’ud Tätar
Tätar-un Ajai Qan ("Ajai Qan of the Tätar") 158
Tätar-un Alçi Tätar-un Jalin Buqa ("Jalin Buqa of the Alçi Tätar of the Tätar") 141
Tätar-un Köötön Baraqa Jali Buqa ("Köötön Baraqa and Jali Buqa of the Tätar") 58
Tätar-un Megüjin ("Megüjin of the Tätar") 133
Tätar-un Megüjin Se’ilü ("Megüjin Se’ilü of the Tätar") 128, 123
Tätar-un nuntu-šaa ("from the encampment of the Tätar") 138
Tätar-un Qargil Şira ("Qargil Şira of the Tätar") 214(2); v. Qargil Şira
Tätar-un Temüjin Üge ("Temüjin Üge of the Tätar") 59
Tätar-un Temüjin Üge Qori Buqa ("Temüjin Üge and Qori Buqa of the Tätar") 59
Tätar-un Yeke Ceren ("Yeke Ceren of the Tätar") 154
Tätar-un Yeke Ceren-ü skın ("the daughter of Yeke Ceren of the Tätar") 153
Tätar-un Yeke Ceren-ü Yesli ("Yesli of Yeke Ceren of the Tätar") 156
Tätar irgen ("the Tätar people") 67, 128, 154
Tätar irgen-e ("by the Tätar people") 59, 68
Tätar irgen-i (acc.) ("the Tätar people") 159, 214(2)
Tätar irgen-tür ("against the Tätar people") 59, 157, 205
Tätar Juýin irgen ("the Tätar Juýin people") 63
Ta’ur River v. Ta’u’ur Mürün
Ta’u’ur Mürün ("Ta’ur River") 233(2)
Tayang (king of the Naiman) 189
(2), 194(3); v. Tayang Qan
Tayang-un eke ("the mother of Tayang") (i.e., Gürbişü) 196
Tayang Qan 189(2), 198, 194(3), 195
(12), 106(3); v. Naiman-ü Tayang Qan, Tayang
Tayang Qan-nu doro ("under Tayang Qan") 194
Tayiči’ud (tr.) 47, 67, 72, 79(3), 89,
91, 92, 98, 119(2), 144, 146, 147,
148(2), 177, 196, 219, 237; v. Tayiči’ud
Tayiči’ud-un A’uçu Ba’tar ("A’uçu Ba’tar of the Tayiči’ud") 144
Tayiči’ud-un A’uçu Ba’tar-i (acc.) ("A’uçu Ba’tar of the Tayiči’ud") 144
Tayiči’ud-un Besüd-ûn nuntu-tur ("in the encampment of the Besüd of the Tayiči’ud") 119
Tayiči’ud-un dotora ("in the midst of the Tayiči’ud") 138
Tayiči’ud-un noyan ("chief of the Tayiči’ud") 140
Tayiči’ud-un Täryutai Kirlitü ("Täryutai Kirlitü of the Tayiči’ud") 72, 79, 141
Tayiči’ud-un Täryutai Kirlitü 219
of the Uriangqai") 183
Tayiči’ud-un Täryutai Kirlitü Qo-
dun Orçang A’uçu Ba’atur-tan ("such as Täryutai Kirlitü, Qo-
dun Orçang, and A’uçu Ba’atur of the Tayiči’ud") 141
Tayiči’ud-un Tööge-yin haran ("people of Tööge of the Tayiči’ud") 146, ("a bondman of Tööge of the Tayiči’ud") 219
Tayiči’ud-aça de’ü ("the Tayiči’ud brethren") 74, ("Tayiči’ud brethren") 24
Tayiči’ud-aça de’ü-de’en ("by thy Tayiči’ud brethren") 82
Tayiči’ud-aça de’ü-ye’in yaši’u ("the bitterness of our Tayiči’ud brethren") 76
Tayišt’ud aša de’-yin yası’un ("the bitterness of the Tayišt’ud brethren") 77, 78
Tayišt’ud kū’d ("Tayišt’ud prince") 83
Tayišt’udai (of the Tayišt’ud) 120
Tayišt’udai Qutu Morici Muqalqal ("the Tayišt’ud Qutu Morici Muqalqal") 124
Tayišt’utai yanatu gil’in-ı ("men of the Tayišt’ud ‘bone’") 148
Tayiš’ud (tr.) 144; v. Tayišt’ud
Tayiš’ud-un qoyın-ça ("after the Tayiš’ud") 79
Teb [= Teb Tenggeri q.u.] 246
Teb Tenggeri (middlenest son of Münlig Eőge of the Qongqotad) 244, 245 (11); v. Teb
Teb Tenggeri-in de’ere ("over Teb Tenggeri") 245
Teb Tenggeri-in jaqa inu ("the collar of Teb Tenggeri") 245
Teb Tenggeri-in maqalai ("the hat of Teb Tenggeri") 245
Teb Tenggeri-in qoyına-ça ("behind Teb Tenggeri") 245 (2)
Te’v. Yesün Te’e
Telegetti Amasar ("Telegetti Outlet") (pl.) 162, 177; v. Telētu Amasar
Telegetti Bayan v. Jalayir-un Telegetti Bayan-u kö’nün
Telengüd v. Adarkın-u Činos Töölös Telengüd
Telesid v. Turban Telesid
Teletü Amasar ("Teletü Outlet") 186; v. Telegetti Amasar
Tene’en Ke’er ("Camel Steppe") 190
Temüdir (pers.) 278
Temüge (youngest brother of Temüjin) 79
Temüge Olgıjin (idem) 60, 99, 245
Temüjin (eldest son of Yesügei and Hö’elin; husband of Börte; father of Jochi, Ča’adai, Ögedei, and Tolui; given the title of Cinggin Qan [or Qahan]); 60, 60 (2), 61 (2), 68 (2), 69 (2), 73 (2), 76 (2), 77 (2), 79 (2), 80, 81 (2), 88, 90 (4), 91, 92, 93 (2), 94 (2), 96 (2), 97, 99 (2), 100 (2), 103 (2), 104, 105 (2), 107 (3), 108 (2), 110 (2), 111, 113, 115 (2), 116 (5), 117 (2), 118 (4), 121 (3), 122, 123 (3), 125, 146 (2), 149 (3), 152 (2), 160, 164 (2), 166 (2), 167, 169 (3), 170 (2), 174, 177, 195 (3); v. Temüjin Anda
Temüjin-ı çinggülütgü sî’a ("Temüjin’s brass knucklebone") 116
Temüjin-ı daço’u ("the voice of Temüjin") 110
Temüjin-ı jilı’a eibür ("the reins and tether of Temüjin") 110
Temüjin-ı qoyın-ça ("after Temüjin") 101, 102, ("behind Temüjin") 121
Temüjin-ı’si ("of the house of Temüjin") 100
Temüjin Anda ("Anda Temüjin") 105, 106 (2), 117, 127 (2), 166; v. Temüjin
Temüjin Anda Anda ("Anda, Anda Temüjin") 118
Temüjin Üge v. Tatar-un Temüjin Üge
Temülin (sister of Temüjin) 60 (2), 79, 99
Temür v. Ašiy Temür Bako’ur’ei, Buqa Temür, Tai Temür Taisi, Toğon Temür
Tenggel[g] Teroqan ("Tenggel[g] Stream") 100
Temügeri ("Heaven") 1, 80 (2), 113, 143, 145, 187 (8), 179, 190 (2), 201, 207, 208
Temügeri-yin Ja’arin ("the foretoken of Heaven") 206
Temügeri-yin Jaya’ar ("by the destiny of Heaven") 197
Temügeri-yin kū’d ("sons of Heaven") 21
Temügeri (a son of the Altan Qan) 283
Temügeri Ta’jar ("Heaven and Earth")
THE SECRET HISTORY OF THE MONGOLS

113, 121, 125, 206, 224, 224, 260

(2), 281

Tenggeri ṭaṛa-jun ihe’ el (“the protection of Heaven and Earth”) 163, 177

Tenggeri ṭaṛa-jun jaya’an čay (“the destiny and the time of Heaven and Earth”) 248

Tenggis (“Tenggis [Sea]”) 1; v. Tenggis Dalai

Tenggis Dalai (“Tenggis Sea”) (idem) 199

Tenleg [erratum pro Teleng] (peop.) 239

Terge (of the Unggirad) 178; v. Derge

Tergüne Heights v. Tergüne Undür

Tergüne Undür (“Tergüne Heights”) (mt.) 79

Tersüd (pl.) 159

Three Merkid v. Turban Merkid

Three Rivers v. Turban muired-ün teri’un

Tobsaqa (a captain of a thousand) 202

Tobaqa (a captain of a thousand) 202

Toyon Temür (a captain of a thousand) 202

Toyto’a (of the Uduyid Merkid) 105, 197 (2), 198; v. Merkid-ün Toyto’a, Toyto’a Beki, Toyto’a Bö’e, Uduyid Merkid-ün Toyto’a

Toyto’a-ün erüge de’ere inu (“upon the hole at the top of the tent of Toyto’a”) 105

Toyto’a-ün esgel qali-un-i (“Toyto’a’s yellowish white mare with black tail and mane and barren for several years”) 117

Toyto’a-ün körü̧ď-in (acc.) (“the sons of Toyto’a”) 199

Toyto’a-ün Qudu Qul Cila’un teri’-ten körü̧ď-in (“the sons of Toyto’a having at their head Qudu, Qul, and Cila’un”) 199

Toyto’a-ün Qudu Qul Cila’un teri’-ten körü̧ď-i (acc.) (“the sons of Toyto’a having at their head Qudu, Qul, and Cila’un” 199

Toyto’a-ün Qutuytai Ca’alun ("Qutuytai and Ca’alun of Toyto’a") 157

Toyto’a-ün yeke köünst (“the eldest son of Toyto’a”) 157

Toyto’a Beki 109, 157, 177; v. Merkid-ün Toyto’a Beki, Merkid-ün Toyto’a Beki, Toyto’a, Uduyid Merkid-ün Toyto’a Beki

Toyto’a Beki-ün erüge de’ere-bi (“from upon the hole at the top of the tent of Toyto’a Beki”) 109

Toyto’a Beki-ün yeke köünst (“the eldest son of Toyto’a Beki”) 198

Toyto’a Bö’e (“the sorcerer Toyto’a”) 181; v. Toyto’a

Toyto’a-ud (cl.) 218

Toyto’a-ün Qalay-tai Toyto’a-ün Qaral-dai Toyto’a-ün, Qal’ün Toyto’a-ün

Tolon (a captain of a thousand) 202

Tolui (youngest son of Chinggis Qahan) 186, 214, 245, 251 (2), 255 (2), 258, 259 (2), 260 (2)

Tolui-ün amin-tur (“unto the life of Tolui”) 214

Tolui Köünst (“Prince Tolui”) 272 (2)

Tolui (of the Qongqotad; one of the “Six Stewards”) 212, 214, 267 (2)

Tolun Čerbi (“Steward Tolun”) (idem) 191, 258, 267 (2); v. Qongqotadai Tolun Čerbi

To’oril (of the Kereyid; also called Ong Qan g.ü.) 108, 181; v. Gereyid-ün To’oril, To’oril Ong Qan, To’oril Qan

To’oril (of the Ebüge’iin?) 106 (2)

To’oril (son of Yegei Qongtayinar) 180; v. To’oril De’i

To’oril (son of Čayan Qo’s) 218 (2); v. Narin To’oril

To’oril De’i (“Younger Brother To’oril”) (son of Yegei Qongtayinar) 180

To’oril Ong Qan (of the Kereyid; also
called Ong Qan q.v.) 194; v. Kereyid-ün To'ořil Qan Qan
To'ořil Qan (idem) 106, 107(4), 108
(8), 110, 115, 115, 126, 133(7),
134; v. Kereyid-ün To'ořil Qan Qan
To'ořil Qan-nu de'ü (“the younger
brother of To'ořil Qan”) 107
To'ořil Qan Aqa (“Elder Brother
To'ořil Qan”) 106(2)
To'ořil Qan Töge (“Father To'ořil
Qan”) 133
To'ořil Qan Jamu-ya Anda qoyar-a
(“unto both To'ořil Qan and Anda
Jamu-ya”) 111
Töquęša Heights v. Töquęša Undür
Töquęša Undür (“Töquęša Heights”)
12
Toqear (a succourer of Sübe'etei)
237(4), 280
Torbi Taši (messenger of Tayang
Qan) 190
Torluy Qan (= Tay Qan of the
Naiman) 190; v. Türley Tayang
Torquoljin (son of Borjigidai Mergen)
v. Torquoljin-nu k'üm (“the son of
Torquoljin”) 8
Torquoljin Bayan (“Torquoljin ‘The
Rich’”) (son of Borjigidai Mergen)
9
Totay v. Mulke Totay
Töbüiid [plur. in -ud of Töbüiid (“Tibetan”)] v. Töbüiid noqod
Töbüiid noqod (“‘Tibetan dogs’”) 280
Tödö’en (seventh son of Qabul Qahan)
51; v. Tödö’en Ooğıün
Tödö’en (subject of Senggüm of the
Kereyid) 181(2)
Tödö’en Barula (cl.) 48
Tödö’en Girti (of the Tayiçi‘ud) 72
(2); v. Tayiçi‘ud-un Tödöge-yin
haraın
Tödö’i’n Ooğıün (seventh son of Qabul Qahan) 48; v. Tödö’en
Tödöge v. Tayiçi‘ud-un Tödöge-yin
haraın
Tö’e v. Yesün Tö’e
Tögilas Beki (eldest son of Toyo’to’a
Beki) 167
Tuł índice v. Adarkan-u Çınos Tuł índice
Telenggid
Tułći (elder brother of Inałći) 229
Tubas (peop.) 289
Tubluy v. Yedi Tubluy
Tudun v. Menen Tudun
Tula (rv.) v. Tu’ula
Tula-yin Qara Tun-na (“in the Black
Forest of the Tu’ula [River]”) 264
Tumad (peop.) 240, 241(3); v. Qori
Tumad
Tumad igen-i (acc.) (“Tumad peo-
ple”) 240(2), 241; v. Qori Tumad
igen
Tumad igen-i noyan (“chief of the
Tumad people”) 240
Tumad igen-i ıkid (“daughters of
the Tumad people”) 241
Tumad igen-i ıkid yo’stan (“which
are beautiful maidens of the Tumad
people”) 241
Tumbinaí v. Tumbinaí Seçen
Tumbinaí Çaraqai Lingqu qoyar-un
Qyda (“Qyda of both Tumbinaí
and Çaraqai Lingqu”) 180
Tumbinaí Seçen (son of Bai Şingqor
Doşkín) 47
Tumbinaí Seçen-nu k’üm (“the sons
of Tumbinaí Seçen”) 48
Tunggon [Chinese Tung-kuan 亜
幹] v. Tunggon Amasár
Tunggon Amasár (“Tunggon Pass”)
251(4)
Tungquädai (a captain of a thousand)
202
Tuqi (third son of Qasar) 183
Turys’ud (mt.) 129
Turułyu Tayang (Turley Tayang) 194;
v. Torluy Qan
Turuqan (pers.) 218
Tusaqa (son of Senggüm) 165
Tu’ula (rv.) v. Tu’ula
Tu’ula-yin Qara Tun-na (“in the Black
Forest of the Tu’ula [River]”) 164
Tu’ula-yin Qara Tûm-ne (“in the
THE SECRET HISTORY OF THE MONGOLS

Black Forest of the Tu’ula[River]”
268 (2)
Tu’ula-yin Qara Tun-ni (acc.) (“the Black Forest of the Tu’ula[River]”)
115
Tu’ula Muren-ni Qara Tun-ni (“in the Black Forest of the Tu’ula River”)
104
Tübe’en v. Tümen Tübe’en
Tübe’en (cl.) 150; v. Tümen Tübe’en
Tübe’i (acc.) (cl.) 208; v. Tümen Tübe’i
Tübe’i-gelji (“succeor of the Tübe’en”) 170
Tüge (a captain of a thousand) 202
Tüge-yin kö’n (the son of Tüge) 225
Tüge Maqa v. Ikires-ün Tüge Maqa
Tügei (a wife of Qudu, eldest son of Toyo’a Beki) 198
Tügü’düei (son of Jadardai) 40
Tügü’düei-yin kö’n (“the son of Tügü’düei”) 40
Tükin Ce’dü (pl.) 190
Tümen Tübe’en (cl.) (of the Kere-yid) 137
Tümen Tübe’i (acc.) (idem) 171
Tümen Tübe’n-ü Acı-y Şirun (“Acı-y Şirun of the Tümen Tübe’en”) 171
Tümen Tübe’n-ü Acı-y Şirun-ü (acc.)
(“Acı-y Şirun of the Tümen Tübe’n-ü”) 170 (2)
Tüngge (a son of Cila’un Qayişt) 157
Tüngge Torqan-u dorona (“east of the Tüngge Stream”) 177
Tüngge Torqan-u dorona (“east of the Tüngge Stream”) 177
Tüngge Stream v. Tüngge Torqan,
Tüngge Torqan
Tünggelg (rv.) 107 v. Tünggelg
Tünggelg Torqan
Tünggelg Torqan (“Tünggelg Stream”) 5, 28, 30, 32, 35
Tünggelg Stream v. Tünggelg Torqan
Tüyideger (a captain of a thousand)
202
Ubüçüti Gürün Ba’atür (“Gürün Ba’atür of the Ubüçüti”) 160
Udan (= Khotan) (ct.) 268
Udarar [Persian Uṭrār] (ct.) v. Udarar, Udarar
Udarar Bala-yasun (ct.) (“the city of Udarar”) 257; v. Udarar Bala-yasun,
Udarar Balayasu, Udarar Balasun
Udarar Balayasu (idem) (“the city of Udarar”) 258; v. Udarar Bala-yasun,
Udarar Balasun
Udkiya (pl.) 142
Udarar Balayasu (ct.) (“the city of Udarar”) 258; v. Udarar Balayasu,
Udarar Balayasu, Udarar Balasun
Udarar Balayasu (idem) (“the city of Udarar”) 258; v. Udarar Balayasu,
Udarar Balayasu, Udarar Balasun
Udutai (a captain of a thousand) 202
Uduyid (ct.) (of the Merkid) v. Turban Merkid-ün Uduyid-ta
Uduyid Merkid (tr.) 114
Uduyid Merkid-üür (“against the Uduyid Merkid”) 106
Uduyid Merkid-ün Toyo’a (”Toyo’a of the Uduyid Merkid”) 102
Uduyid Merkid-ün Toyo’a Beki (”Toyo’a Beki of the Uduyid Merkid”) 111
Uduyid Uus Merkid-i (acc.) (“the Uduyid and Uus Merkid”) 105
Uy’ud [Uy’ud; plur. in -d of Uy’ur] (peop.); v. Uy’ud, Uyurtai
Uy’ud [plur. in -d of Uy’ur]
Uy’ud-un Tangyud-un balayad (“the cities of the Uy’ud and of the Tangyud”)
151
Uy’ud-un Idu’ud (“the Idu’ud of the Uy’ud”) 238
Uy’ud-un Tang’ud-un yahar-iyar (“by the lands of the Idu’ud and of the Tang’ud”)
152 (2), 177
Uyurtai (a commissioner of post stations for Ögödei) 279
Uyurtai (peop.); v. Uy’ud
Uyurtai Qarlu’ud-i (acc.) (“the Uyurtai and the Qarlu’ud”) 198
Ula (rv.) 253
Ulja (rv.) 132, 133 (2)
INDEX NOMINUM

Ulja-yin Qushtu Siti‘en Naratu Siti‘en-en-e (“at Qushtu Siti‘en and Naratu Siti‘en of the Ulja”) 138
Ulji Silügeljid (rv.) 153, 173
Unggirad (tr.) 94 (Unggira[d]) (“the Uly Tey (int.) (“Big Mountain”) (Turkish) 144
Uly Tey-un Soqoy Usun-a (“at the Soqoy Usun of Uly Tey”) 138
Uly Tey-un Soqoy Usun-aqa (“from the Soqoy Usun of Uly Tey”) 177
Ulus-un Ejen (“Lord of the Nation”) 121 (2), 261
Uncle Odögin v. Odögin Abaya
Unggirad (tr.) 94 (Unggira[d]) (“the Unggira[d]”) 177, 196
Unggirad-un Dei Sechen (“Dei Sechen of the Unggirad”) 61
Unggirad izgen (“Unggirad people”) 64, (“the Unggirad people”) 64, 176
Unggiradai Dei Sechen (“Dei Sechen of the Unggirad”) 61, 176
Unggirad-un Dergec Emel Alqui-tan (“Dergec, Emel, Alqi and others of the Unggirad”) 141
Uqana (ambassador of Cinggis Qahan to the Sarta’ul people) 233 (2)
Uray Cöl (des.) v. Kelüren-ü Uray Cöl nu-daça
Uraqai Balayaasu (“the city of Uraqai”) 267
Uraqai Balayaasu-aqa (“from the city of Uraqai”) 267
Uriyang (erratum pro *Yarkend) (ct.) 268
Uriyangqadai Çaqurqan (“ Çaqurqan of the Uriyangqadai”) 183
Uriyangqadai güün (“a person of the Uriyangqadai”) 12, 97; v. Adangqıa Uriyangqadai güün
Uriyangqadai Jelme Qo’a (“Jelme Qo’a of the Uriyangqadai”) 170
Uriyangqadai-tur (“unto the Uriyangqadai [i.e., Burqan Boq activists and Sinči Bayan]”) 9
Uriyangqıa v. Jarčj’ud Adangqıa Uriyangqıa
Uriyangqıa-aqa (“from the Uriyangqıa”) 190
Ursud (popul.) 289
Ursi’un Muren (“the Ursi’un River”) 28
Uru’dai (a son of Naičin Ba’atur) 46
Uru’d (cl.) 46, 136, 170 (2), 171 (4), 175, 176, 195, 208, 209
Uru’d-un Jürçedei (“Jürçedei of the Uru’d”) 130
Uru’d-un Jürçedei Ebin (“Uncle Jürçedei of the Uru’d”) 171
Uru’d izgen-tür (“unto the Uru’d people”) 206
Usun v. Ariy Usun, Qačır Usun, Soqoy Usun
Usun v. Dayır Usun
Usas Merkiv v. Udyuyd Usas Merkid
Usas Merkiv-un Dayır Usun (“Dayır Usun of the Usas Merkid”) 102, 109
Usas Merkiv-un Dayır Usun-i (acc.) (“Dayır Usun of the Usas Merkid”) 117.
Uögen Barula (“The Little Barula”) (cl.) 46
Uge v. Temüjin Uge
Ujin [Č?Turkish < Chinese Fǔ-jen 族人] (“Lady”) (= Ho’elün Ujin q.v.) 75, 111 (2); v. Borte Ujin, Eke Ujin, Ho’elün Ujin, Huj’ur Ujin, Qatun Ujin
Ujin Borte (“Lady Borte”) 105; v. Borte
Ujin Eke (“Mother Ujin”) (= Ho’elün Ujin q.v.) 74 (2), 75 (2), 78
Urüngçëci (= Urgang) 265; v. Urüngçëci Balayaasu, Urüngçëci Balayaasu
Urüngçëci Balayaasu (“the city of Urüngçëci”) 265, v. Urüngçëci Balayaasu
Urüngçëci Balayaasu (“the city of Urüngçëci”) 265, v. Urüngçëci Balayaasu
Urüngçëci Balayaasu-aqa (“from the city of Urüngçëci”) 268
Urünggü (rv.) 188, 177; v. Çum Şing-gir-un Ürünggü
Yesūgei Ba’ustur (idem) 50, 54, 56, 59, 61, 62, 66, 67, 68, 70, 111, 140, 164
Yesūgei Ba’ustur-un Hö’elün Üjin-čė (“of lit., ‘from’ Hö’elün Üjin of Yesūgei Ba’ustur”) 60
Yesūgei Ba’ustur-un üge-yi (acc.) (“the word of Yesūgei Ba’ustur”) 69
Yesūgei Kiyan 67; v. Yesūgei
Yesūgei Qa’an (idem) v. Yesūgei Qa’an-u čay-tur
Yesūgei Qa’an-u čay-tur (“in the time of Yesūgei Qa’an”) 150
Yesūgei Qan 96, 105, 150 (3), 151, 164, 177 (4); v. Yesūgei
Yesūgei Quda (Quda Yesūgei) (idem) 62, 63 (2), 65
Yesūgen Qadun (a daughter of Yeke Ceren of the Tatar; younger sister of Yesili) 156 (3), 158
Yesūgen Qatun (eadem) 155
Yesūgen Qatun-u üge-tür (“unto the word of Yesūgen Qatun”) 155
Yesili (a daughter of Yeke Ceren of the Tatar; elder sister of Yesūgen Qatun) 155, 156; v. Tatar-un Yeke Ceren-ü Yesili, Yesili Qadun, Yesili Qatun
Yesili-yin üge (“the word of Yesili”) 254
Yesili Qadun (eadem) 150 (2), 254, 255 (2), 268; v. Yesili
Yesili Qatun (eadem) 155 (2)
Yesün Te’e (“Nine Spans”) (son of Jelme; a captain of quiverbearers, etc.) 293 (3), 290, 294
Yesün To’e (“Nine Spans”) (idem) 278
Yesüngge (second son of Qasar) 183
Yesüngge (idem) 269
Yid v. Alex Yid
Yoqunan (messager of Ala Quś Dīgid Quri) 180 (2)
Younger Brother Jamaqva v. Jamaqva De’u
Younger Brother To’oril v. To’oril De’u
Yuruqan (a captain of a thousand) 202
Yürüq v. Qutuytu Yürüq
INDEX VERBORUM

[N.B. This index consists of all the Mongolian words which appear in the translation, but which, for a variety of reasons, have been left untranslated. Some of them are &anga &anguta of unknown meaning. Others are technical terms for which there is no precise English equivalent. Still others such as ba’atur, qun, etc., are already so well established, albeit under diverse transcriptions, in occidental languages that it has seemed preferable to leave them without translation. The English translations of the Chinese glosses on all words (except those of unknown meaning) have been inserted in brackets. As in the case of the “Index Nominum,” the numbers after the words refer to the sections of the text in which they occur. The numbers in parentheses indicate the number of occurrences within a section. The abbreviations are the same as those used in the “Index Nominum.”]

abui babui [not glossed] (a prayer formula; cf. abracadabra) 174
ai [not glossed] (an exclamation) 178; v. ayi
alaśas [“Huaśi” horses] (On 19 August 1866, Dr. William HUNO asserted that “the character Huaśi of the gloss is erroneous.”) (plur. in -s of aalaśas, a loan word of Turkish origin, meaning “horse” or “gelding.”) Cf. Nicholas POPPE, “The Turkic Loan Words in Middle Mongolian,” Central Asiatic Journal 1 (1955) 36-42 [p. 38].) 273
alda [“measure (of length)”] (the span of the arms; a measure of approximately six feet) 105 (8)
anda [“tally-friendship”; “tally-union” (i.e., “friendship or union as close as two matching tallies”)] (sworn brother) 96 (3), 104, 106 (9), 116 (8), 117 (8), 127 (4), 150 (8), 161, 160 (9), 164, 168, 170 (6), 171 (8), 177 (8), 181, 195 (3), 196 (9), 200 (4), 201 (18); v. Jamyuña Anda, Quyildar Anda, Senggüm Anda, and Temüjin Anda in the “Index Nominum”
angyu’a [“name of (a kind of) arrow”] (an arrow with a forked tip) 193
a’uruy [“camp for the old and the young” (i.e., “camp for the family dependents”) 186, 273; v. yeke a’uruy
a’uruy ud [“families”] (plur. in -ud of a’uruy q.v.) 186 (2), 198 (3)
ayi [“sighing sound”] (an exclamation of grief) 189, 190 (2), 194; v. aiyil [“camp”] 81, 84, 112
ba’adur [“valiant man”] (ba’atur q.v.) v. Sübë’etí Ba’adur and Yeśügei Ba’adur in the “Index Nominum”
ba’atud [“valiant men”] (plur. in -d of ba’atur q.v.) 191, 192, 226 (2); v. Jirgin Ba’atud and Ölon Dongqayid Ba’atud in the “Index Nominum”
babui v. abui babui
barus [“name of (a kind of) animal”] (erratum pro baruyt) 46
bayan v. saqal bayan

271
bèki ["official title"] (cf. Turkish bóğa) 216 (3); v. Aliqa Beki, Bilge Beki, Çağlar Beki, Ibaqa Beki, Qaźi’un Beki, Qaźi’un Beki, Qoqin Beki, Qoqin Beki, Qoqqusa Beki, Sağa Beki, Sêve Beki, Sonqaytani Beki, Soyto’a Beki, and Tögüs Beki in the “Index Nominum” 216
beter [not glossed] 276 (cf. qatar) bild’u ur ["small bird which tells Heaven"] (a lark) 160; v. bilju’ur bilju’ur [not glossed] ("lark") v. Nasy’a Bilju’ur in the “Index Nominum”
boytala- ["to put on the ku-ku headgear"]; "to comb out (one’s) head (of hair)" (i.e., "to put on the boyta") 74, 854; v. boytola-
boytala- ["to comb out (one’s) head (of hair)" (i.e., "to put on the boyta") 854
börün sone ["name of a (kind of) duck"] (Cf. Antoine Mostaert, Sur quelques passages, p. [139], n. 125, and Louis Lusser, "Un épisode d’origine chinoise du „Geser-kan”,
c’a’d quri ["official title"] (a title by which Temüjin designated himself) 178; v. ja’ad quri
cerbii ["official title"] (a steward) 191 (4) (cerbini [acc.]), 192; v. Bala Çerbi, Buqáran Çerbi, Doqun Çerbi, Ogele Çerbi, Ogeki Çerbi, Ogülen Çerbi, Söylütçü Çerbi, and Tolun Çerbi in the “Index Nominum”
cerbin (plur. in -s of çeribi) (idem) 233 cerbin ["official title of women"] (stewards) 232
ciçéga ["name of the root of a (kind of) plant"] 74
čina ["sighing sound"] (an exclamation) 194 činsang [not glossed] (Cf. Chinese chieng-hsiang 棄相 “minister”) v. Onggii Cünsang in the “Index Nominum” čorgan [not glossed] (Cf., however, čőoryatai “having a lock” in §114. It may be that čorgan should be read čöryan = čöryan < čő’oryan “lock”) 115 čul (?) čulja’ur [not glossed] ("bastard, son of the Merkid") (Cf. Antoine Mostaert, Sur quelques passages, pp. [185]-[187], n. 167, and p. [166]) 254 čuraqa ["name of a (kind of) fish"] 73
dargi [not glossed] (This may be the same as the Ordos t’argi “court (poils, herbage), pen profound (eau).” Cf. Antoine Mostaert, Dictionnaire ordos, Tome 2, p. 647a.) 90(3
daruyacín ["title of the officers who garrison and defend"] (plur. in -s of daruyaci) (an imperial governor) 263, 273, 274
daruyas ["ones who garrison and defend"] (plur. in -s of daruyay) (imperial governors) 263 (8)
da’un v. qadalun da’un
da’usi [not glossed] (a kind of camel) 274
deresiin ["mat-thorn-grass"] (i.e., lasiagoestis splendens. Cf. Antoine Mostaert, Dictionnaire ordos, Tome 1, p. 141a.) 249
ding [not glossed] (If read deng (~teng) instead of ding, it would mean “equal.” Cf. Antoine Mostaert, Sur quelques passages, p. [97], n. 92.) 177 dörben külli’ud (“four stalwarts”) 168, 177 dörben külli’ud-i (acc.) (“four stalwarts”) 168 (2)
dörben külli’ud-iyen (acc.) (“his ‘four
INDEX VERBORUM

külü’üd ”] 168, (“my ‘four kulü-üd’”) 168, (“thy ‘four külü-üd’”) 177, (“his ‘four külü’üd’”) 177
dörben külü’üd-ün minu urida (“before my ‘four külü’üd’ [arrived]”) 177

eblesi-’er [not glossed] (instr. in -er of elbesi) (“by [our] elbesi”) 188; v. elbesi
elbesin [not glossed] (a kind of prayer) 174
dölüd v. güring elöüd
emüskeg [”(gift of clothing which is)
offered to present oneself”] (erratum
pro emüskel q.v.) (synonym of št-ši-ši-ši q.v.) 96
emüskel (erroneously transcribed
emüskeg q.v.)

gui ong [not glossed] ( ≠ Chinese kou-wang “prince of the realm”) (title granted to Muqali by Cinggis Qahan) 206, 206(2), 220; v. Muqali Gui Ong in the “Index Nominum”
gür qa [”universal emperor”] (title
given to Jamuya by his followers;
title of the ruler of the Qara Kitan
and of the uncle of Ong Qan) 141 (8); v. Gür Qan in the “Index Nominum”
güre’ed [”circles”] (plur. in -d of
güre’en) 129
gürele- [”to pitch camp,” i.e., “to
make a güre’en”] (güre’ele- q.v.) 145
güre’ele- [”to pitch camp,” i.e., “to
make a güre’en”] (güre’ele- q.v.)
144, 145(8), 196

güre’en [”circle” (i.e., “an encamp-
ment around which the carts are
drawn up in the form of a circle for
protection”)] 120, 122(6), 151, 177, 196, 205, 215; v. güre’en

güre’en-ü kij’ar-a (“at the edge of
the güre’en”) 205

güri’en [”circle”] 90; v. güre’en
güri’en-ü kij’ar-a (“at the edge of
the güri’en”) 90
güring elöüd [”name of a (kind of)
camel”] 274
gürlüg [”name of a (kind of)
python”] 195
gýjaru inerû [”to burn food in the
earth and offer [it] in sacrifice”]
(The exact meaning of this technical
term is unknown. For a discussion
of it cf. Antoine MONTAERT,
“Sur quelques passages,” pp.[16]-[18].) 70
gyodoli [”p’o 𓐽𓐹 (”bone-tipped
arrow”)” (i.e., “an arrow without a
point, which does not wound”)]
(Cf. K. U.-KÖMALM, “Über die
pfleifenden Pfeile der innerasiatischen
Reitermodenen.” Acta Orient.
alia, Tomus III, pp. 45-71 [especia-
lly pp. 54-61]) 112, 116
hula’n buqa [”name of a wild beast”]
(lit., “red ox”) (a kind of elk)
240(2)

inerû v. gýjaru inerû

inggirėgy [”simple saddle” (i.e., “a
wooden saddle serving as pack-
saddle for horses and oxen, without
a pad and without stirrups at-
tached”)] 172

ingje [”(ones who) follow the bride”
(i.e., “ones who accompany the
bride as dowry”)] (plur. in -s of
ingje [- inje q.v.]) 208(2)
inje [”(one who) follows the bride”
(i.e., “one who accompanies the
bride as dowry”)] 45; v. ingjes

Jada [”the ability to bring about
wind and rain”, “wind and rain”]
143(8)

Jadala- [nomen futuri Jadalaquin “the
act of bringing about wind and
rain”] (plur. in -n of Jadalaquin [lit.,
”ones who bring about wind and
rain”]) 143

THE SECRET HISTORY OF THE MONGOLS

Jalama [not glossed] (a kind of prayer) 174
ja’ud quiri [not glossed] (a title given to Chinggis Qahan by Onggqnd Cing-
sang) 154; v. ça’ud quiri
ja’uqasu ["root of the sham-tan ʃan-tan :
(‘mountain cinnabar ‘)] (Cf. shan-
tan in the Chih-yun-hsièh ta-ts’u-
tsien 植物學大詞典 [Botanical En-
cyclopedia], Commercial Press, 
Shanghai, 1933, p. 100a: “Lilium
concolor, Salish.” Cf. also shan-tan-
hsia 花], op. cit., p. 100a: “Ixia
Chinensis, Lam.”) 74
ja’utau ["official title"] (cf Chinese
chao-fa0 招討 “to summon [those
who have not submitted] or to
punish [those who have revolted"]
(a pacification commissioner) 134
jelügè ["name of a (kind of) fish"]
75
jörkimes [not glossed] (In the con-
tinuous translation [YCP 4.26v2]
we find 無人能敵 (Wù jén nèng
fèn). “There was not anyone who
could resist [them].” Cf. also Par-
lote and Hambis, Histoire des cam-
pagnes de Gengis khan, pp. 200-201,
n. 4.) (The word seems to mean
"irresistable ") 139
jügel ["to suspend meat with a pole
and sacrifice to Heaven"] (a kind
of sacrifice) 43, 44
kièidud ["name of a (kind of) cam-
el"] 274 (plur. in -ud of kièid, it-
self a plur. in -d of (?) “kièir"
kiéme ["name of a (kind of) fish"]
272 (Cf., however, kilim-e ‘estur-
geon (tursio)’ in J. E. Kowalew-
ski, Dictionnaire mongol-russe-fran-
cais, Tome troisième, Kasaq, 1849,
p. 2531b)
kiñu’l ["place where one assembles
the horses “] 229, 224
kiñu’šæe ["place where one lights up
a horse “] (erroneously transcribed
kiñu’šæe) 131
külüg ["valiant and stalwart “; “brave
and stalwart “] 201
külüg-i (acc.) ("courage “) 205
külüg-an činu belge ("a sign of the
courage of thee “) 205
külüü ("stalwarts “) (plur. in -üd
of külüq, q.v.) v. dörben küülüüd
külüü aytaa ("noble geldings “) 3
külüüd kücüü-ü’en ken-i (acc.
("whom of thy [four] sons which
are) küülüü “) 254
liùši [not glossed] (c Chinese liù-shou
留守 "[he who] stays behind to
guard “) 232
moyilsun ["name of a kind of fruit “]
(cf. moyil "cerisier à grappes (prun-
uus padus) “ in Kowalewski, op.
cit., p. 2027a.) 74
muquli musquli [not glossed] (words
which are descriptive of the man-
er in which the Tangüd people
were annihilated 225(2))
musquli v. muquli musquli
naqud ["mixed gold “ (i.e., "a kind
of stuff made of threads of gold “)]
(plur. in -ud of *naqû 渔 Persian
n(a)x) 274
noyan ["official “; "official person"
(i.e., "chief “)] v. Belgıtêl Noyan,
Naya Noyan, Òógqin Noyan, and
Qörti Noyan of the "Index Nomi-
num"
ora ["name of (a kind of) arrow “]
124
ong [" prince “] (cf Chinese wong 王
[" prince “]) 134
ong qan [not glossed] (cf Chinese wong 王
[" prince “] + Mongolian qen
["ruler “]) (title given to Töbörq
Qan of the Kereyid and which came
to be used as his name “) 134; v. Ong
Qan in the “Index Nominum”
oordo ["palace “] 233, 224(2), 278(9)
ordo-yin bar'um etc'ed ("[on the right side of the ordo"] 234, 278
ordo-yin bar'um JeG'ü'ün etc'ed ("[on the right and [on the left side of the ordo"] 278 (3)
ordo-yin [bara'um] JeG'ü'ün etc'ed ("[on the right] and [on the left side of the ordo"] 278
ordo-yin türbin 0kid-i (acc.) ("the maids [which are] stewards of the ordo") 223
ordo-yin derge-de ("[at] the side of the ordo") 223
ordo-yin ger-i'n körül-i ("the 'sons of the tent' of the ordo") 223
ordo-yin ger tenger-i (acc.) ("the tent-carts of the palace") ("the tent-carts of the ordo") 223
ordo-yin JeG'ü'ün etc'ed ("[on the left side of the ordo"] 223, 278
ordo-yin qoyina ça ("behind the ordo") 223
ordo-yin qoyina'um urda'um ("[at] the back of the ordo") 223, 278
ordo ger ("palace-chamber house") ("ordo tent") 192 ("palace-chamber") ("ordo tent") 177, 190, 230, 278
ordo ger tere ("palace-chamber cart") ("the ordo-tent carts") 223
ordo ger tenger ("palace-chamber cart") ("the ordo-tent carts") 278 (2)
ords ("palaces") (plur. in -s of ordo) 223, 222
ötük ("wine which is offered") (Turkish ötük "prayer.") Cf. Paul Pelliot, "Notes sur le "Turkestan" de M. W. Barthold," T'oung Pao XXVII, 1890, pp. 12-56 [p. 35, n. 1)] 154; ("drinking cup") 275
ötük[le]üll ("to drink [from a] cup") 157; ("to cause to perform the ötük") 157; ("to cause to drink [from a cup]") 125, 210 (3)
q' ("emperor") (from qan) 108, 141, 144; ("that which is connected with the government") 246; v. gür qa
q'a'satii (not glossed) 101
qad ("emperor-prince") (plur. in -d of qa'satii) 21; ("emperors") (rulers) 112; ("emperors") (rulers) 121
qad ulun da'um (not glossed) 224
qadara ("name of a [kind of] fish") 75
qadun ("lady") ("empress") 109, 254 (3); v. Qorijin Qadun, Qulan Qadun, Qur'ur'in Qadun, Yesügen Qadun, Yesii Qadun in the "Index Nominum"
qadun ("ladies") ("empresses") (plur. in -d of qadun) 198, 365
q'a'satii ("emperor") 145 (2), 147 (2)
qahan ("emperor") 58, 57, 56, 64, 144, 140 (2), 145, 146, 155, 197 (3), 224, 225 (2), 260 (2), 200, 271, 272 (4), 275, 276, 277 (5), 278, 279, 281 (6); v. Altan Qahan, Ambayai Qahan, Čingis Qahan, Dalai-yin Qahan-u älen-e, Öng Qahan, Ögedei Qahan, and Qubul Qahan in the "Index Nominum"
qahan-u järil- ("the decree of the Qahan") 280
qahan-u järilli-yr ("by the decree of the Qahan") 280
qahan-u mara'a ("the flesh of the Qahan") 208
qahan-u soyurqal ("the favour of the Qahan") 208
qahan-u'un ("[the possession] of my Qahan") 197
Qan, Tayang Qan, To'oril Qan, and Yesügei Qan in the "Index Nominum"

qan oro ("throne of the qan") 201
gand (plur. in -d of qan) 272 (3)
qarayana ("something like a clump of grass") (Cf. Kalmuk "xaryonon Caragana (eine baumart aus den Papilionaceae)" in RAMSTEDT, op. cit., p. 189a.) (a thorny shrub which grows in thick clumps on the steppe; cf. the American sage brush) 105
qarmand ("name of a (kind of) black duck") 200
qaratu [not glossed] 111
qatar [not glossed] 111 (cf. better)
gatud (plur. in -d of qatan) 70, 71
gatan ("lady" (= "empress") 64, 227; v. Qatan Börte, Qoriqin Qatan, Qulan Qatan, Qu'urcin Qatan, Ye-sügei Qatan, and Yesügei Qatan in the "Index Nominum"
qatan sa'urin-tur ("on the qatan throne") 64
qa'uluqa [not glossed] 75
qayruqaya ("small bird with white feathers") 160
qokir (not glossed) 111
qo'qay ("name of a (kind of) arrow") 194
qoyiruq [not glossed] 75
quda ("family related (to another by marriage") (Cf. the Oros "xap le chef de deux familles aliéees par le mariage de leurs enfants, les membres mâles de deux familles aliéées entre elles par le mariage de leurs enfants; ... ) in Antoine MONTABERT, Dictionnaire ordos, Tome I, pp. 263b-263a.) 65, 66; v. Quda Yesügei in the "Index Nominum"
qula ("yellow horse") ("properly a horse with a yellow coat which has a black mane and tail, a black stripe covering the spine." (Cf. Antoine MONTABERT, Sur quelques passages, pp. [96][97].) 147 (2)
qunar [not glossed] 111
quiri v. ča'ud qiri, ja'ud qiri
qu'urda'ul- ("to cause to pluck (the strings of the qu'ur)", i.e., "to cause to play the qu'ur") 189
sasqal bayan ("hog-bristles grass") (lit., "beard rich") 105
sauya ("human affairs" (= "gift") (Cf. Paul Pelliot, "Sao-houa, sau-ya, sau-yat, saghsect," Tsoung Pao 32 (1936), 250-257.) 114, 185
soltan ("king") (Cf. Persian sultan) 550; v. also Tartu ul ingen-i soltan-i (acc.) in the "Index Nominum"
soltan u jualang ("the summer house of the soltan") 239
souo v. borqin
soqosun ("name of a (kind of) fish") 76 (2)
soyibuy [not glossed] (an exclamation) 178
sudun ("name of the root of a (kind of) plant") 74
šidšil ["gift offered to the father and to the mother of the husband when [the new daughter-in-law] presents herself before them "] (Cf. Antoine MONTABERT, Sur quelques passages, p. [88].) (synonym of emšišel q.v.) 96
	tammah ("official title") 273 (2), 276
tammar ("official title") 273, 274, 281
terme ("spread tent") 184, 205 (2),
266
tobq'in ("western horses") (plur. in
-tud of tobičuy) 274
toloy ("big felt carpet") 189
toruy (not glossed) (Cf. the Oros "t'orolq nom d'une plante qui croît dans les salar (Fleselyrum fructicosum L, d'apres Potanin) ... ") Antoine MONTABERT, Dictionnaire ordos, Tome II, p. 971a.)
türilmii (not glossed) (Cf. Turkish türülmii) (In a letter dated 19 August
INDEX VERBORUM

1954. Professor Nicholas Poppe stated: "As for törümüš, this should be considered as a verbal noun in -miš from törül-, a deverbal (passive) verb in *- from törü- 'to bear, to be born.'"

tulu ["name of a (kind of) fish"] 272 (Cf. Kowalewski, op. cit., p. 1850b: "le thymalle") (a kind of salmon) 272


učumay ["name in archery"]; "name of (a kind of) arrow"] 174 (učumay-ar), 206 (učumay-ar)
ulja’ur v. čul (? čul) ulja’ur

ülige [not glossed] (In the continuous translation [YCPS 8.45v] we find 無性行 (wu xing-xing) "without character")

yeke a’uruy ["great camp for the old and the young"] 233, 258, 257; v. a’uruy

yor ["tip of a sounding p’o 雲 ('bone tipped arrow ')] (Cf. K. U.-Kohalmi, op. cit., pp. 54-51.) 116

ADDENDUM

burj’a’u ["chia 椊"] (a kind of wooden collar placed on a prisoner’s neck; a cangue) 81 (2x), 83, 84, 85, and 118